Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in "Notices" on page 423.

This edition applies to version 7, release 4 of IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus (product number 5724-S44) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.
## Contents

**About this publication** ........................................ vii
- Intended audience ........................................ vii
- What this publication contains ...................... vii
- Publications ............................................... viii
- Accessibility ............................................. x
- Tivoli technical training ................................ x
- Support information ..................................... x
- Conventions used in this publication .............. xi

**Chapter 1. Administering the Web GUI server** ..... 1
- Restarting the server ..................................... 1
- Viewing the application server profile ............ 2
  - Port assignments ..................................... 3
- Changing the timeout setting ......................... 3
  - Switching off the session timeout .............. 5
- Launching the administrative console ............ 5
- Changing the password for the connection to the ObjectServer .................. 6
- Administering timed tasks ............................ 7
  - Controlling the use of timed tasks .............. 7
  - Setting the refresh properties .................. 8
  - Overview of timed tasks .......................... 8
- Querying the event database ......................... 9
- Copying data between Web GUI servers .......... 10
  - Overview .......................................... 10
  - Exporting data from a Web GUI server ........ 11
  - Importing data to a Web GUI server .......... 15
  - Cloning data between servers .................. 18
  - Setting the logging level for the utility ...... 22
- Backing up and restoring data ....................... 22
  - Backing up and restoring the Web GUI ..... 22
  - Backing up and restoring the Tivoli Integrated Portal .......................... 23
  - Backing up and restoring the Deployment Engine ........ .23

**Chapter 2. Administering the GUI framework** ... 25
- Tivoli Integrated Portal layout ...................... 25
- How to customize a Tivoli Integrated Portal setup .......... 27
- How to customize a Tivoli Integrated Portal setup .......... 29
- Administering pages ................................... 30
  - Creating pages .................................... 31
  - Selecting items for display on a page ........ 32
  - Configuring communications between portlets using wires .................. 33
  - Editing page content .............................. 35
  - Creating folders .................................. 37
  - Editing the properties of a page, folder, or external URL .................. 38
  - Deleting custom pages and folders ............ 38
  - Restoring system pages, folders, and external URLs .................. 39
  - Creating startup pages .......................... 39
  - Administering views ................................ 42
  - Creating views .................................... 44
  - Editing views ..................................... 45
  - Deleting custom views ............................ 46
  - Administering portlets ............................. 46
  - Creating portlets ................................ 48
  - Editing portlets .................................. 49
  - Editing portlet shared settings ................ 51
  - Deleting portlets ................................ 52
  - Configuring a web portlet in the Portlet Wizard .......................... 52
  - Administering console preference profiles .................. 54
  - Creating preference profiles .................... 55
  - Editing console preference profiles .................. 56
  - Deleting console preference profiles .................. 57
  - Developing wires ................................ 57
  - Creating system wires in the events descriptor .................. 58
  - Defining custom wires in the wire descriptor .................. 59
  - Defining transformations for custom wires .................. 62
  - Changing wire definitions after deployment .................. 63
  - Deploying custom wires .......................... 63
  - Passing properties to other portlets .................. 63
  - Developing transformations ....................... 66
  - Transformation types ................................ 66
  - Developing Java transformations .................. 67
  - Developing JavaScript transformations ........... 68
  - Developing URL servlet transformations .................. 68
  - Defining transformations in the transformation descriptor .................. 68
  - Deploying transformations ....................... 69
  - Exporting and importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data .................. 70
  - Basic export commands ................................ 71
  - Advanced export commands ....................... 74
  - Import commands ................................... 79
  - tipcli command reference ....................... 82
  - Resource types ................................... 84
  - Manage Global Refresh ............................ 85

**Chapter 3. Developing dashboards for event visualization** .................. 87
  - Wiring Event Viewers and Active Event Lists ........ 88
  - Wiring an event list to display related events from a gauge .................. 90
  - Wiring gauges to an Event Viewer for display on mobile devices ..................

**Chapter 4. Administering users, roles, and groups** .................. 95
  - Web GUI users, roles, and groups .................. 95
    - Web GUI users ................................... 95
    - Web GUI roles ................................... 96
    - User groups in the Web GUI ....................... 97
    - Supplied users and groups ....................... 97
    - Web GUI user administration ................... 98
    - Changing passwords ................................ 99
    - Creating the Web GUI administrative user ........ 100

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2001, 2012
| Setting LEL portlet preferences | 189 |
| Setting preferences for the Map portlet | 190 |
| Setting Relationship Definitions portlet preferences | 192 |
| Setting Table View portlet preferences | 192 |
| Setting Web widget portlet preferences | 193 |

### Chapter 9. Customizing Active Event Lists

Setting the appearance and behavior of the Active Event List | 195 |
Changing the AEL refresh rate | 195 |
Turning data row caching on or off | 196 |
Changing event severity icons | 196 |
Restricting the number of rows displayed in the Active Event List | 197 |
Enabling notifications and setting notification criteria | 198 |
Enabling flashing and setting flash speed and brightness | 199 |
Modifying the AEL font and window settings | 200 |
Modifying the AEL date and time format | 200 |
Changing how event severity is depicted in the AEL | 203 |
Changing which areas of the AEL are displayed | 204 |
Changing the font color for an event after it has been acknowledged | 205 |
Adding sounds to use for notifications | 205 |
Creating event management tools | 205 |
Event management tools overview | 206 |
Prompt types | 209 |
Setting up CGI and URL tools | 210 |
Creating SQL tools | 218 |
Creating command-line tools | 221 |
Creating script tools | 224 |
Modifying tools | 227 |
Renaming tools | 230 |
Copying tools | 231 |
Deleting tools | 234 |
Tool runtime parameters | 234 |
Customizing AEL Menus | 237 |
The Alerts and Tools menus | 237 |
Adding tools to a menu | 238 |
Modifying existing tools | 239 |
Creating submenus | 239 |
Adding submenus to a menu | 240 |
Deleting submenus | 241 |
Removing items from a menu | 241 |
Changing the order of items in a menu | 242 |
Renaming menu items | 242 |

### Chapter 10. Customizing Event Viewers

Setting the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer | 245 |
Defining event relationships | 246 |

### Chapter 11. Filtering event information

Filters | 249 |
Views | 251 |
Setting up filters for event data | 252 |
Filter Builder overview | 252 |
Creating and editing filters | 254 |
Copying filters | 263 |
Deleting filters | 264 |
Setting up views for event lists | 265 |
Creating views | 265 |
Adding and removing columns | 266 |
Configuring column titles and width | 267 |
Changing the column order | 268 |
Locking columns | 269 |
Changing the sorting precedence | 270 |
Changing the sort order in a column | 271 |
Copying global views | 271 |

### Chapter 12. Monitoring events in the Web GUI

Monitoring events on mobile devices | 273 |
Monitoring events in the AEL | 274 |
Event management in Active Event Lists | 274 |
Accessing Active Event Lists | 275 |
Acknowledging and deacknowledging events | 275 |
Assigning ownership to events | 276 |
Changing the event information displayed | 277 |
Copying data from the event list | 277 |
Deleting events | 278 |
Displaying event information in full | 278 |
Freezing the event data | 279 |
Maintaining a journal for an event | 280 |
Prioritizing events | 281 |
Refreshing the event data | 281 |
Running predictive eventing tools in the Web GUI | 282 |
Monitoring TADDM events in the Web GUI | 283 |
Searching for event list data | 284 |
Selecting and deselecting events | 286 |
Sorting columns | 286 |
Using tools to manage events | 287 |
Managing events in the Event Viewer | 288 |
Accessing the Event Viewer | 288 |
Displaying full event information in the Event Viewer | 288 |
Changing the event information displayed | 289 |
Copying data | 289 |
Refreshing the event data | 289 |
Freezing the event data | 290 |
Searching for event list data | 290 |
Sorting columns | 290 |
Event groupings | 291 |
Event relationships | 292 |
Monitoring events in the LEL | 293 |
Viewing events in the Lightweight Event List | 294 |
Displaying full event information in the Lightweight Event List | 295 |
Monitoring events in the Table View | 295 |
Visualizing high-level event information | 296 |
Displaying event data on mobile devices | 296 |
Visualizing event information on gauges | 298 |
Visualizing event information on Event Dashboards | 306 |
Visualizing event information on maps | 317 |
Visualizing high-level event information on charts .................. 343

Appendix A. Accessibility features for the Web GUI ................. 369

Appendix B. ncowDataSourceDefinitions.xml reference .................. 371

***** MISSING FILE ***** ........................................ 371
***** MISSING FILE ***** ........................................ 371
Elements of the Web GUI configuration DTD ......................... 371
Attributes of the Web GUI configuration DTD ....................... 374

Appendix C. Invalid characters in filters, views, and tools .......... 377

Appendix D. SmartPage commands and templates ...................... 379
SmartPage commands overview ...................................... 379
SmartPage code example ........................................... 379
SmartPage command reference ...................................... 380
enable:Smartpage command ........................................ 380
Validate command .................................................. 380
insert:AEL command ............................................... 380
insert:AELMAPVIEW command ....................................... 383
insert:MAPLET command ........................................... 384
insert:FILTERPAGE command ....................................... 385
insert:USERMAPLIST command ...................................... 386
insert:TABLEVIEW command ........................................ 387
insert:USERNAME command ......................................... 387
insert:USERSHOMEURL command .................................... 388
Template overview .................................................. 388
Template example .................................................. 388
Guidelines for using SmartPage templates .......................... 389
Creating SmartPage templates ...................................... 390

Appendix E. tipcli command reference 391
Working with roles .................................................. 391
ListRoles ............................................................ 393
AddRole ............................................................. 393
UpdateRole .......................................................... 394
DelRole .............................................................. 395
list:RolesFromGroup .................................................. 395
MapRolesToGroup .................................................... 396
RemoveRolesFromGroup ............................................. 397
ListRolesForPage ..................................................... 397
MapRolesToPage ...................................................... 398
RemoveRolesFromPage ............................................... 399
ListRolesForPortletEntity .......................................... 399
MapRolesToPortletEntity ............................................ 400
RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity ..................................... 401
ListRolesFromUser ................................................... 401
MapRolesToUser ....................................................... 402
RemoveRolesFromUser ............................................... 403
ListRolesForView ..................................................... 403
MapRolesToView ...................................................... 404
RemoveRolesFromView ............................................... 405
Working with views .................................................. 405
Working with users .................................................. 406
Working with preference profiles ................................... 406
Working with pages ............................................... 407
Working with portlets .............................................. 408
Working with user groups .......................................... 408
Tivoli Integrated Portal Export commands .......................... 409
tipcli - Export plugins .............................................. 409
tipcli - Advanced Export options .................................. 410
Import tipcli commands ............................................ 412
Additional commands ................................................ 413

Appendix F. Web GUI database tables 415
OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.CONFIG_ITEMS table ......................... 415
OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES ........................................ 415
OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES_CONFIG_ITEMS ......................... 415

Appendix G. URLs for opening Web GUI pages ......................... 417

Notices ............................................................... 423
Trademarks .......................................................... 426
Index ................................................................. 427
About this publication

The IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI is a Web-based application that processes network events from one or more data sources and presents the event data to users in various graphical formats.

The IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI Administration and User’s Guide describes how to administer, customize, and use the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI.

For information on how to use the Web GUI Administration API (WAAPi) to administer the Web GUI remotely, refer to the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI Administration API (WAAPi) User’s Guide.

Intended audience

This publication is intended for administrators and operators who use the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI. This publication provides information on how to administer the Web GUI, how to create customized event displays, and how to monitor and manage event data.

What this publication contains

This publication contains the following sections:

- **Chapter 1, “Administering the Web GUI server,” on page 1**
  Describes the administration tasks that need to be performed as part of system maintenance and to ensure the correct operation of the Web GUI.

- **Chapter 2, “Administering the GUI framework,” on page 25**
  Describes how to use the Tivoli Integrated Portal functions to administer the setup of your Web GUI installation.

- **Chapter 3, “Developing dashboards for event visualization,” on page 87**
  Describes how to create pages that act as dashboards for visualizing events.

- **Chapter 4, “Administering users, roles, and groups,” on page 95**
  Describes how to create different kinds of Web GUI users, assign them roles and add them to groups to determine their ability to perform tasks.

- **Chapter 5, “Administering a load balancing cluster,” on page 133**
  Describes the administration tasks specific to a load balancing cluster.

- **Chapter 6, “Troubleshooting,” on page 143**
  Provides help to determine the cause of the problem and what to do about it.

- **Chapter 7, “Performance tuning tips for the Web GUI,” on page 169**
  Provides information to help troubleshoot any Web GUI performance issues.

- **Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173**
  Describes how to customize the appearance and behavior of the Web GUI portlets.

- **Chapter 9, “Customizing Active Event Lists,” on page 195**
  Describes how to change the appearance and behavior of the Active Event List (AEL), how to create tools that operators can run against events in the AEL, and how to add tools to AEL menus.
• Chapter 10, “Customizing Event Viewers,” on page 245
  Describes how to change the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer, and how to define relationships for use in organizing the event list.

• Chapter 11, “Filtering event information,” on page 249
  Describes how to use filters to apply SQL conditions to ObjectServer data, and how to use views to control which columns are displayed in the AEL, and the appearance of the columns.

• Chapter 12, “Monitoring events in the Web GUI,” on page 273
  Describes how to use the event management functions of Active Event List, Lightweight Event List and the Table View.

• Appendix A, “Accessibility features for the Web GUI,” on page 369
  Lists the accessibility features of the Web GUI that help users with a disability, restricted mobility, or limited vision.

• Appendix B, “ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml reference,” on page 371
  Describes the structure of the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source definitions file.

• Appendix C, “Invalid characters in filters, views, and tools,” on page 377
  Describes the characters that cannot be used in the name of filters, views, and tools.

• Appendix D, “SmartPage commands and templates,” on page 379
  Describes how to use SmartPage commands to populate Web pages that are served by the Web GUI.

• Appendix E, “Web GUI database tables,” on page 415
  Defines the structure of the Web GUI tables in the database of a load balancing cluster.

• Appendix G, “URLs for opening Web GUI pages,” on page 417
  Describes how to build URLs that launch the Web GUI.

Publications

This section lists publications in the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus library and related documents. The section also describes how to access Tivoli publications online and how to order Tivoli publications.

Your Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus library

The following documents are available in the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus library:

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Installation and Deployment Guide, SC14-7526
  Includes installation and upgrade procedures for Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus, and describes how to configure security and component communications. The publication also includes examples of Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus architectures and describes how to implement them.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Administration Guide, SC14-7527
  Describes how to perform administrative tasks using the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Administrator GUI, command-line tools, and process control. The publication also contains descriptions and examples of ObjectServer SQL syntax and automations.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI Administration and User’s Guide, SC14-7528
  Describes how to perform administrative and event visualization tasks using the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI.
• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus User’s Guide, SC14-7529
  Provides an overview of the desktop tools and describes the operator tasks related to event management using these tools.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Probe and Gateway Guide, SC14-7530
  Contains introductory and reference information about probes and gateways, including probe rules file syntax and gateway commands.

• IBM Tivoli Monitoring for Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Agent User’s Guide, SC14-7532
  Describes how to install the health monitoring agent for Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus and contains reference information about the agent.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Event Integration Facility Reference, SC14-7533
  Describes how to develop event adapters that are tailored to your network environment and the specific needs of your enterprise. This publication also describes how to filter events at the source.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Error Messages Guide, SC14-7534
  Describes system messages in Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus and how to respond to those messages.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI Administration API (WAAPI) User’s Guide, SC22-7535
  Shows how to administer the Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI using the XML application programming interface named WAAPI.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus ObjectServer HTTP Interface Reference Guide, SC27-5613
  Describes the URLs and common behaviors of the Application Programming Interface (API) that is called the ObjectServer HTTP Interface. Describes how to enable the API and provides examples of JSON payloads, and HTTP requests and responses.

• IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus ObjectServer OSLC Interface Reference Guide, SC27-5613
  Describes the services, resources, and common behaviors of the Open Services for Lifecycle Collaboration (OSLC) Application Programming Interface (API) that is called the ObjectServer OSLC Interface. Describes how to enable the API and provides examples of service provider definitions, RDF/XML payloads, and HTTP requests and responses.

Accessing terminology online

The IBM Terminology Web site consolidates the terminology from IBM product libraries in one convenient location. You can access the Terminology Web site at the following Web address:

http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology

Accessing publications online

IBM posts publications for this and all other Tivoli products, as they become available and whenever they are updated, to the Tivoli Information Center Web site at:

http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v3r1/index.jsp

Note: If you print PDF documents on other than letter-sized paper, set the option in the File > Print window that allows Adobe Reader to print letter-sized pages on your local paper.
**Ordering publications**

You can order many Tivoli publications online at the following Web site:


You can also order by telephone by calling one of these numbers:

- In the United States: 800-879-2755
- In Canada: 800-426-4968

In other countries, contact your software account representative to order Tivoli publications. To locate the telephone number of your local representative, perform the following steps:

1. Go to the following Web site:
2. Select your country from the list and click Go. The Welcome to the IBM Publications Center page is displayed for your country.
3. On the left side of the page, click About this site to see an information page that includes the telephone number of your local representative.

---

**Accessibility**

Accessibility features help users with a physical disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use software products successfully.

With this product, you can use assistive technologies to hear and navigate the interface. You can also use the keyboard instead of the mouse to operate most features of the graphical user interface.

For additional information, see the Accessibility Appendix in Appendix A, "Accessibility features for the Web GUI," on page 369.

---

**Tivoli technical training**

For Tivoli technical training information, refer to the following IBM Tivoli Education Web site:

http://www.ibm.com/software/tivoli/education

---

**Support information**

If you have a problem with your IBM software, you want to resolve it quickly. IBM provides the following ways for you to obtain the support you need:

**Online**

Go to the IBM Software Support site at http://www.ibm.com/software/support/probsub.html and follow the instructions.

**IBM Support Assistant**

The IBM Support Assistant (ISA) is a free local software serviceability workbench that helps you resolve questions and problems with IBM software products. The ISA provides quick access to support-related information and serviceability tools for problem determination. To install the ISA software, go to http://www.ibm.com/software/support/isa
Documenta

tion

If you have a suggestion for improving the content or organization of this
guide, send it to the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Information Development
team at:

c

Conventions used in this publication

This publication uses several conventions for special terms and actions and
operating system-dependent commands and paths.

Typeface conventions

This publication uses the following typeface conventions:

**Bold**

- Lowercase commands and mixed case commands that are otherwise
difficult to distinguish from surrounding text
- Interface controls (check boxes, push buttons, radio buttons, spin
buttons, fields, folders, icons, list boxes, items inside list boxes,
multicolumn lists, containers, menu choices, menu names, tabs, property
sheets), labels (such as Tip: and Operating system considerations)
- Keywords and parameters in text

*Italic*

- Citations (examples: titles of publications, diskettes, and CDs)
- Words defined in text (example: a nonswitched line is called a
  point-to-point line)
- Emphasis of words and letters (words as words example: "Use the word
  that to introduce a restrictive clause."); letters as letters example: "The
  LUN address must start with the letter L."
- New terms in text (except in a definition list): a view is a frame in a
  workspace that contains data
- Variables and values you must provide: ... where myname represents....

**Monospace**

- Examples and code examples
- File names, programming keywords, and other elements that are difficult
to distinguish from surrounding text
- Message text and prompts addressed to the user
- Text that the user must type
- Values for arguments or command options

Operating system-dependent variables and paths

This publication uses the UNIX convention for specifying environment variables
and for directory notation.

When using the Windows command line, replace $variable with %variable% for
environment variables, and replace each forward slash (/) with a backslash (\) in
directory paths. For example, on UNIX systems, the $NCHOME environment
variable specifies the path of the Netcool® home directory. On Windows systems,
the %NCHOME% environment variable specifies the path of the Netcool home
directory. The names of environment variables are not always the same in the
Windows and UNIX environments. For example, %TEMP% in Windows environments is equivalent to $TMPDIR in UNIX environments.

If you are using the bash shell on a Windows system, you can use the UNIX conventions.

**Fix pack information**

Information that is applicable only to the fix pack versions of Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus are prefaced with a graphic. For example, if a set of instructions is preceded by the graphic [Fix Pack 1](#), it means that the instructions can only be performed if you installed fix pack 1 of your installed version of Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus. In the release notes, descriptions of known problems that are prefaced with [Fix Pack 1](#) are solved in fix pack 1, and so on.

**Note:** Fix packs are distributed separately for the server components and the Web GUI component.

**Home directories for the Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal**

The Web GUI and the Tivoli Integrated Portal use separate directory structures within the main installation directory. References to those directories use the following conventions:

`install_dir`

Refers to the directory where the Web GUI and the Tivoli Integrated Portal are installed.

Examples:

- `/opt/IBM/tivoli` on UNIX environments.
- `C:\IBM\tivoli\` on Windows systems.

`webgui-home`

Refers to the directory where the Web GUI is installed. This directory is known as the Web GUI home directory.

Examples:

- `/opt/IBM/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui` on UNIX environments.
- `C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui` on Windows systems.

`tip_home_dir`

Refers to the directory where the Tivoli Integrated Portal is installed. This directory is known as the Tivoli Integrated Portal home directory.

Examples:

- `/opt/IBM/tivoli/tipv2` on UNIX environments.
- `C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv2` on Windows systems.
Chapter 1. Administering the Web GUI server

Perform these tasks to administer the Web GUI server.

Restarting the server

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

About this task

Restart the server after or while carrying out any of the following actions on your Web GUI server:

- Modifications to any of the following files:
  - server.init
  - ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml
  - virtualhosts.xml
  - deployment.xml
  - security.xml
  - winconfig.xml
  - Any properties file in the tip_home_dir/tip/properties directory
- Setting up a load balancing cluster
- Adding a node to a load balancing cluster
- Adding or changing user registries
- Backing up and restoring the Web GUI
- Copying configurations from another Web GUI server
- Configuring encryption
- Configuring single sign-on
- Configuring LDAP or Active Directory and their connections

If you do not use the timed tasks facility in the server.init file, you also need to restart the server after changing any files in the following directories in webgui-home/etc:

- configstore
- cgi-bin
- charts
- charts/definitions
- templates and all the directories it holds

Procedure

To restart the server:
1. On the command-line interface, change to the tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.
2. Stop the server:
   - For Linux/UNIX: stopServer.sh server1
Attention: Linux and Unix systems prompt you to supply the user name and password of the administrative user.

- **Windows** stopServer.bat server1

Wait a moment for the server to completely shut down. The following messages confirm the server has shut down:

ADMU3201I: Server stop request issued. Waiting for stop status.
ADMU4000I: Server server1 stop completed.

Additionally, confirm that all Java process have stopped running. This is particularly important when installing a fix pack.

Note: You must specify the correct operating system user name when stopping and starting the Tivoli Integrated Portal.

3. Start the server:

- **Linux** startServer.sh server1
- **Windows** startServer.bat server1

Related tasks: 
="Administering timed tasks” on page 7"

Timed tasks are the key part to a Web GUI server automatically loading changes in configuration data, without the need to restart the server. You manage timed tasks through properties in the Web GUI initialization file (server.init).

**Viewing the application server profile**

Open the application server profile to review the port number assignments and other information.

**About this task**

The profile of the application server is available as a text file on the computer where it is installed.

**Procedure**

1. Locate the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs` directory.
2. Open AboutThisProfile.txt in a text editor.

**Example**

This is the profile for an installation on in a Windows environment as it appears in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/AboutThisProfile.txt`:

Application server environment to create: Application server
Location: C:\IBM\tivoli\tip\profiles\TIPProfile
Disk space required: 200 MB
Profile name: TIPProfile
Make this profile the default: True
Node name: TIPNode Host name: tivoliadmin.usca.ibm.com
Enable administrative security (recommended): True
Administrative console port: 16315
Administrative console secure port: 16316
HTTP transport port: 16310
HTTPS transport port: 16311
Bootstrap port: 16312
SOAP connector port: 16313
Run application server as a service: False
Create a Web server definition: False
Performance tuning setting: Standard
Disk space required: 200 MB
Profile name: TIPProfile
Make this profile the default: True
Node name: TIPNode
Host name: tivoliadmin.usca.ibm.com
Enable administrative security (recommended): True
 Administrative console port: 16315
 Administrative console secure port: 16316
 HTTP transport port: 16310
 HTTPS transport port: 16311
 Bootstrap port: 16312
 SOAP connector port: 16313
 Run application server as a service: False
 Create a Web server definition: False
 Performance tuning setting: Standard

What to do next

If you want to see the complete list of defined ports on the application server, you can open `tip_home_dir/properties/TIPPortDef.properties` in a text editor:

```
#Create the required WAS port properties for TIP
#Mon Oct 06 09:26:30 PDT 2008
CSIV2_SSL_SERVERAUTH_LISTENER_ADDRESS=16323
WC_adminhost=16315
DC$ UNICAST ADDRESS=16318
BOOTSTRAP ADDRESS=16312
SAS_SSL_SERVERAUTH_LISTENER_ADDRESS=16321
SOAP_CONNECTOR_ADDRESS=16313
ORB_LISTENER_ADDRESS=16320
WC_defaulthost_secure=16311
CSIV2_SSL_MUTUALAUTH_LISTENER_ADDRESS=16322
WC_defaulthost=16310
WC_adminhost_secure=16316
IPC_CONNECTOR_ADDRESS=16314
REST_NOTIFICATION_PORT=16324
```

Related tasks:

- "Viewing TIPProfile logs for login errors" on page 48

In the event of a login error, review the system outage and system error logs to help determine the cause.

Port assignments

The application server requires a set of sequentially numbered ports.

The sequence of ports is supplied during installation in the response file. The installer checks that the number of required ports (starting with the initial port value) are available before assigning them. If one of the ports in the sequence is already in use, the installer automatically terminates the installation process and you must specify a different range of ports in the response file.

Changing the timeout setting

You can change the period of time after which users are automatically logged out of the Web GUI.

About this task

The default timeout period is 30 minutes. After you have changed the timeout setting, you must restart the server. In a load balancing cluster, carry out this task on all nodes.
To change the timeout setting:

**Procedure**

1. Open the following file: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/applications/isc.ear/deployments/isc/deployment.xml`

2. In this file, locate the following section:
   ```xml
   <tuningParams xmi:id="TuningParams_1226438889945" usingMultiRowSchema="false" maxInMemorySessionCount="1000" allowOverflow="true" scheduleInvalidation="false" writeFrequency="TIME_BASED_WRITE" writeInterval="10" writeContents="ONLY_UPDATED_ATTRIBUTES" invalidationTimeout="30">
   <invalidationSchedule xmi:id="InvalidationSchedule_1226438889946" firstHour="14" secondHour="2"/>
   </tuningParams>
   ```

3. Change the value of the `invalidationTimeout` attribute to the required timeout period, in minutes. For example, to change the period to 15 minutes, set the value as follows:
   ```xml
   invalidationTimeout="15"
   ```

4. Save and close the file.

5. Open the following file: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/security.xml`.

6. In this file locate the following section:
   ```xml
   <authMechanisms xmi:type="security:LTPA" xmi:id="LTPA_1" OID="oid:1.3.18.0.2.30.2"
     authContextImplClass="com.ibm.ISecurityLocalObjectTokenBaseImpl.
     WSSecurityContextLTPAImpl" authConfig="system.LTPA"
     simpleAuthConfig="system.LTPA" authValidationConfig="system.LTPA" timeout="1440"
     keySetGroup="KeySetGroup_TIPNode_1">
   </authMechanisms>
   ```

7. Change the value of the `timeout` attribute to the required timeout period, in minutes.

8. Save and close the file.

9. Open the following file: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/nodes/TIPNode/servers/server1/server.xml`.

10. In this file, locate the following section:
    ```xml
        <tuningParams xmi:id="TuningParams_1183077764084" usingMultiRowSchema="false" maxInMemorySessionCount="1000" allowOverflow="true" scheduleInvalidation="false" writeFrequency="TIME_BASED_WRITE" writeInterval="10" writeContents="ONLY_UPDATED_ATTRIBUTES" invalidationTimeout="30">
        </tuningParams>
    ```

11. Change the value of the `invalidationTimeout` attribute to the required timeout period, in minutes.

12. Save and close the file.

13. Restart the server.

**Related concepts:**

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133

Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Related tasks:**

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
Switching off the session timeout

You can set the session timeout to a large value to prevent sessions from timing out. This is useful where you have facilities such as wall displays that need to be available all the time.

About this task

You cannot switch off the timeout setting completely. Instead, you can set it to a large value that effectively means it is switched off. However, take note of the following:

- There are security implications if unattended sessions do not timeout. Consider these implications carefully before implementing this procedure.
- There may be a build up of resource usage should users close their browsers without logging off beforehand. Restarting the server reclaims those resources.

In a load balancing cluster, carry out this task on all nodes.

Procedure

To set the timeout so that sessions do not time out:

Use the procedure in <xref href="#web_adm_settimeout"></xref> to set the timeout values to the following values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File</th>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>deployment.xml</td>
<td>invalidationTimeout</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>security.xml</td>
<td>timeout</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>server.xml</td>
<td>invalidationTimeout</td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related concepts:

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Launching the administrative console

Certain configuration or administration tasks in the Web GUI or the underlying instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal can be performed only from the administrative console.

Procedure

1. Log in to Tivoli Integrated Portal as the tipadmin user, or another user that has the iscadmins role.
2. Click Settings > Websphere Administrative Console. Then click Launch Websphere administrative console.
Changing the password for the connection to the ObjectServer

If the password of the user specified for the connection between the ObjectServer and the Web GUI is changed, the new password must be set on the Web GUI server.

About this task

The password of the ObjectServer user must be maintained in the Web GUI for the event data feed from the ObjectServer, and if the ObjectServer is configured as a user registry through the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) adapter.

The ObjectServer connection details for VMM are stored in the following file: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/wim/config/wimconfig.xml. The connection details for the ObjectServer event data feed are stored in the following file: ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml

After you have updated the password on the Web GUI server, you must restart the server.

To change the password:

Procedure

1. To change the ObjectServer password for VMM, enter the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/bin/confvmm4ncos.sh user newpassword host port
cconfigfile=../profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/wim/config/wimconfig.xml
```

Where the parameters are as follows:

- **user**
  The ObjectServer user that is used for the connection.

- **newpassword**
  The new password for the ObjectServer user.

- **host**
  The fully-qualified host name on which the ObjectServer is installed.

- **port**
  The port on which the ObjectServer is installed.

2. To change the ObjectServer password for the event data feed:

   a. Edit the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml file.
   b. In the `<ncwDataSourceCredentials>` element, change the value of the **password** attribute to the new password.
   c. Save and close the file.

3. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

- “Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
Administering timed tasks

Timed tasks are the key part to a Web GUI server automatically loading changes in configuration data, without the need to restart the server. You manage timed tasks through properties in the Web GUI initialization file (server.init).

**About this task**

To administer the timed tasks facility:

**Procedure**

1. Open *webgui-home/etc/server.init* in a text editor.
2. Carry out any combination of the following tasks, as required:
   - Control the use of timed tasks
   - Set the refresh properties
3. Save the file.
4. If you enabled timed tasks in step 2, restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.

**Related concepts:**

“Overview of timed tasks” on page 8

Timed tasks simplify the administration of a Web GUI server or of a cluster of Web GUI servers.

**Related tasks:**

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

**Related reference:**

“Load balancing best practices” on page 139

When administering the Web GUI in a load balancing environment, there are a number of practices you can use to avoid problems occurring in the cluster.

**Controlling the use of timed tasks**

**Procedure**

1. Locate the `timedtasks.enabled` property.
2. Set the value of the property as required:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>Switches off the timed tasks facility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enables the timed tasks facility. This is the setting required for automatic processing of changes to configuration data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting the refresh properties

About this task

In most cases, the supplied values are adequate, however you can use this procedure to change them if necessary.

Procedure
1. Decide on values (in seconds) for:
   - The start delay
   - The run period
2. Locate the `timedtasks.default.startdelay` property and change its value to the start delay you require.
3. Locate the `timedtasks.default.runperiod` property and change its value to the run period you require.

Overview of timed tasks

Timed tasks simplify the administration of a Web GUI server or of a cluster of Web GUI servers.

Timed tasks enable a Web GUI server to detect and load changes in the configuration data. The tasks implement changes in the configuration without having to restart the server. This is especially important in a load-balancing cluster where maintenance of service to users must continue uninterrupted.

What are timed tasks?

Timed tasks are a set of batch processes that periodically look for changes in the configuration files. If any of those files has changed since the previous run, the processes load the new configuration data into the Web GUI server.

Characteristics of a timed task

A timed task has the following characteristics:
- A start delay
  The start delay determines how long (in seconds) after the server starts that the task first looks for changes in the associated configuration data.
- A run period
  The run period determines the length of time (in seconds) between each subsequent run of the task.

The start delay and run period together make up the timed task’s schedule. In a load-balanced cluster, you are recommended to use the same schedule on all cluster members.

The definition of timed tasks

The Web GUI's configuration file holds the definition of timed tasks. This path of this file is `webgui-home/etc/server.init`.

The definition of the timed tasks looks like this:
```plaintext
timedtasks.default.startdelay: 120
timedtasks.default.runperiod: 60
```
This defines a start delay of two minutes and a run period, also of two minutes.

---

**Querying the event database**

You can run the full range of ObjectServer SQL commands and perform queries against ObjectServer data.

**Before you begin**

To perform this task, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The ncw_admin role must be assigned to your Web GUI user profile.
- You need to be a user in the ObjectServer; your user must be a member of the following groups: ISQL and ISQLWrite.

**Note:** If LDAP is used for authentication, and the `users.credentials.sync` property of the `server.init` file is enabled, LDAP users are automatically synchronized with the ObjectServer. If not, a user must be created in the ObjectServer and assigned to the groups.

- In the ObjectServer, the webtop_compatibility automation, which is a temporal trigger, and must have run. By default, this trigger is enabled.

**Tip:** You can reduce the frequency with which the trigger runs from the default of 60 minutes. For more information about configuring temporal triggers, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Administration Guide*.

- The Web GUI configuration cache must be synchronized with the ObjectServer. The cache can be synchronized by running the `webgui-home/bin/webtop_osresync` script.

**About this task**

The Web GUI event database query is analogous in behavior to the Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus SQL Interactive Interface, and can be used to perform tasks such as creating a new database table or stopping the ObjectServer. You can connect to ObjectServers and use SQL commands to interact with and control the ObjectServer.

**Attention:** Use the Event Database Query with care. Any command entered is run against the ObjectServer. Incorrect use of SQL commands can result in the irreparable corruption of your database.

To send SQL instructions to the ObjectServer:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools > Event Database Query**.
2. From the **Select data source** list, select a data source against which you want to run the command.
3. Type an SQL query in the text editor provided and click **Submit**.

   The result of the SQL query is displayed in the **Results displayed below** area.

**Sample SQL query**

The following example result shows an excerpt of the data returned after submitting the following query:

```sql
select Node, Summary from alerts.status where Severity=4;
```
See the information about ObjectServer SQL syntax in the chapter that explains ObjectServer SQL in the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Administration Guide*.

For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, go to the IBM® Tivoli® Network Management Information Center at [http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v8r1/index.jsp](http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v8r1/index.jsp) and search for ObjectServer SQL.

### Copying data between Web GUI servers

The Web GUI has a utility to copy selected data from one server to another.

**Overview**

Occasionally you need to copy data from one Web GUI V7.4.0 server to another. One example is when copying data from a test server to a production server. The Web GUI contains a utility for such situations.

The server you are copying data from is the source server; the server you are copying data to is the target server. Either server can be a stand-alone system or part of a load balancing cluster.

**The copying process**

The process for copying data between servers is:

1. Define the data to export from the source server.
2. Export the data from the source server.
   - The utility writes the selected data to a .zip file.
3. Copy the file to the target server.
4. Set up the utility to import data from the .zip file.
   - In this step you can define whether to import all the data from the file or selected items.
5. Import the data from the .zip file.
6. Restart the target server, if necessary.

**Tip:** In many cases, you do not need to restart the server if your system uses timed tasks.
**Items that you can copy between servers**

The items that you can copy between servers are:

- Filters
- Maps
- Menus
- Prompts
- Relationships
- Tools
- Views
- Any customized file or directory in `webgui-home` or in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/OMNIbusWebGUI.war`

**Note:** Any non-customized files or directories must not be copied between servers. Always back up your files and directories before copying between servers.

You can also specify files and directories not to copy between servers. For example the Web GUI configuration file (`server.init`).

Some items, such as maps, often have dependent items that define their behavior. When exporting such an item the utility includes all the dependent items. This makes it easier to move complex items from one Web GUI server to another.

**Cloning data between servers**

On occasions you may need to copy all Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal data from one server to another. This process is known as cloning and is useful when transferring a set up from a test to a production environment. The process for cloning is similar to the main copying procedure except that you do not have to define the items to export and import. Instead, the utility provides a file that defines all the items required. You specify this file when exporting and importing data. This simplifies the process of cloning and reduces the possibility of any key data not being copied.

**Note:** The cloning process excludes the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` file.

**Exporting data from a Web GUI server**

First export the required data from the source server.

**Defining the items to export**

Define the items to export and the location for the `.zip` file.

**Procedure**

1. Make sure you are logged in as an administrative user.
2. Navigate to the directory containing the utility's properties file:
   ```
   cd webgui-home/integration/importexport_tool/etc
   ```
3. Edit the file `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties` to define the items you want to export from the source server:
   ```
   cd webgui-home/integration/importexport_tool/etc
   ```

Many of the property definitions are a list of items. In these lists, put a comma between each item. In addition for properties that define file paths, use two
backslash characters as the path separator on Windows systems; for example:
C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui.

Set the following properties as required. To set the property, remove the
comment marker at the beginning of its line and the modify the value as
required. To omit a particular item from the export, leave the property
commented out. In some cases the utility uses a default value for omitted
properties.

Table 2. Setting properties to define the data to export

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>product.home</td>
<td>The installation directory of the Web GUI. Set this property if you did not install the product into the default location. The default installation location is one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output.dir</td>
<td>The full path of the directory to receive the exported data. The default value is tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportWebGUIPlugin.input</td>
<td>To export data from the OMNIbusWebGUI.war file remove the comment marker from the beginning of the definition of the ExportWebGUIPlugin.input property and add a comment marker to the element for the Web GUI folder. Add any further files and directories to export to the definition of the remaining property. Specify each directory and file path as relative to webgui-home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportWebGUIPlugin.ignore</td>
<td>Specify the files and directories to exclude from the exported data. Put a comma between each file or directory path. Specify each directory and file path as relative to webgui-home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportPromptPlugin.input</td>
<td>A list of the names for prompts (without their extensions) to export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportToolPlugin.input</td>
<td>A list of names for tools (without their extensions) to export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportMenuPlugin.input</td>
<td>A list of names for menus (without their extensions) to export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportMenuConfigPlugin.input</td>
<td>A list of names for menu configurations (without their extensions) to export.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportViewPlugin.global</td>
<td>A list of names for global views (without their extensions) to export. To export all global views use the forward slash (/) character as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportViewPlugin.system</td>
<td>A list of names for system views (without their extensions) to export. To export all system views use the forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportViewPlugin.user</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for user-defined views (without their extensions) to export. For each view, specify the user ID and view name separated by a comma. For example, to specify View1 and View2 for user ID User1 and View3 for User ID User 2, use a definition like this: ExportViewPlugin.user=User1,View1, User1,View2, User2,View3 To export all user views, use the forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportFilterPlugin.global</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for global filters (without their extensions) to export. To export all global filters, use the forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportFilterPlugin.system</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for system filters (without their extensions) to export. To export all system filters, use the forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportFilterPlugin.groups</strong></td>
<td>A list of names of group filters (without their extensions) to export. For each filter, specify the Group ID and filter name separated by a comma. For example, to specify GroupFilter1 for Group ID Group1 and GroupFilter2 and GroupFilter3 for Group ID Group2, use a definition like this: ExportFilterPlugin.groups=Group1,GroupFilter1, Group2,GroupFilter2, Group2,GroupFilter3 To export all group filters, use a forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportFilterPlugin.user</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for user-defined filters (without their extensions) to export. For each filter, specify the User ID and filter name separated by a comma. For example, to specify Filter1 and Filter2 for user ID User1 and filter3 for User ID User 2, use a definition like this: ExportFilterPlugin.user=User1,Filter1, User1,Filter2, User2,Filter3 To export all user filters, use the forward slash character (/) as the value for this property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportFilterCollectionPlugin. input</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for filter collections (without their extensions) to export. The utility includes all the related objects for each collection such as: filters, dependency filters, and views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ExportMapPlugin.input</strong></td>
<td>A list of names for maps (without their extensions) to export. The utility includes all the related objects for each map such as: map resources, filters, dependency filters, and views.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2. Setting properties to define the data to export (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ExportRelationshipPlugin.input</td>
<td>A list of names for relationships (without their extensions) to export.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exporting the data**

Export the defined data to a .zip file on the source server.

**Procedure**

1. Make sure you are logged in to the source server as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal is running.

2. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the level of logging, if required.

   **Note:** Recommended values are FINE, FINER, and FINEST. Each of these produces increasing numbers of messages. They can be helpful when diagnosing a problem in the export utility. After using one of these values, however, be sure to return to the original value before recommencing normal operations on the server.

3. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.

4. Enter one of the following commands to export the data:

   **UNIX**
   ```bash
   ./tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin --password tippass
   --excludePlugins ExportPagePlugin,ChartExportPlugin
   --settingFile webgui-home/integration/importexport_tool/etc/
   OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties
   ```

   **Windows**
   ```bat
   tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin --password tippass
   --excludePlugins ExportPagePlugin,ChartExportPlugin --settingFile
   webgui-home\integration\importexport_tool\etc\OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties
   ```

   Replace:

   `tipadmin` with the name of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

   `tippass` with the password for the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

To exclude any plug-ins from the export operation, add their names to the `--excludePlugins` qualifier, putting a comma between each plug-in name. For example, to exclude the prompt plug-in, use:

```bash
--excludePlugins ExportPagePlugin,ChartExportPlugin,ExportPromptPlugin
```

Always include ExportPagePlugin and ChartExportPlugin in the list.

**Note:** To obtain a list of plug-in names that can be excluded from the export operation, enter the following command: `./tipcli.sh ListExportPlugins`

**Results**

The utility creates:

- The file of data in `data.zip` within the directory specified by the `output.dir` property of `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties`. If that property is not set, the file is in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output`. 

IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus: Web GUI Administration and User's Guide
A log file in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/tipcli.log`.

**Related tasks:**
- ["Setting the logging level for the utility" on page 22](#)

As supplied, the export/import utility writes information messages to the log file in addition to warnings and errors. Use this procedure to customize the level of logging during export and import operations.

**Verifying the export is complete**
Before copying the `.zip` file to the target server, make sure that it contains all required directories, files, and Web GUI objects.

**Procedure**
1. Open the log file in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/tipcli.log` and check that all stages of the export operation completed successfully.
   Resolve any errors and repeat the export activity before continuing. For example, correct any misspelled names and paths in the `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties` file, repeat the export operation, and then verify that the errors are resolved.
2. Navigate to the output directory and open the `data.zip` file using a suitable file compression tool.
3. Check that the file contains all the files, directories, and Web GUI objects that you wanted to export.
   If any items are missing, edit `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties` and add the missing items. Then repeat the export operation and verify that the items are now present.

**Importing data to a Web GUI server**
Secondly import the data to the target server.

**Defining the items to import**
Copy the exported file to the target server, install the utility (if necessary), and define the items to import from the file.

**Procedure**
1. Copy the `data.zip` file from the source server to the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/input` directory on the target server.
2. Make sure you are logged in to the target server as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is running.
3. Navigate to the directory containing the utility's properties file:
   ```
   cd webgui-home/integration/importexport_tool/etc
   ```
4. Edit the file `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties` to define the items you want to import from the `data.zip` file.
   Many of the property definitions are a list of items. In these lists, put a comma between each item. In addition for properties that define file paths, use two backslash characters as the path separator on Windows systems; for example: `C:\\IBM\\tivoli\\netcool\\omnibus_webgui`.
   Set the following properties as required. To set a property, remove the leading comment marker and then provide a suitable value.
Table 3. Setting properties to define the data to import

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>product.home</td>
<td>The installation directory of the Web GUI. Set this property if did not install the product into the default location. The default installation location is one of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UNIX: /ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Linux: ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Windows: C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>output.dir</td>
<td>The full path of the directory where you placed data.zip. If you do not define this property, the utility expects to find the file in tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>import.backupDir</td>
<td>The full path of the directory the utility uses to store backup copies of files it imports. Specify a directory other than output.dir, although you can specify a subdirectory in output.dir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you do not define this property, the utility uses tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/backups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related tasks:

“Administering timed tasks” on page 7

Timed tasks are the key part to a Web GUI server automatically loading changes in configuration data, without the need to restart the server. You manage timed tasks through properties in the Web GUI initialization file (server.init).

Importing the data

Import the data from the .zip file to the target server.

Before you begin

Copy the data.zip file from the source server to the directory tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output on the target server.

Procedure

To import the data from the .zip file to the target server:

1. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the level of logging, if required.

   **Note:** Recommended values are FINE, FINER, and FINEST. Each of these produces increasing numbers of messages. They can be helpful when diagnosing a problem in the import utility. After using one of these values, however, be sure to return to the original value before recommencing normal operations on the server.

2. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.

3. Enter one of the following commands to import the data:
UNIX/Linux

```bash
./tipcli.sh Import --username tipadmin --password tippass
--excludePlugins ImportPagePlugin,ChartImportPlugin
--settingFile webgui-home/integration/importexport_tool/etc/OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties
```

Windows

```bash
tipcli.bat Import --username tipadmin --password tippass
--excludePlugins ImportPagePlugin,ChartImportPlugin
--settingFile webgui-home\integration\importexport_tool\etc\OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties
```

Replace:

- **tipadmin**
  - with the name of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

- **tippass**
  - with the password for the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

To exclude any plug-ins from the import operation, add their names to the `--excludePlugins` qualifier, putting a comma between each plug-in name. For example, to exclude the prompt plug-in, use:

```bash
--excludePlugins ImportPagePlugin,ChartImportPlugin,ImportPromptPlugin
```

Always include the `ImportPagePlugin` and `ChartImportPlugin` in the list.

**Note:** To obtain a list of plug-in names that can be excluded from the import operation, enter the following command: `./tipcli.sh ListImportPlugins`

4. Restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.

   You need to restart the server if your site does not use timed tasks or you have imported a key system file such as `server.init` or `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml`.

**Related tasks:**

- [“Setting the logging level for the utility” on page 22](#)

As supplied, the export/import utility writes information messages to the log file in addition to warnings and errors. Use this procedure to customize the level of logging during export and import operations.

- [“Restarting the server” on page 1](#)

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

**Verifying the import is complete**

Check the log file to make sure the import completed successfully, that all the required files and directories are present, and that the imported facilities are available in the Web GUI.

**Procedure**

1. Open the log file in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/tipcli.log` and check that all stages of the import operation completed successfully.

   Resolve any errors and repeat the import activity before continuing. For example, correct any misspelled names and paths in the `OMNIbusWebGUI_settings.properties` file, repeat the import operation, and then verify that the errors are resolved.

2. Verify that the all required files, directories, and Web GUI objects are present on the target server.

3. Verify that all the facilities are available in the Web GUI.

   For example, verify that all the imported filters are available.
4. In a load balancing cluster, verify that all the files, directories, and Web GUI objects have propagated to all nodes in the cluster.

5. If the system is not part of a cluster and does not use timed tasks, restart the server.

**Cloning data between servers**

You can clone data between servers that are running the Web GUI, including or excluding Tivoli Integrated Portal data. All servers must run the same version of the Web GUI and the Tivoli Integrated Portal: you cannot clone data between servers that run different versions of the Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal.

**Restriction:** The `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` file cannot be cloned. Adjust this file manually after you imported cloned data to a server.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that you have applied all the available fix packs to the Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal.

**Exporting the data**

Export all the Web GUI data, with or without Tivoli Integrated Portal data, to a .zip file on the source server.

**Related tasks:**

["Setting the logging level for the utility" on page 22](#)

As supplied, the export/import utility writes information messages to the log file in addition to warnings and errors. Use this procedure to customize the level of logging during export and import operations.

**Export Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal data:**

**Procedure**

1. Make sure you are logged in to the source server as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is running.
2. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the logging level, if required.
3. If your installation of the Web GUI does not use the default location:
   a. Navigate to the directory `webgui-home/integration/plugins`.
   b. Edit the file `OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings.properties`.
   c. Locate the following line
   
   `TIP.Cellname=TIPCell`
   
   d. Immediately after this line, add the following line:

   `product.home=webgui-home`

   Replace `webgui-home` with the actual installation directory of the Web GUI.

   **Note:** The default installation directory of the Web GUI is one of the following:

   - [UNIX/Linux](#) `ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui`
   - [Windows](#) `C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui`

4. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
5. Enter one of the following commands to export the data:
UNIX/Linux
.
tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home/integration/plugins/
OMNIbusWebGUI_TIP_clone.properties

Windows

tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home\integration\plugins\OMNIbusWebGUI_TIP_clone.properties

Replace tipadmin and tippass with the user name and password of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

Results

The utility creates the following files:

- The file of data in data.zip within the directory tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output.

Exporting Web GUI data only:

Procedure

1. Make sure you are logged in to the source server as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is running.
2. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the logging level, if required.
3. If your installation of the Web GUI does not use the default location:
   a. Navigate to the directory webgui-home/integration/plugins.
   b. Edit the file OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings.properties.
   c. Locate the following line
      TIP.Cellname=TIPCell
   d. Immediately after this line, add the following line:
      product.home=webgui-home
      Replace webgui-home with the actual installation directory of the Web GUI.

Note: The default installation directory of the Web GUI is one of the following:

- UNIX/Linux
  ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui
- Windows
  C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui

4. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.
5. Enter one of the following commands to export the data:

UNIX/Linux
.
tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin --password tippass --excludePlugins ExportPagePlugin,ChartExportPlugin
--settingFile webgui-home/integration/plugins/
OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings

Windows

tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin --password tippass --excludePlugins ExportPagePlugin,ChartExportPlugin --settingFile webgui-home\integration\plugins\OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings

Replace tipadmin and tippass with the user name and password of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.
Results

The utility creates the following files:

- The file of data in data.zip within the directory tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output.

Importing the data

Import the data from the .zip file to the target server.

Related tasks:

- “Setting the logging level for the utility” on page 22
- “Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Import Web GUI and Tivoli Integrated Portal data:

Procedure

1. Copy data.zip from the source server to the directory tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/input on the target server.
2. On the target server make sure that you are logged in as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is running.
3. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the level of logging, if required.
4. If your installation of the Web GUI does not use the default location:
   a. Navigate to the directory webgui-home/integration/plugins.
   b. Edit the file OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings.properties.
   c. Locate the following line
      TIP.Cellname=TIPCell
   d. Immediately after this line, add the following line:
      product.home=webgui-home
      Replace webgui-home with the actual installation directory of the Web GUI.

Note: The default installation directory of the Web GUI is one of the following:

- UNIX/Linux: /ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui
- Windows: C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui
5. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.
6. Enter one of the following commands to import the data:

   - UNIX/Linux: ./tipcli.sh Import --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home/integration/plugins/OMNIbusWebGUI_TIP_clone.properties
   - Windows: tipcli.bat Import --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home/integration/plugins\OMNIbusWebGUI_TIP_clone.properties

Replace tipadmin and tippass with the user name and password of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.
7. Verify that the utility has added or updated files as required:
   a. Check the log file, `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/tipcli.log`, and ensure there were no errors.
   b. Verify that backup copies of the original files on the target server are in a `.zip` file in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/backups`.

8. Optional: Edit the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` file and apply any settings you want to copy over from the existing source server.


   **Note:** If target server is part of a load balancing cluster, wait until the next timed task schedule completes before restarting the server. This ensures that the imported data is replicated to other nodes in the cluster and the database.

**Import Web GUI data only:**

**Procedure**

1. Copy `data.zip` from the source server to the directory `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/input` on the target server.

2. On the target server make sure that you are logged in as an administrative user and that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is running.

3. As supplied, the utility writes information, warning, and error messages to the log file. Change the level of logging, if required.

4. If your installation of the Web GUI does not use the default location:
   a. Navigate to the directory `webgui-home/integration/plugins`.
   b. Edit the file `OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings.properties`.
   c. Locate the following line
      ```
      TIP.Cellname=TIPCell
      ```
   d. Immediately after this line, add the following line:
      ```
      product.home=webgui-home
      ```
      Replace `webgui-home` with the actual installation directory of the Web GUI.

   **Note:** The default installation directory of the Web GUI is one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNIX</th>
<th>Linux</th>
<th>Windows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ibm/tivoli/netcool/omnibus_webgui</td>
<td></td>
<td>C:\IBM\tivoli\netcool\omnibus_webgui</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Navigate to the directory containing the utility, `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.

6. Enter one of the following commands to import the data:

   - **UNIX**
     ```
     ./tipcli.sh Import --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home/integration/plugins/OMNIbusWebGUI_clone_settings.properties
     ```
   - **Windows**
     ```
     tipcli.bat Import --username tipadmin --password tippass --settingFile webgui-home\integration\plugins\OMNIbusWebGUIClone_settings.properties
     ```

   Replace `tipadmin` and `tippass` with the user name and password of the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrative user.

7. Verify that the utility has added or updated files as required:
   a. Check the log file, `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/tipcli.log`, and ensure there were no errors.
   b. Verify that backup copies of the original files on the target server are in a `.zip` file in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/backups`. 

---

Chapter 1. Administering the server  

21
8. Optional: Edit the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml file and apply any settings you want to copy over from the existing source server.


   **Note:** If target server is part of a load balancing cluster, wait until the next timed task schedule completes before restarting the server. This ensures that the imported data is replicated to other nodes in the cluster and the database.

### Setting the logging level for the utility

As supplied, the export/import utility writes information messages to the log file in addition to warnings and errors. Use this procedure to customize the level of logging during export and import operations.

**Procedure**

1. Navigate to the directory containing the logging properties file:
   ```bash
cd tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/
```

2. Open the file `logging.properties` in a text editor.

3. Locate the property `java.util.logging.FileHandler.level` and set its value to the required level. Commonly used values, in increasing severity, are:
   - INFO: This value returns INFO, WARNING, and SEVERE messages.
   - WARNING: This value returns WARNING, and SEVERE messages.
   - SEVERE: This value returns SEVERE messages.

Other available values are FINE, FINER, and FINEST. Each of these produces increasing numbers of messages. They can be helpful when diagnosing a problem in an import or export utility. After using one of these values, however, be sure to return to the original value before recommencing normal operations on the server.

   For example, setting the property to WARNING, excludes INFO messages from the log file.

4. Save the file and exit from the text editor.

### Backing up and restoring data

To prevent the loss of information in the event of a disaster, and for disaster recovery, back up your installation of the Web GUI and the Tivoli Integrated Portal.

**Related tasks:**

1. "Restarting the server" on page [1](#)

   After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

### Backing up and restoring the Web GUI

Use the Web GUI export/import utility to back up and restore Web GUI configuration data.

**Procedure**

- To back up the Web GUI configuration data, use the export facility of the Web GUI export/import utility. This creates a .zip file that you can copy to a secure place.
To restore previously backed up Web GUI data, use the import facility of the Web GUI export/import utility. Edit the properties file to specify the files you want to restore and then import the data.

Related tasks:
“Copying data between Web GUI servers” on page 10
The Web GUI has a utility to copy selected data from one server to another.

Backing up and restoring the Tivoli Integrated Portal

Use the Tivoli Integrated Portal export/import facilities to back up and restore the Tivoli Integrated Portal configuration data.

Procedure
- To back up the Tivoli Integrated Portal configuration data, use the Tivoli Integrated Portal export facility. This creates a .zip file that you can copy to a secure place.
- To restore previously backed up Tivoli Integrated Portal data, use the Tivoli Integrated Portal import facility.

Related concepts:
“Exporting and importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data” on page 70
You can export customized configuration data from an existing Tivoli Integrated Portal Web GUI installation to another by exporting the data and subsequently importing the exported data.

Backing up and restoring the Deployment Engine

Use the Deployment Engine (DE) backup script before installing additional components or other products that are based on the Tivoli Integrated Portal platform. If you need to recover the original configuration after a failure, you can then run the Deployment Engine restore script.

About this task

The Deployment Engine performs the installation of new and upgraded products. It keeps track of the installed components and skips installing a given component if it is already present on the system. Perform the following steps to back up or restore the DE database.

Procedure

1. From the command line, change to the acsi directory:
   - Windows: cd C:\Program Files\IBM\Common\acsi
   - Linux: /var/ibm/common/acsi
     For Linux and UNIX-based systems, the path to the acsi directory varies depending on whether you are installing as root or as a non-root user, as follows:
     - Installing as a non-root user, the path is relative to the user's home directory:
       <non-root user home directory>/.asci_<user_name>
     - Installing as root, the path is as follows:
       /var/ibm/common/acsi
   - Windows: setenv.bat
   - Linux: /usr/bin/acsi

2. Initialize the Deployment Engine environment from the command line:
   - Windows: setenv.bat
   - Linux: /usr/bin/acsi
   - UNIX: . setenv.sh
3. Change to the bin directory:
   - Windows: Change to the bin child directory, that is:
     C:\Program Files\IBM\Common\asci\bin
   - Linux, UNIX: For Linux and UNIX-based systems, the path to the bin directory varies depending on whether you are installing as root or as a non-root user, as follows:
     - For a non-root user, change to the bin child directory, that is:
       <non-root user home directory>/.asci_<user_name>/bin
     - For root, the path is as follows:
       /usr/ibm/common/asci/bin

4. Run the backup script to back up the Deployment Engine database, as follows:
   - Windows: de_backupdb.cmd
   - Linux, UNIX: de_backupdb

5. If you need to restore the Deployment Engine database, from the bin directory run the restore script:
   - Windows: de_restoredb.cmd
   - Linux, UNIX: de_restoredb

What to do next

If you backed up the Deployment Engine database, you can run the installer now to add additional components or products. If you restored the Deployment Engine database, you can resume using the original installed environment.
Chapter 2. Administering the GUI framework

You can use the functions of Tivoli Integrated Portal to administer the setup of your Web GUI installation.

About this task

Tip: If you do not find the information that you require in the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus information center, see the IBM Websphere Application Server information center at the following Web address:


Tip: If you do not find the information that you require in this publication, see the IBM Websphere Application Server information center at the following Web address:


Tivoli Integrated Portal layout

The layout of the portal user interface has these major elements.
Banner
Displays a common image across all portal installations. The banner includes a greeting to the user as well as links to log out of the portal and to open online help. The View selection list in the banner controls which nodes are displayed in the navigation as well as pages that are opened when the view is selected.

Page bar
Displays tabs to select between open pages. The page bar allows you to work on different pages without closing the page or losing unsaved data. For example, if you are working on an application on Page A, you can open an application on another page to gather information about a resource that you need to finish the form on Page A without losing any unsaved data you have already entered. Multiple pages can be opened at one time, but only one of the open pages is in focus (current page). The page bar also contains a Select Action drop-down list for performing actions on the current page.

Navigation pane
Displays a set of navigation nodes used for accessing content. The nodes shown in the navigation pane are only those to which you have access.

Work area
Displays the current page that you are working on. The page contains one or more Web applications or portlets, each in its own portlet window with a title bar.
How to customize a Tivoli Integrated Portal setup

Use this information to learn about the resources provided in Tivoli Integrated Portal, so that you can administer your installation in line with your requirements.

To get started setting up the portal, you should already be familiar with the concepts and characteristics of the layout. You should take time navigating through the portal to become familiar with the portlets, pages, views, roles, and preference profiles that are provided. As you work with the portal, you will create some of these resources to suit your organization's needs.

Understanding the structure of the portal

Access to each level in the portal organization is assigned based on the users' roles. Keep each role in mind when planning how to structure the portal content.

Content in the portal is composed of portlets. The following figure shows how portlets are arranged on a page using a row and column layout. Access to each page, and to each portlet on each page, is assigned to users based on their defined role.

Each page is accessed from the navigation pane, either from the portal root or they can be grouped into folders. The hierarchical structure of the navigation affects how quickly users can find a page and work with the portlets on that page.
Folders and pages can be assembled into views that the user can select from the **View** drop down list in the banner. Each view can include pages that are initially launched when the view is selected.

Finally, you can define a set of preferences, called a *preference profile*, that determines what views are available to each role, and whether the navigation pane should be displayed.
Related information:

"Administering roles” on page 115
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Roles to add and remove roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.

"Administering pages” on page 30
Portal content is composed of pages, folders, and external URLs. Each of these resources is represented in the navigation pane as a node. Click Settings > Pages to create, edit, and delete pages and folders for the portal navigation. You can also edit external URLs that are launched from the navigation pane. You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

"Administering views” on page 42
Views are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal view differ from the view that you can configure in the Web GUI. Web GUI views are a means of constraining the columns that are displayed in event lists.

"Administering portlets” on page 46
Portlets are web applications that display information or provide a service in a portal page. You can only work with portlets that have been deployed to the portal. Use Portlets to create, edit, and delete a portlet from a page.

"Administering console preference profiles” on page 54
Preference profiles are a collection of portal behavior preferences for using the portal that are created by the portal administrator. These preferences include the visibility of the navigation tree, contents of the view selection list, and the default view. Assign preference profiles to roles to manage how the navigation area and view selections are displayed to the users in the role.

How to customize a Tivoli Integrated Portal setup

Use this information to learn about the resources provided in Tivoli Integrated Portal, so that you can administer your installation in line with your requirements.

Procedure

1. Define your portal users and what tasks they perform. Portal users are assigned to roles, which are used to determine what tasks they can perform. As you assess the users' tasks, think about how these roles will be defined. Consider how the community of users will be assigned to different roles and whether there are any existing roles that you can use, or if you need to create new roles. Roles can be created without assigning access to any resources. This step can be performed later.

2. Review the content. Users' tasks are performed using portlets on portal pages. You need to understand what portlets are available and how they will be used to perform these tasks. For each portlet, determine which roles should have access and which roles should be restricted.

3. Create a navigation structure of pages and folders. Determine which pages are currently used to access the portlets. Are these pages sufficient for the roles that you have defined, or do you need to create new pages? For existing pages, do you need to add or remove any portlets or change the way they are arranged on the page? Consider that multiple roles can access a page with different access to the portlets on that page.
Review the folders in the navigation and the pages that are contained in these folders. Do these folders help the users find their content? Do you need to edit existing folders or create new folders? Should you move any pages between folders? What folders or pages should be hidden for each role?

4. Organize the content and navigation into views. Determine which navigation folders and pages have a related purpose for each role. You can define one or more views for each role, and even make a single view appear differently between roles based on access control. Each view can also include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Each of these options is provided to help remove other content and pages that can distract users.

5. Define the presentation for each role. Determine which views should be available to users in a role. For some roles, you can remove the navigation pane and just provide a set of startup pages. You can assign exactly one preference profile per role.

6. Test the portal for each role. Create a test user for each role. Log into the portal as each user and verify the use cases.
   - The navigation is shown or not, depending on the setting in the preference profile.
   - The view selection list shows only the views to which the role has access and as defined by the preference profile.
   - Each view shows only the navigation nodes and startup pages allowed for that role.
   - Each folder shows only the pages allowed for that role.
   - Each page launched in the navigation pane shows only the portlets allowed for that role.
   - If the role has Editor access to a page, the **Edit Page** option is available in the **Page Actions** selection list. This option is not showing if the user's role does not have Editor access.
   - Each page shows only the portlets allowed for that role.
   - The portlet title bar provides an **Edit options** icon that provides access to two options, a **Personalize** option, and an **Edit Shared Settings** option. The **Personalize** option is available, if the user's role has Privileged User access. The **Edit Shared Settings** option is available if the user's role has Editor access. Otherwise, neither of these options are available.

   Go back and make corrections as indicated by the results of your testing.

7. Move the portal to production use. Assign roles to actual users and notify the user community that the portal server is ready for use.

---

**Administering pages**

Portal content is composed of pages, folders, and external URLs. Each of these resources is represented in the navigation pane as a node. Click **Settings > Pages** to create, edit, and delete pages and folders for the portal navigation. You can also edit external URLs that are launched from the navigation pane. You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

**Field descriptions**

This section describes the fields and controls in the main panel of Pages.

**Select all icon**

Selects all items displayed in the table for deletion. If you are displaying
only a filtered set of items, only those items are selected. You can deselect specific items before actually deleting.

**Deselect all icon**
Deselects all items displayed in the table.

**New Page**
Opens a panel for creating a new page.

**New Folder**
Opens a panel for creating a new folder.

**Delete**
Immediately deletes all selected items in the list. Only Custom resource types can be deleted.

**Filter**
Type in this field to quickly find an item in the table. This field is useful when there are a large number of items to look through.

**Select**
Selects or deselects a single item in the table.

**Name**
Displays the title of the page as it is shown in the navigation.

**Type**
Displays the type of page.

**Unique Name**
Displays the string used by the system to uniquely identify the page or folder.

Related tasks:

- "Creating startup pages" on page 39

You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.

Related information:

- "Administering portlets" on page 46

Portlets are web applications that display information or provide a service in a portal page. You can only work with portlets that have been deployed to the portal. Use Portlets to create, edit, and delete a portlet from a page.

- "Administering roles" on page 115

Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Roles to add and remove roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.

## Creating pages

The first step of creating a page is to set the properties of the page. This properties include the page name, the location of the page in the navigation pane, and the page layout. All pages that are created in the console have a resource type of "Custom".

### Procedure

To create a page:

1. Log in as a user with the iscadmins role and click Settings > Pages. Then, in the Pages portlet, click New Page.

2. In the Page name field, type a descriptive name for the page and in the Page location field indicate where you want the page to be displayed in the navigation pane. Consider the content on the page and how users will find that content by looking for the page name in the navigation pane.

3. Select the page layout.
4. Click the **Optional Setting** label and associate one or more roles with the new page and set the level of access for each role.

5. Click **OK**. The taskbar tab is updated with the name of the new page and a Choose a Portlet window is displayed.

**Results**

The new page is displayed. Depending on the page layout that you specified, the page is opened in freeform mode or classic mode, for you to select the portlets for the page.

**What to do next**

Select the portlets that you want to be displayed on the page.

**Related tasks:**

"Selecting items for display on a page"

After you created a page, or while you are editing a page, select or change the portlets that are displayed on the page. If the page layout is in classic mode, you split the page into sections and then select the item that is displayed in each section from a list. If the page layout is in freeform mode, you drag the items from a content palette onto the page, and then position and size each item. Items can be portlets, widgets, or iWidgets. The items for selection depend on the products that are in your Tivoli Integrated Portal installation.

"Configuring communications between portlets using wires" on page 33

You can create connections, or *wires*, between portlets so that they can exchange messages with each other. When an action occurs in a source portlet, it creates an event, which contains information that can be sent to other portlets. To work with wires on a page, the page must be in edit mode.

**Selecting items for display on a page**

After you created a page, or while you are editing a page, select or change the portlets that are displayed on the page. If the page layout is in classic mode, you split the page into sections and then select the item that is displayed in each section from a list. If the page layout is in freeform mode, you drag the items from a content palette onto the page, and then position and size each item. Items can be portlets, widgets, or iWidgets. The items for selection depend on the products that are in your Tivoli Integrated Portal installation.

**About this task**

**Restriction:** The following restriction applies if you create the page in freeform mode: If you overlay portlets on top of another, so that one portlet is only partially visible beneath another portlet, limitations apply. If the portlet underneath is applet-based and the portlet on top is HTML-based, the applet-based portlet is visible through the HTML portlet. This limitation shows when you arrange the portlets on the page. The following Web GUI portlets are applet-based: Active Event List (AEL), Maps, and Event Dashboard. For example, if you arrange an Event Viewer over an AEL, the AEL is visible through the Event Viewer. To avoid this problem, arrange applet-based portlets and HTML-based portlets alongside each other, not over each other.

**Procedure**

- If the page layout is in classic mode:
1. Create a window for the new portlet by splitting one of the windows displayed.
   – Use the **Horizontal split** icon to create a window below an existing window.
   – Use the **Vertical split** icon to create a window to the right of an existing window.

   The Portlet Picker is displayed within the new portlet window for selecting the portlet content.

2. Scroll through the list or use the **Filter** field to find the portlet you want to add.

3. Click **OK**. The portlet is added to the window.

   * If the page layout is in freeform mode:
     1. From the content palette, select an item. The selectable items are displayed in alphabetical order. Use the **Next** and **Previous** buttons to scroll between the items. Hover over an item to display a short description of the item.
     2. Drag the item into the lower section of the page, and position and size it. To size the item hover over the lower right corner and drag the mouse until the item reaches the right size.
     3. Add further items to the page, if required, and position and size them.

**What to do next**

- To specify the preference for the item, click **Edit options**. You can set the default portlet preferences by clicking **Edit shared settings**.
- To configure the items to communicate, click **Show wires**.

**Related tasks:**

“Creating pages” on page 31

The first step of creating a page is to set the properties of the page. This properties include the page name, the location of the page in the navigation pane, and the page layout. All pages that are created in the console have a resource type of “Custom”.

**Configuring communications between portlets using wires**

You can create connections, or **wires**, between portlets so that they can exchange messages with each other. When an action occurs in a source portlet, it creates an event, which contains information that can be sent to other portlets. To work with wires on a page, the page must be in edit mode.

Default wires are provided with Web GUI portlets. You can develop custom wires and the transformation that manipulate the event generated by a source target before it is delivered to the target portlet.

The target portlet can be on the same or on a different page from the portlet that is the source of the event. A page can also be the target of a wire. In this case, all portlets on the target page can receive the event. In response to the event, the target portlet can update its content.

Not all portlets support wires and events. Portlets must use specific code to process events that are sent or received through a wire. Each portlet is designed to process certain events. You should have thorough knowledge of the portlets and the events that they support before creating or editing wires. To determine if a portlet supports an event, click the **Events** icon to view a list of all events that the portlets subscribes to or publishes.
Some target portlets are capable of processing events after they have been transformed to match certain criteria. For example, an event that sends the cost of a transaction in one currency might need to be transformed to a different currency before the target portlet can receive it. When you create a wire, you have the option of selecting a transformation for the event, if the target portlet requires it. The console provides the Simple String Transformation to transform from one event to another. Other transformations might be available from other applications in the console.

**Before you begin**

If the functionality that you require is not provided by the default wires, develop the custom wires and transformations that you need.

**Procedure**

1. Click **Show Wires**. The Summary of wires panel is displayed. The Wire Type column indicates whether the existing wires are system or custom.
   - System wires are created by applications in the console. You cannot create, edit, or delete system wires. Select or deselect the checkboxes under Enable to enable or disable a wire.
   - Custom wires are created by console users with “Editor” access to a page. You can also edit and delete these wires as necessary.
2. Click **New Wire**. A dialog is displayed that allows you to select an event provided by a source portlet on the page. If no events are listed, then you cannot create a wire from this page. You can select from the events listed to read a description of each event.
3. Select one of the available source events for the new wire and click **OK**. A dialog is opened that allows you to select the target for the new wire. You can browse through the pages and folders listed to select a target portlet or page, or use the search field to find the target.
4. Select a target for the new wire.
5. Optional: If the target is on another page, select from the following options:
   - **Load the selected target page**
     This option opens the target page if it is not already opened when the event is launched.
   - **Switch to the selected target page**
     This option makes the target page the current page when the event is launched.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Load the selected target page</td>
<td>This option opens the target page if it is not already opened when the event is launched.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switch to the selected target page</td>
<td>This option makes the target page the current page when the event is launched.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Click **OK**. A dialog is opened that allows you to select from a list of transformations. Transformations are used to change event names or parameters so that the target can process them. You should be familiar with the transformation and target before defining a transformation for the wire. You can select from the list of transformations to read a description.
7. Select the transformation for the new wire, or select **None** if no transformation is needed, and click **OK**. If you selected “Simple String Transformation”, select a target event from the list and select the source parameter names for each target.
When the original event is sent, it is transformed into this target event before it is received by the target portlet.

Related concepts:

“Developing transformations” on page 66

Transformations manipulate the event generated by a source target before it is delivered to the target portlet. You can develop a transformation to convert an event name, parameter name, or parameter value to match the needs of a target portlet. Using transformations to handle events is optional.

Related tasks:

“Creating pages” on page 31

The first step of creating a page is to set the properties of the page. This properties include the page name, the location of the page in the navigation pane, and the page layout. All pages that are created in the console have a resource type of “Custom”.

Editing page content

Pages are an arrangement of one or more portlets in the work area and contain the portlets needed to complete tasks. Users whose roles have “Editor” access to a page can edit the layout and content. Users with “Privileged User” access can change the size of portlet windows on the page.

To put a page into edit mode:
1. Locate the page you want to edit in the navigation pane and open the page.
2. In the page bar, select Edit Page from the page actions selection list.

Procedure

You can make the following changes to the content of a page:

- To replace a portlet in a window:
  1. Click the Replace content icon in the title bar where you want to replace the portlet content. The Portlet Picker is displayed within the new window.
  2. Scroll through the list or use the Filter field to find the portlet you want to add.
  3. Click Add Portlet. The portlet is added to the window.
- To remove a portlet and its window, click the Delete icon in the title bar. The content is removed immediately without a warning prompt.
- To create wires between portlets so they can share information and updates, click Show Wires. Before working with wires, make sure that you have enough information about the events that a portlet supports. See “Configuring communications between portlets using wires” on page 33 for more information.
- To change the settings of a page:
  1. Click Page settings. Then, click General.
  2. In the Page name field, type a descriptive name for the page and in the Page location field indicate where you want the page to be displayed in the navigation pane. Consider the content on the page and how users will find that content by looking for the page name in the navigation pane.
  3. Use the Navigation visibility list to indicate whether or not you want the page to be listed in the navigation pane.
  4. From the Page persistence list, make one of the following selections:
     - Client side (default setting) - This setting preserves any changes that the user makes on the page when the user navigates away from the page.
Changes include not only form data, but any state changes to portlets, for example, opening edit mode, switching to another panel in the portlet, or minimizing a portlet. Page data and page state are maintained on the client side until the user closes the page or logs out of the console.

- None
- Server side - This setting maintains unsubmitted or unsaved form data from a page when the user navigates away from the page. The data is saved on the server and fetched when the user returns to the page. Unsaved data is saved until the user closes the page or logs out of the console.

**Note:** The Server side setting only applies to forms on a page. Any user interaction outside of a form is not maintained.

5. Use the **Page tasking** radio buttons to indicate whether multiple instances of the page can be launched.

6. In the **Component direction** drop-down list, you can accept the **Default** setting to allow the component direction to be governed at console level or select one of the other settings to indicate whether you want to display page components from left-to-right or from right-to-left. If you select a setting other than **Default**, it will override any component direction setting that may be set at console or browser level.

7. In the **Text direction** drop-down list, you can accept the **Default** setting to allow the text direction to be governed at console level or select **Left-to-Right** or **Right-to-Left** to indicate the direction that you want the page text to display. You can also select **Contextual Input** so that for pages that include text entry fields, the direction of text is dependent on the language used to enter data. If you select a setting other than **Default**, it will override any text direction setting that may be set at console or browser level.

- Click the **Roles** tab to update the list of roles with permissions to the page and their access level. A list of all roles with access to the page is displayed.

**User**
Roles with User access, have view access to the configured portlet, when it is subsequently added to a page.

**Privileged User**
Roles with privileged user access, have view access and such users can personalize their own experience of a portlet through the **Edit options** icon in the portlet taskbar. Personalizing a portlet does not affect the experience of other users of the portlet.

**Editor**
Roles with Editor access can subsequently edit shared settings for a portlet through the **Edit options** icon in the taskbar. When an editor modifies shared settings, it affects other portlet user settings for that portlet.

Also, roles with Editor access can subsequently edit the portlet's general settings in the Portlet Wizard. Editor access (unlike manager access) does not provide access to portlet-specific customization pages or to the security settings page in the Portlet Wizard.

**Manager**
Roles with Manager access can subsequently modify any aspect of the portlet in the Edit Portlet Wizard.
Note: As the creator of the custom portlet you are given Manager access by default.

Attention: Make sure that the roles with access to a page also have access to the portlets that are on the page.
- Click the View Membership tab to update the list of views that include this page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To add this page to a view</td>
<td>Click Add and select one or more views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove this page from a view</td>
<td>Select one or more views in the list and click Remove.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- When you are satisfied with your updates, click Save to commit your changes.

Results

You are returned to the page with your changes displayed.

Related tasks:
- Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173
  You can change the settings of the portlets to customize their appearance and setup to your requirements.
- "Configuring communications between portlets using wires” on page 33
  You can create connections, or wires, between portlets so that they can exchange messages with each other. When an action occurs in a source portlet, it creates an event, which contains information that can be sent to other portlets. To work with wires on a page, the page must be in edit mode.

Creating folders

Folders are used to group nodes in the navigation pane. All folders that are created in the portal have a resource type of “Custom”.

Procedure

1. Click Settings > Pages in the navigation pane. A Page Settings page is displayed.
2. Click New Folder. The properties panel for the new folder is displayed.
3. Complete the fields in the properties panel.
4. Click Save to save your changes and return to Pages.

Results

The new folder is displayed in the summary table. The folder is also displayed in the navigation pane once you have added page content to it. Add other nodes to the folder by editing their location properties.
Editing the properties of a page, folder, or external URL

You can edit the properties of custom and system navigation nodes, which include pages, folders, and external URLs. Properties of a node include its display name and its location in the navigation. You can also indicate whether multiple or only single instances of a page node can be launched in the portal.

About this task

When changes are made to a system node, the updated system node is saved as System - Customized. You cannot delete a system node. Instead, you can restore the system node, which deletes the custom copy of it.

You can perform the following tasks when you edit a node’s properties.

- Define who can access a page or external URL and the level of access
- Determine which view should include the node. When the view is selected, the page, folder, or URL is included in the navigation pane for that view.
- Change the name that is displayed in the navigation pane for a node.
- Change the location of a node in the navigation pane. For example, you can group pages into folders.

Attention: You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

Procedure

1. Click Settings > Pages in the navigation pane. Pages is opened displaying navigation nodes in a summary table.
2. Locate the node that you want to edit in the table provided. Use the filter in the table to type in the node name and quickly display it.
3. Click the link for the node provided in the Name column. The properties panel for the node is displayed.
4. Make your changes to the node's Page, Folder, and External URL properties.
5. Click Save when you have finished.

Results

The changes you made are reflected in the navigation pane.

Deleting custom pages and folders

You can delete only pages with the resource type of Custom. These are nodes created using the portal.

About this task

System nodes that have been customized can be restored.

Attention: Before deleting a page or folder, consider whether any users are actively using the resource and any impacts this might have on services. If necessary, notify users in advance of any plans for changes that could affect their work.
Procedure
1. Click Settings > Pages in the navigation pane. Pages is opened displaying portal navigation nodes in a summary table.
2. Locate the node that you want to delete in the table provided. Use the filter in the table to type in the node name and quickly display it.
3. Check the box in the Select column for the node. You can select more than one custom page or folder for deletion.
4. Click Delete. A message is displayed at the top prompting you to confirm the deletion.
5. Click OK.

Results
The page or folder is deleted and removed from the navigation pane.

Restoring system pages, folders, and external URLs
System nodes are always preserved with their original settings. After making changes to a system node, the changes are saved in a customized copy of the page, folder, or URL. When you restore a system node, the customized copy is deleted and the original system node is restored in its place.

About this task
To delete the customized copy and restore the system node, follow these steps.

Procedure
1. Click Settings > Pages in the navigation pane. Pages is opened displaying portal navigation nodes in a summary table.
2. Locate the node that you want to edit in the table provided. Use the filter in the table to type in the node name and quickly display it.
3. Click the link for the node provided in the Name column. The properties panel for the node is displayed.
4. Scroll to the bottom of the panel and click Restore.
5. Click OK to save your changes.

Results
You are returned to the main panel of Pages. The resource type of the node is displayed as System.

Creating startup pages
You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.

Before you begin
Make sure that the user account you want to use has the iscadmins role assigned.

About this task
To create startup pages:
Procedure

1. Optional: To create a new role, click Users and Groups > Role Management and follows the steps under “Creating roles” on page 118.

2. Optional: To create a new page:
   a. Click Settings > Page Management
   b. Follow the steps under Creating classic pages Add the necessary content to the page. For example, you can add AEL portlets to an IFrame portlet along with other content for the intended users.
   c. To specify the role or roles required to access the page, click Roles with access to this page. Click Add and select the required roles.

3. Add the startup page to a view:
   a. Click Settings > View Management and click New.
   b. In the View name field, type a name for the view.
   c. Select Hide any open pages in the work area that are not part of this view.
   d. Click Roles with Access to This View.
   e. On the Available Roles page, select the required roles and click Add.

   Tip: To give Web GUI administrators access to the view, select the ncw_admin role.
   f. Select the level of access for each assigned role.

   Tip: Set editor-level access for the ncw_admin role.
   g. Click Pages in This View and click Add.
   h. On the Available Pages page, select the required pages and click Add.
   i. Select Select and Set all pages in this view to launch.
   j. Click Save.

4. Link the view and the role by creating a console preference profile:
   a. Click Settings > Console Preference Profiles and click New.
   b. In the Preference profile name field, type a name for the profile.
   c. Select Show navigation tree.
   d. To restrict the navigation options to only the pages specified in the view, click Required view and clear All tasks.
   e. Clear Core views.
   f. Click Roles using this preference profile and click Add.
   g. On the Available Roles page, select the required roles and click Add.
   h. Under Default console view select the view that you created in step 3.
   i. Click Save.

5. To assign roles to users:
   a. Click Users & Groups > User Roles.
   b. Complete any combination of the search fields to help locate the users.
   c. Select how many users to display and click Search. A list of matching users appears in the grid.
   d. Click the user ID of the user you want to assign roles to.
   e. From the Role(s) list, select the roles to assign the user.
   f. Click Save.

6. To assign roles to user groups:
a. Click Users & Groups > Group Roles.
b. Complete any combination of the search fields to help locate the groups.
c. Select how many groups to display and click Search. A list of groups appears in the grid.
d. Click the name of the group you want to assign roles to.
e. From the Role(s) list, select the roles to assign the user group.
f. Click Save.

Results

When a user belonging to a group that has the assigned role logs in, the selected startup page is automatically loaded. In the View list above the navigation, the user can switch between navigation displays: All tasks displays all the navigation options assigned to the role, and viewname displays all the options assigned to the view. If a user is assigned to multiple roles that have startup pages, all pages are automatically loaded after login.
Related tasks:

“Creating roles” on page 118
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. All roles that are created in the portal have a resource type of Custom. This procedure describes creating a role for testing purposes. After completing these steps, you can remove or edit this role for production use.

“Creating views” on page 44
Views determine what pages are listed in the navigation pane as well as which pages are launched when the view is selected. All views that are created in the portal have a resource type of Custom. This procedure walks you through the task of creating a view for testing purposes. After completing these steps, you can remove or edit this view for production use.

“Creating preference profiles” on page 55
Preference profiles are a collection of console behavior preferences for using the console that are created by the console administrator. Follow these steps to create a preference profile and assign it to a role.

“Creating users” on page 107
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

“Creating groups” on page 124
You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

“Administering users” on page 104
You can perform tasks that help you manage users.

“Administering groups” on page 121
You can perform tasks that help you manage groups.

Related information:

“Administering pages” on page 30
Portal content is composed of pages, folders, and external URLs. Each of these resources is represented in the navigation pane as a node. Click Settings > Pages to create, edit, and delete pages and folders for the portal navigation. You can also edit external URLs that are launched from the navigation pane. You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

“Administering console preference profiles” on page 54
Preference profiles are a collection of portal behavior preferences for using the portal that are created by the portal administrator. These preferences include the visibility of the navigation tree, contents of the view selection list, and the default view. Assign preference profiles to roles to manage how the navigation area and view selections are displayed to the users in the role.

“Administering views”
Views are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal view differ from the view that you can configure in the Web GUI. Web GUI views are a means of constraining the columns that are displayed in event lists.

Administering views

Views are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the navigation pane.
Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal view differ from the view that you can configure in the Web GUI. Web GUI views are a means of constraining the columns that are displayed in event lists.

For example, if you find a set of tasks related to obtaining sales and cost reports from retail stores throughout a region, you could create a view called “Reports” that includes all of the pages associated with those tasks in the navigation. Each page, along with the folders that include them, would be added to the view. You could then set some of the most important pages to launch when the view is selected. In this way, views can make your experience with the portal more productive than sorting through all of the navigation tasks that are displayed by default.

If you have sufficient access, you can create your own custom views. You can only edit system views.

To access Views in the console, click Settings > Views in the navigation.

**Field descriptions**

This section describes the fields and controls in the main panel of Views.

**Select all icon**
Selects all items displayed in the table for deletion. If you are displaying only a filtered set of items, only those items are selected. You can deselect specific items before actually deleting.

**Deselect all icon**
Deselects all items displayed in the table.

**New**
Opens a panel for creating a new view.

**Delete**
Immediately deletes all selected items in the list. Only Custom resource types can be deleted.

**Filter**
Type in this field to quickly find an item in the table. This field is useful when there are a large number of items to look through.

**Select**
Selects or deselects a single item in the table.

**View Name**
Displays the name of the view as it is shown in the View selection list in the banner. Click the name to edit the view.

**Type**
Displays the type of view. The actions you can perform on a view depend upon its type.

**Role Count**
Displays the number of roles that have access to this view.

**Page Count**
Displays the number of pages that are available in the portal when the view is selected.
Creating startup pages

You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.

Related information:

“Creating startup pages” on page 39

You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.

Related information:

“Administering roles” on page 115

Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Roles to add and remove roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.

Creating views

Views determine what pages are listed in the navigation pane as well as which pages are launched when the view is selected. All views that are created in the portal have a resource type of Custom. This procedure walks you through the task of creating a view for testing purposes. After completing these steps, you can remove or edit this view for production use.

Before you begin

You should understand the portal layout before starting this task.

Procedure

1. Click Settings > Views in the navigation pane. The Views page is displayed with the list of system and custom views in the portal.
2. Click New. The properties panel for the new view is displayed.
3. Enter a descriptive name for the view. This name is displayed in the View selection list in the banner.
4. Expand the Roles with Access to This View section and click Add. The Add Roles panel is displayed with a list of available roles. For this task, add a role that can be used to test the view before adding access for other roles.
   Attention: Granting access to the view does not grant access to the pages within the view.
5. Select your role in the table. You can use the filter to quickly find your role if the list of roles is very large.
6. Click Add after making your selection. You are returned to the view properties. The next step is to determine the pages that make up the view.
7. Expand the Pages in This View section and click Add. The Add Pages panel is displayed with a list of available pages.
8. Select several folders or pages in the list. Selecting a folder also selects all of the pages contained in that folder. You can individually deselect pages in a folder if necessary.
9. Click Add after making your selections. You are returned to the view properties.
10. Select the Launch option for two or three of the pages and select one of the launch pages as the default.
11. Click Save to save the new view and return to the Views page.

Results

Select the new view from the View drop down list located above the navigation pane. Verify that all pages and folder that you selected are displayed in the
navigation, that the pages selected to launch are available is the page bar, and that the default selection has focus in the work area.

Editing views
Views provide a limited set of nodes in the navigation pane and optional set of startup pages to help users focus on their tasks. If you have sufficient authorization in the portal, you can change the view name, navigation content, and access permissions for system and custom views. You can delete only custom views. Changes you make to a system view are saved as System Customized.

About this task

Procedure
1. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Views. The Views page is displayed with the list of system and custom views in the portal.
2. Click the view name in the list displayed in Views. This displays the view’s properties.
3. Optional: Expand Roles with Access to This View to update the list of roles with permissions to the view and their access level. A list of all roles with access to the view is displayed.

User
Roles with User access, have view access to the configured portlet, when it is subsequently added to a page.

Privileged User
Roles with privileged user access, have view access and such users can personalize their own experience of a portlet through the Edit options icon in the portlet taskbar. Personalizing a portlet does not affect the experience of other users of the portlet.

Editor
Roles with Editor access can subsequently edit shared settings for a portlet through the Edit options icon in the taskbar. When an editor modifies shared settings, it affects other portlet user settings for that portlet.

Also, roles with Editor access can subsequently edit the portlet's general settings in the Portlet Wizard. Editor access (unlike manager access) does not provide access to portlet-specific customization pages or to the security settings page in the Portlet Wizard.

Manager
Roles with Manager access can subsequently modify any aspect of the portlet in the Edit Portlet Wizard.

Note: As the creator of the custom portlet you are given Manager access by default.

Note: Granting access to the view does not grant access to the pages within the view.
4. Optional: Expand Pages in This View to change which pages are displayed in the navigation when the view is selected.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add a page to the view</td>
<td>Click Add to add a page to the view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Option</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remove a page from the view</td>
<td>Select the page in the Select column and click Remove. You can select multiple pages to remove.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change the launch options for a page</td>
<td>Select Launch for each page that should be opened when the view is selected. Only one page can be in focus (current) when the view is selected. When multiple pages are set to launch, set the current page in the Default column.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click **Save** to save your changes and return to the main view panel.

**Results**

For customized versions of a system view, you can retrieve the system view settings by editing the system customized view and clicking **Restore**. The “system customized” version of the view is removed and replace by the original system view.

**Deleting custom views**

You can delete only views with the resource type of **Custom**. These are views created using the portal.

**About this task**

Customized versions of system views can be restored. Restoring a **System Customized** view deletes the custom copy and replaces it with the original system view.

**Attention:** Before deleting a view, consider whether any users are actively using the view and any impacts this might have on services. If necessary, notify users in advance of any plans for changes that could affect their work.

Follow these steps to delete a custom view.

**Procedure**

1. Click **Settings > Views** in the navigation pane. The Views page is displayed with the list of system and custom views in the portal.
2. Select the custom view that you want to delete. You can select more than one custom view.
3. Click **Delete**. A message is displayed at the top prompting you to confirm the deletion.
4. Click **OK**.

**Results**

The custom view is removed from the view list.

**Administering portlets**

Portlets are web applications that display information or provide a service in a portal page. You can only work with portlets that have been deployed to the portal. Use Portlets to create, edit, and delete a portlet from a page.
To access Portlets in the portal, click Settings > Portlets in the navigation pane. The main panel displays a list of all of the portlets in the portal.

In relation to the portlet palette that is displayed when creating a freeform page, portlets can be associated with one or more portlet catalogs. Portlets that are not organized into catalogs, are said to be uncategorized, but depending on your authorization, may still be listed in the portlet palette.

**Field descriptions**

This section describes the fields and controls in the main panel of the Portlets management page.

**New icon**
Launches the Create Portlet Wizard that allows you to create a customized copy of an existing portlet.

**Edit**
Launches the Edit Portlet Wizard that allows you to edit settings for a non-core portlet.

**Delete**
Deletes a selected custom portlet.

**Restore icon**
Reloads the portlets list.

**Filter**
Type in this field to quickly find an item in the table. This field is useful when there are a large number of items to look through.

**Select**
Selects or deselects a single item in the table.

**Name**
Displays the title of the portlet as it is shown on the page. To edit details for a portlet, click its name entry in the table to launch the Edit Portlet Wizard.

**Type**
Indicates whether a portlet is a core, system, or custom portlet.

**Catalog**
Displays the catalog that contains the portlet.

**Description**
Provides a description of a portlet and its intended function.

**Related information:**

“Administering pages” on page 30
Portal content is composed of pages, folders, and external URLs. Each of these resources is represented in the navigation pane as a node. Click Settings > Pages to create, edit, and delete pages and folders for the portal navigation. You can also edit external URLs that are launched from the navigation pane. You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

“Administering roles” on page 115
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Roles to add and remove roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.
Creating portlets

You can configure settings using an existing portlet to create a custom portlet. You can create many different custom portlets and configure them in the Create Portlet Wizard, each portlet with a different name and configuration settings. The portlet must already be installed in the portal for you to create a custom version of it.

About this task

Follow these steps to create and configure a custom portlet:

**Important:** Manager access to the Portlets portlet is required in order to be able to create and edit portlets in the Portlet Wizard.

**Procedure**

1. In the navigation pane, click **Settings > Portlets**. A list of all of the portlets is displayed in a scrollable table.
2. In the task bar, click the **New** icon to start the Create Portlet Wizard. The Welcome page is displayed.
3. Click **Next** to display the Select Base Portlet page. In this page, you can directly select an portlet on which to base your custom portlet or filter the number of portlets displayed by searching for portlets with a particular name.
4. Optional: To search for a portlet, enter a text string in the search field and click **Search**. To clear a search and again list all portlets, clear the search field and click **Search**.
5. Select a base portlet from list of portlets and click **Next**. The General portlet information page is displayed.
6. Required: Enter a new, descriptive name, which in most circumstances, becomes the portlet's display name.
7. Enter a description for the portlet, indicating its function.
8. Select a thumbnail icon that you want associated with the portlet. The selected thumbnail icon is used in the portlet palette when a user is creating a freeform page in the self-service dashboard.
9. Select a description image that you want associated with the portlet. The selected image is displayed when a user points to a thumbnail icon in the portlet palette when they are creating a freeform page in the self-service dashboard.
10. Optional: In the **Component direction** and **Text direction** fields, accept the default whereby portal components and text are displayed according to your browser settings. Alternatively, you can choose to impose either left-to-right or right-to-left display settings.
11. Optional: To associate the portlet with one or more portlet catalogs, select catalogs in the **Available Catalogs** list and move them to the **Selected Catalogs** list. Catalogs are used to logically group portlets when they are displayed in the portlet palette of the self-service dashboard.
12. Click **Next** to display the portlet Security page is displayed. In the Security page, you can provide some or all portal roles with varying levels of access to the portlet. The following access levels are available:

   **User**  
   Roles with User access, have view access to the configured portlet, when it is subsequently added to a page.

   **Privileged User**  
   Roles with privileged user access, have view access and such users
can personalize their own experience of a portlet through the Edit options icon in the portlet taskbar. Personalizing a portlet does not affect the experience of other users of the portlet.

Editor

Roles with Editor access can subsequently edit shared settings for a portlet through the Edit options icon in the taskbar. When an editor modifies shared settings, it affects other portlet user settings for that portlet.

Also, roles with Editor access can subsequently edit the portlet's general settings in the Portlet Wizard. Editor access (unlike manager access) does not provide access to portlet-specific customization pages or to the security settings page in the Portlet Wizard.

Manager

Roles with Manager access can subsequently modify any aspect of the portlet in the Edit Portlet Wizard.

Note: As the creator of the custom portlet you are given Manager access by default.

13. Optional: To associate a role with a particular access level for the portlet:
   a. Select the role in the Available Roles panel.
   b. In the right hand panel, click the access level that you want the role to be associated with and click Add to move the selected role to that access level's panel.

   For example, to provide the chartAdministrator role with Editor access, select chartAdministrator in the left panel and then click the Editor bar in the right hand panel to display its content panel. Click Add to move the chartAdministrator role to the Editor content panel.

14. Click Next to display portlet specific customization pages.

What to do next

Customize your portlet further in the portlet specific wizard pages. Portlet specific settings vary for each portlet type and you can use the portlet level help (available through Help (?) in the wizard page taskbar) to assist you. Once you have customized the portlet, and click Next, a Summary page is displayed where you can review your settings.

Note: Some portlets do not have customization pages associated with them. In those cases, when you click Next in the portlet Security page, the Summary page is displayed.

Editing portlets

Portlets provide content on a portal page, for example, viewing system information or submitting reports. If you have sufficient authorization, you can change access permissions to a portlet. You can also change the display name of the portlet and its configuration settings.

About this task

Note: You cannot edit portlets of the portlet type core.
**Important:** Manager access to the *Portlets* portlet is required in order to be able to create and edit portlets in the Portlet Wizard.

To edit details for a custom portlet:

**Procedure**

1. Click *Settings > Portlets* in the navigation pane. A list of all of the portlets is displayed in a scrollable table.

2. You can select the portlet that you want to edit in two ways:
   - Click the name of the portlet that you want to edit to start the Edit Portlet Wizard.
   - Select the radio button associated with the portlet that you want to edit and click the **Edit** icon to start the Edit Portlet Wizard.

   The Welcome page is displayed.

3. Click **Next** to display the General portlet information page.

4. Optional: Edit the portlet's name and description.

5. Optional: Select a thumbnail icon that you want associated with the portlet. The selected thumbnail icon is used in the portlet palette when a user is creating a freeform page in the self-service dashboard.

6. Optional: Select a description image that you want associated with the portlet. The selected image is displayed when a user points to a thumbnail icon in the portlet palette when they are creating a freeform page in the self-service dashboard.

7. Optional: To associate the portlet with one or more portlet catalogs, select catalogs in the **Available Catalogs** list and move them to the **Selected Catalogs** list. Catalogs are used to logically group portlets when they are displayed in the portlet palette of the self-service dashboard.

8. Click **Next** to display the portlet Security page is displayed. In the Security page, you can provide some or all portal roles with varying levels of access to the portlet. The following access levels are available:

   - **User** Roles with User access, have view access to the configured portlet, when it is subsequently added to a page.

   - **Privileged User** Roles with privileged user access, have view access and such users can personalize their own experience of a portlet through the **Edit options** icon in the portlet taskbar. Personalizing a portlet does not affect the experience of other users of the portlet.

   - **Editor**
     Roles with Editor access can subsequently edit shared settings for a portlet through the **Edit options** icon in the taskbar. When an editor modifies shared settings, it affects other portlet user settings for that portlet.

     Also, roles with Editor access can subsequently edit the portlet's general settings in the Portlet Wizard. Editor access (unlike manager access) does not provide access to portlet-specific customization pages or to the security settings page in the Portlet Wizard.

   - **Manager**
     Roles with Manager access can subsequently modify any aspect of the portlet in the Edit Portlet Wizard.
Note: As the creator of the custom portlet you are given Manager access by default.

9. Optional: To associate a role with a particular access level for the portlet:
   a. Select the role in the Available Roles panel.
   b. In the right hand panel, click the access level that you want the role to be associated with and click Add to move the selected role to that access level’s panel.

   For example, to provide the chartAdministrator role with Editor access, select chartAdministrator in the left panel and then click the Editor bar in the right hand panel to display its content panel. Click Add to move the chartAdministrator role to the Editor content panel.

What to do next

Customize your portlet further in the portlet specific wizard pages. Portlet specific settings vary for each portlet type and you can use the portlet level help (available through Help (?) in the wizard page taskbar) to assist you. Once you have customized the portlet, and click Next, a Summary page is displayed where you can review your settings.

Note: Some portlets do not have customization pages associated with them. In those cases, when you click Next in the portlet Security page, the Summary page is displayed.

Editing portlet shared settings

Some portlets include an Edit Shared Settings mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

Before you begin

You must have “Editor” access to the portlet to perform this task.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the page where the portlet is located.
2. Click Edit options in the portlet title bar. Two options are displayed:
   Personalize and Edit Shared Settings.
   Attention: If Edit Shared Settings option is not available, then either the portlet does not support Edit Shared Settings mode, or you do not have “Editor” access for the portlet.
3. Select Edit Shared Settings. The portlet displays shared settings that can be changed.
4. Make any changes to the settings and submit them when you are finished. The portlet might provide a Save, OK, or Submit button. Once you have submitted your changes, you should be returned to the main panel for the portlet. If not, click Back in the title bar.
Results

The shared settings for using this portlet are saved. If the portlet is located on more than one page, the updated settings will be observed on the other pages as well.

What to do next

The updated settings configuration only affect settings that have not been personalized by users. To verify that the a user’s preferences have been preserved, log in with a test user name and verify that the shared settings are set as intended.

Deleting portlets

You can use the portlet to delete a custom portlet. To remove the original portlet, the portal administrator must undeploy the portal module application to which the portlet belongs.

Procedure

1. Click **Settings > Portlets** in the navigation pane. A list of all of the portlets is displayed in a scrollable table.
2. Browse through the list or use the Filter field to locate the portlet you want to remove. To use the filter field, start typing the portlet name. The list is reduced to portlets whose names match the characters you entered.
3. Select the radio button associated with the portlet that you want to delete.
4. Click the **Delete** icon.
5. In the **Messages** area at the top of the page, click **OK** to confirm that you want to delete this portlet.

Configuring a web portlet in the Portlet Wizard

You can configure a web portlet and subsequently customize its settings in the portlet-specific configuration pages of the Portlet Wizard.

About this task

Once you configure access levels for the web portlet in the Portlet Wizard, a portlet specific configuration page is displayed:

Procedure

1. Required: In the **Widget title** field provide a brief descriptive name. When selecting a title, consider the purpose of the web portlet, its home page, and that the title is used in the navigation pane to access the portlet.
2. Required: In the **Home page** field provide a valid web address. This the web address of the page that displays by default when a user accesses the portlet from the navigation pane.
3. Optional: In the **Help page** field, provide a relative or absolute URL to a custom help page HTML topic to replace the default help topic that ships with the web portlet.
4. Required: In the **HTML iFrame name** field, provide a unique HTML iFrame name. The entry in this field serves to uniquely identify the web widget to allow its content to be dynamically updated.
Attention: It is important to provide a unique iFrame name. If you do not, web portlets sharing iFrame names may not display correctly until you configure its HTML iframe name value.

5. Optional: Check the Show a browser control toolbar to provide users with a web navigation toolbar, that is, standard web navigation buttons and a web address entry field.

6. Optional: To allow users to personalize their portlet settings, check the relevant check box. By default, the following check boxes are cleared:
   - Widget title
   - Home page
   - Help page
   - Browser control bar

7. Click Save to commit your changes, or Restore Default Settings to reset the form.

8. Click Next to display a Summary page is displayed where you can review your settings.

9. Click Finish to complete the wizard steps. The configured portlet is available to be included on portal pages.

Editing shared settings for a web portlet
Administrators can set shared settings to provide a common experience for users of a web portlet.

About this task
If you have not configured any shared settings for a web portlet, users can by default enter a complete web address in the field provided and browse web pages. To edit shared settings:

Procedure
1. In the title bar of the web portlet, click the Edit options icon and select Edit Shared Settings.

2. Required: In the Widget title field provide a brief descriptive name. When selecting a title, consider the purpose of the web portlet, its home page, and that the title is used in the navigation pane to access the portlet.

3. Required: In the Home page field provide a valid web address. This the web address of the page that displays by default when a user accesses the portlet from the navigation pane.

4. Optional: In the Help page field, provide a relative or absolute URL to a custom help page HTML topic to replace the default help topic that is associated with the web portlet.

5. Required: In the HTML iframe name field, provide a unique HTML iframe name. The entry in this field serves to uniquely identify the web widget to allow its content to be dynamically updated.
   
   Attention: It is important to provide a unique iframe name. If you do not, web portlets sharing iframe names may not display correctly until you configure its HTML iframe name value.

6. Optional: Check the Show a browser control toolbar to provide users with a web navigation toolbar, that is, standard web navigation buttons and a web address entry field.

7. Optional: To allow users to personalize their portlet settings, check the relevant check box. By default, the following check boxes are cleared:
8. Click **Save** to commit your changes, or **Restore Default Settings** to reset the form.

---

### Administering console preference profiles

Preference profiles are a collection of portal behavior preferences for using the portal that are created by the portal administrator. These preferences include the visibility of the navigation tree, contents of the view selection list, and the default view. Assign preference profiles to roles to manage how the navigation area and view selections are displayed to the users in the role.

**Attention:** Each role is limited to one preference profile.

### Field descriptions

This section describes the fields and controls in the main panel of Console Preference Profiles.

- **Select all icon**
  
  Selects all items displayed in the table for deletion. If you are displaying only a filtered set of items, only those items are selected. You can deselect specific items before actually deleting.

- **Deselect all icon**
  
  Deselects all items displayed in the table.

- **New**
  
  Opens a panel for creating a new preference profile.

- **Delete**
  
  Immediately deletes all selected items in the list. Only Custom resource types can be deleted.

- **Filter**
  
  Type in this field to quickly find an item in the table. This field is useful when there are a large number of items to look through.

- **Select**
  
  Selects or deselects a single item in the table.

- **Profile Name**
  
  Indicates the name of the profile. You can sort the list of names by clicking the column heading.

- **Role Count**
  
  Indicates the number of roles assigned to a preference profile. Each role is limited to one preference profile. However, multiple roles can be assigned to any single preference profile.

**Related tasks:**

[“Creating startup pages” on page 39](#)

You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.
Creating preference profiles

Preference profiles are a collection of console behavior preferences for using the console that are created by the console administrator. Follow these steps to create a preference profile and assign it to a role.

About this task

Procedure

1. Click **Settings > Console Preference Profiles** in the console navigation. The Console Preference Profiles page is displayed with the list of preference profiles that have already been created in the console.

2. Click **New**. The properties panel for the new preference profile is displayed.

3. Required: Enter a descriptive name for the preference profile. Consider how the name reflects the roles that have been assigned to it or the console settings that are defined.

4. Optional: Edit the system-provided unique name for the preference profile. Accept the default value or provide a custom value.

5. Optional: Select a theme for the preference profile. A theme dictates how elements of the console are displayed, for example, background colors and contrast. You can select a theme, click **Preview**, and navigate to areas of the console to assess the impact of your selection. The theme that you select is committed only when you save the preference profile, so that you can preview other themes before deciding which one is appropriate.

6. Indicate whether the navigation tree should be hidden. This might be preferable when the user has few pages to access and display space in the console is better reserved for page content.

7. Optional: Use the Console Bidirection Options to set the direction to display console content and text. The default option lets the browser dictate the text and content direction, for example, for Arabic and Hebrew, the text is displayed right-to-left, whereas for other languages it is displayed left-to-right. Alternatively, you can decide to set the text and content direction to either left-to-right or right-to-left. In the **Text direction** list, you can also select **Contextual Input** so that for portlets that include text entry fields, the direction of text is dependent on the language used to enter data.

8. Select which view options should be available for users in the role.

9. Expand the section **Roles Using this Preference Profile**.

10. Click **Add** and select one or more roles to use this preference profile. When assigning roles, you might notice some roles missing from the list. This means they are assigned to another preference profile. The role must be removed from the other profile before it can be assigned to this one.

11. Select the default console view for this preference profile. The default view is the one that is selected when users in this role log in to the console. This field is enabled when at least one role has been added for this preference profile.

12. Click **Save** to save your changes and return to Console Preference Profiles.

Results

The new preference profile is created and listed on the main panel for Console Preference Profiles.
**Editing console preference profiles**

Preference profiles are a collection of console behavior preferences for using the console that are created by the console administrator. Follow these steps to change the properties or roles assigned to a preference profile.

**About this task**

**Procedure**

1. In the navigation pane, click **Settings > Console Preference Profiles**. The Console Preference Profiles page is displayed with the list of preference profiles that have already been created in the console.
2. Click the name of the preference profile that you want to edit. The properties panel for the preference profile is displayed.
3. Enter a descriptive name for the preference profile. Consider how the name reflects the roles that have been assigned to it or the console settings that are defined.
4. Optional: Edit the system-provided unique name for the preference profile. Accept the default value or provide a custom value.
5. Optional: Select a theme for the preference profile. A theme dictates how elements of the console are displayed, for example, background colors and contrast. You can select a theme, click **Preview**, and navigate to areas of the console to assess the impact of your selection. The theme that you select is committed only when you save the preference profile, so that you can preview other themes before deciding which one is appropriate.
6. Optional: Indicate whether the navigation tree should be hidden. This might be preferable when the user has few pages to access and display space in the console is better reserved for page content.
7. Optional: Use the Console Bidirection Options to set the direction to display console content and text. The default option lets the browser dictate the text and content direction, for example, for Arabic and Hebrew, the text is displayed right-to-left, whereas for other languages it is displayed left-to-right. Alternatively, you can decide to set the text and content direction to either left-to-right or right-to-left. In the Text direction list, you can also select **Contextual Input** so that for portlets that include text entry fields, the direction of text is dependent on the language used to enter data.
8. Optional: Select which view options should be available for users in the role.
9. Expand the section **Roles Using this Preference Profile**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To add roles</td>
<td>Click <strong>Add</strong> and select one or more roles to add to the list. Click <strong>OK</strong> when you have made all of your selections. <strong>Note:</strong> If a role is not listed, it likely means that it has been assigned to another preference profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove roles</td>
<td>Select one or more roles in the list and click <strong>Remove</strong>. Be certain of your selections. When you delete, there is no warning prompt and the action cannot be undone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To assign a default view</td>
<td>Select from the <strong>Default console view</strong> section to the side of the role list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10. Click **Save** to save your changes.
Results

The preference profile is updated and you are returned to the main panel for Console Preference Profiles.

Deleting console preference profiles

Preference profiles are a collection of console behavior preferences for using the console that are created by the console administrator. Follow these steps to delete a preference profile.

About this task

Procedure

1. Click Settings > Console Preference Profiles in the navigation pane. The Console Preference Profiles page is displayed with the list of preference profiles that have already been created in the console.
2. Locate the preference profile that you want to delete in the table provided. You can use the filter in the table to type in the preference profile name and quickly display it.
3. In the Select column select one or more preference profiles.
4. Click Delete. A message is displayed at the top prompting you to confirm the deletion.
5. Click OK.

Results

The preference profile is removed.

Developing wires

Wires are the route or connections of client-side events between source portlets and targets. A wire defines the event name, the source portlet that sends the event, and the target that receives the event. The target can be a portlet on the same page, a portlet on a different page, or a different page. When the target of an event is a page, the event is delivered to all portlets on the page. There are two types of wires: system and custom.

The types of wires are as follows:

System

Create system wires by deploying console modules that define source and target portlets in their event descriptors. Subscription and publication definitions in the event descriptor are optional, but strongly encouraged. When an administrator edits a page, the supported events to which a portlet publishes or subscribes are displayed using an icon in the portlet title bar.

To create a system wire, the following conditions must be true:

• The event is defined in the event descriptor for a console module that has been deployed
• The source portlet publishes the event through its event descriptor and has been deployed
• The target portlet subscribes to the event through its event descriptor and has been deployed
The event definition as well as the publish and subscribe definitions can be deployed as part of the same console module package or separate packages. However, the wire does not exist until the event and both portlets have been deployed with their publish and subscribe definitions.

You can create a system wire using the `<events:portlet-definition-ref/>` element and its child elements in the event descriptor.

**Custom**

Create custom wires using either of the following methods:

- Administrators can create custom wires when they edit a page at runtime.
- Define the custom wire using the `<wiredefinition:wire/>` element in a wire descriptor and deploy the wire descriptor to the console.

The `switchPage` and `loadPage` attributes for the `<wiredefinition:wire-target-navigation-ref/>` and `<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref/>` elements handle whether the event can be delivered to a closed page when the event is fired. If the page is not open and neither of these attributes are set to true, the event is discarded. If these attributes are set, the type of page effects the target page and event handling.

**Table 4. Target page and event handling for page types**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page type</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side</td>
<td>• If the target page is already open, the event is passed to the target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regardless of the <code>loadPage</code> and <code>switchPage</code> settings. The target</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>page is not brought into focus unless <code>switchPage=&quot;true&quot;</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the target page is not open, the event is discarded unless the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>following conditions are true:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– The <code>loadPage</code> attribute is set to true and the <code>switchPage</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>attribute is set to true or defaults to false. The target page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>opens but not brought into focus, and the event is passed to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>target.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>– The <code>switchPage</code> attribute is set to true and the setting for <code>loadPage</code> is ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server-side</td>
<td>If <code>switchPage=&quot;true&quot;</code>, the target page opens and brought into focus, and the event is passed to the target; otherwise, the event is discarded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Creating system wires in the events descriptor**

You can create a system wire using the `<events:portlet-definition-ref/>` element and its child elements in the event descriptor.

**About this task**

The value of the `portletDefinitionRef` attribute is the same as the value for the `uniqueName` attribute of the `<topology:portlet-definition/>` element in the portal topology descriptor. The value of the `<events:name/>` element for the published or subscribed event must be the same as the value of the `<events:name/>` element in the `<events:event-definition/>` element.

**Procedure**

1. Open the `ibm-portal-event.xml` file.
2. Enter the `<events:portlet-definition-ref/>` element.
3. For each event to which the portlet publishes, enter a `<events:supported-publishing-event/>` element within the `<events:portlet-definition-ref/>` element.

```xml
<events:portlet-definition-ref
portletDefinitionRef="com.ibm.tip.samples.sm.ServerSelection
Portlet.definition"></events:portlet-definition-ref>
<events:supported-publishing-event>
<events:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">x:ServerChangedEvent
</events:name>
</events:supported-publishing-event>
</events:portlet-definition-ref>
```

4. For each event to which the portlet subscribes, enter a `<events:supported-subscribed-event/>` element within the `<events:portlet-definition-ref/>` element.

```xml
<events:portlet-definition-ref
portletDefinitionRef="com.ibm.tip.samples.sm.ServerSelection
Portlet.definition">
<events:supported-publishing-event>
<events:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">x:ServerChangedEvent
</events:name>
</events:supported-publishing-event>
<events:supported-subscribed-event>
<events:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">x:ServerChangedEvent
</events:name>
</events:supported-subscribed-event>
</events:portlet-definition-ref>
```

**What to do next**

The portlets that subscribe to or publish an event must be capable of processing the event.

**Defining custom wires in the wire descriptor**

You can define a custom wire using the `<wire:wire-definition/>` element in the wire descriptor, `ibm-portal-wiredefinition.xml`. You can define only one source, event, and target for the custom wire.

**About this task**

Table 5 outlines the minimum information that you need to define a custom wire between two portlets.

**Table 5. Custom wire information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Source Attribute or Element</th>
<th>Descriptor</th>
<th>Wire Attribute or Element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unique name of the source portlet's window</td>
<td><code>uniqueName</code> attribute of <code>&lt;topology:window/&gt;</code></td>
<td>Portal topology</td>
<td><code>window-element-ref</code> attribute of <code>&lt;wiredinition:wire-source-portlet-ref/&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5. Custom wire information (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Source Attribute or Element</th>
<th>Descriptor</th>
<th>Wire Attribute or Element</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unique name of the source portlet’s navigation element</td>
<td><code>uniqueName</code> attribute of <code>&lt;topology:navigation-element/&gt;</code></td>
<td>Portal topology</td>
<td><code>navigation-element-ref</code> attribute of <code>&lt;wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref/&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event name</td>
<td><code>&lt;events:name/&gt;</code> element in <code>&lt;events:event-definition/&gt;</code></td>
<td>Event</td>
<td><code>&lt;wiredefinition:name/&gt;</code> element in <code>&lt;wiredefinition:source-event/&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unique name of the target portlet’s window</td>
<td><code>uniqueName</code> attribute of <code>&lt;topology:window/&gt;</code></td>
<td>Portal topology</td>
<td><code>navigation-element-ref</code> attribute of <code>&lt;wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref/&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unique name of the target portlet’s navigation element</td>
<td><code>uniqueName</code> attribute of <code>&lt;topology:navigation-element/&gt;</code></td>
<td>Portal topology</td>
<td><code>window-element-ref</code> attribute of <code>&lt;wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref/&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Procedure

2. Enter the `<wiredefinition:wire/>` element.
   ```xml
   <wiredefinition:wire
     uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.SendEventPage.SendEventPortlet.wireDef.WireToPortletA">
   </wiredefinition:wire>
   ```
3. Enter a `<wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref/>` element within the `<wiredefinition:wire/>` element to define the source portlet and source event.
   ```xml
   <wiredefinition:wire
     uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.SendEventPage.SendEventPortlet.wireDef.WireToPortletA">
     <wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref
       navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.SendEventPage"
       window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
       <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
         x:WireToPortletA
       </wiredefinition:name>
     </wiredefinition:wire-source-event>
   </wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref>
   </wiredefinition:wire>
   ```
4. If you want to define a target portlet as the target, enter a `<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref/>` element within the `<wiredefinition:wire/>` element.
   ```xml
   <wiredefinition:wire
     uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.SendEventPage.SendEventPortlet.wireDef.WireToPortletA">
     <wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref
       navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.SendEventPage"
       window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
       <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
         x:WireToPortletA
       </wiredefinition:name>
     </wiredefinition:wire-target-event>
   </wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref>
   </wiredefinition:wire>
   ```
<wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref=
    "com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.SendEventPage"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
    <wiredefinition:source-event>
        <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
            x:WireToPortletA
        </wiredefinition:name>
    </wiredefinition:source-event>
</wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref>

<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SendEventPage"
    switchPage="true" loadPage="true"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.TargetPortletA">
    </wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref>
</wiredefinition:wire>

5. If you want to define a page as the target, enter a <wiredefinition:wire-
  target-navigation-ref/> element within the <wiredefinition:wire/> element.

<wiredefinition:wire uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.SendEventPage.
  SendEventPortlet.
  wireDef.WireToPortletA">

<wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SendEventPage"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
    <wiredefinition:source-event>
        <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
            x:WireToPortletA
        </wiredefinition:name>
    </wiredefinition:source-event>
</wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref>

<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SendEventPage"
    switchPage="true" loadPage="true"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.TargetPortletA">
    </wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref>
</wiredefinition:wire>

<wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SendEventPage"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
    <wiredefinition:source-event>
        <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
            x:WireToPortletA
        </wiredefinition:name>
    </wiredefinition:source-event>
</wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref>

<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SendEventPage"
    switchPage="true" loadPage="true"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.TargetPortletA">
    </wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref>
</wiredefinition:wire>

<wiredefinition:wire-target-navigation-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.
    SamplePageA"
    switchPage="true" loadPage="true">
    </wiredefinition:wire-target-navigation-ref>
</wiredefinition:wire>
Defining transformations for custom wires

You can define which transformation processes an event using the `<wiredefinition:wire-transform-ref/>` element in the wire descriptor, `ibm-portal-wiredefinition.xml`.

**Procedure**

2. `<wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref/>` element within the `<wiredefinition:wire/>` element.
3. Define the transformation using the `<wiredefinition:wire-transform-ref/>` element.

```xml
<wiredefinition:wire
  uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.SendEventPage.SendEventPortlet.
  wireDef.WireToPortletA">
  <wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.SendEventPage"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.SendEventPortlet">
    <wiredefinition:source-event>
      <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
        x:WireToPortletA
      </wiredefinition:name>
    </wiredefinition:source-event>
  </wiredefinition:wire-source-portlet-ref>

  <wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref
    navigation-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.navigationElement.SendEventPage"
    switchPage="true" loadPage="true"
    window-element-ref="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.window.TargetPortletA">
    <!-- Simple String transformation reference -->
    <wiredefinition:wire-transform-ref uniqueName="com.ibm.tip.samples.transformation.ISCSimpleStringTransformation"
      locationUniqueName="com.ibm.tip.transform.SimpleStringTransformation">
      <wiredefinition:target-event>
        <wiredefinition:name xmlns:x="http://ibm.com/TIP">
          x:SimpleStringTransformationEvent
        </wiredefinition:name>
      </wiredefinition:target-event>
      <wiredefinition:param-mapping>
        <wiredefinition:param-mapping-entry
          source-param-name="paramAA" target-param-name="paramBA"/>
        <wiredefinition:param-mapping-entry
          source-param-name="paramAB" target-param-name="paramBB"/>
        <wiredefinition:param-mapping-entry
          source-param-name="paramAC" target-param-name="paramBC"/>
      </wiredefinition:param-mapping>
    </wiredefinition:wire-transform-ref>
  </wiredefinition:wire-target-portlet-ref>
</wiredefinition:wire>
```
Changing wire definitions after deployment

You can change wire definitions in `ibm-portal-wiredefinition.xml` after the wires have been deployed, and force the console to recognize the changes. To remove a wire descriptor, remove the `folderName` value from `wireRegistration.properties`, which removes the wire definitions from the console repository. The removal of the wire descriptor does not delete `ibm-portal-wiredefinition.xml` from the `locationUniqueName` directory.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the entry from `wireRegistry.properties`.
2. Log in to console; then log out of the console.
3. Add the entry back into `wireRegistry.properties`.
4. Log in to console.

Deploying custom wires

After you have defined the custom wire in the wire descriptor, you must register the location of the wire descriptor in the wire registry using the `Wires/wireRegistry.properties` file. On the next login, the console checks whether `wireRegistration.properties` has changed; if it has changed, the file is inspected and information from the new wire descriptor is added to the console repository.

**Procedure**

1. Put `ibm-portal-wiredefinition.xml` in a uniquely named folder (`locationUniqueName`) in one of the following locations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In your IDE Tivoli Integrated Portal runtime environment</td>
<td><code>tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/Wires/locationUniqueName</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In your stand-alone Tivoli Integrated Portal environment</td>
<td><code>tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/Wires/locationUniqueName</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Edit the file, `tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/Wires/wireRegistry.properties` and add a line that registers the location of the new descriptor to the console. For example:

   `folderName=locationUniqueName`

Passing properties to other portlets

This topic describes how portlets can send and receive properties, which are also known as context. Be careful not to confuse this use of context with the `PortletContext` class in the Java™ Portlet Specification.

Before you begin, familiarize yourself with the concepts for launching portlets and pages before reading this topic.

**Sending context**

Contextual information can be provided to portlets on the same page using the `addPortlet()` and `addSharedPortlet()` methods. The console module creates context in the form of property values, which are of the type `com.ibm.portal.propertybroker.property.PropertyValue`. It is assumed that the
portlet has already performed a JNDI lookup to determine that the
PropertyFactory, DynamicUIManagerFactoryService, and
URLGeneratorFactoryService services are available.

- In the following example, the portlet that is the source of the properties needs
the object ID of the target portlet. The object ID is determined by performing a
JNDI lookup using the values from the portlet's <resource-link/> element in the
 topology descriptor.
- The property, cproperty, is created using the PropertyController interface and the
 createProperty() method of the PropertyFactory interface. The data type for the
 property must be a string.
- Before sending the property, the source portlet creates an instance of the
 DynamicUICtrl interface, passing the string isc.tasklaunch as the configuration
 name.
- The addSharedPortlet() method sends the properties to the target portlet on the
 request. After the action phase, the target portlet updates the output for the
 response.

```java
Context ctx = null;
ObjectID portletDefinitionID1 = null;
ObjectID portletDefinitionID2 = null;
String portletname1="com.ibm.isclite.samples.PortletContext/PortletGetPerformance";
String portletname2="com.ibm.isclite.samples.PortletContext/PortletGetApps";
PortalSession ps = request.getPortletSession(false);
try
{
    ctx = new InitialContext(com.ibm.portal.jndi.Constants.ENV);
    portletDefinitionID1 = (ObjectID)ctx.lookup("portal:config/portletdefinition/"+portletname1);
    portletDefinitionID2 = (ObjectID)ctx.lookup("portal:config/portletdefinition/"+portletname2);
} catch (NamingException ne)
{
    logger.log(Level.FINE, "portletdefinitionID not found - Naming exception:"+ne.getMessage());
    return;
}
logger.log(Level.FINE, "portletdefinitionID="+portletDefinitionID1.toString());
try
{
    PropertyController cproperty =
        propertyFactoryService.createProperty(myconfig);
    cproperty.setType("String");
    PropertyValue[] propertyValues = new PropertyValue[1];
    propertyValues[0] =
        propertyFactoryService.createPropertyValue(request, cproperty, serverName);
    DynamicUICtrl dmanagerCtrl =
        dynamicUIManagerFactoryService.getDynamicUICtrl(request, response,
        "isc.tasklaunch");
    ObjectID newPortletID1 =
        dmanagerCtrl.addSharedPortlet(portletDefinitionID1, null, propertyValues);
    ObjectID newPortletID2 =
        dmanagerCtrl.addSharedPortlet(portletDefinitionID2, null, propertyValues);
    logger.log(Level.FINE, "portlet ID created:"+newPortletID1.getOID());
} catch ...
```
**Sending context to a page**

In some cases, the target portlet might be on a separate page. In this case, the properties are passed using the `addPage()` or `addSharedPage()` method. The target portlet receives the properties only when the page is launched that contains the portlet. If a property value is set multiple times before the page is launched, the value that was set last for the property is passed to the portlets on the page.

Properties provided on the `addPage()` and `addSharedPage()` methods are available to all portlets on the target page.

**Receiving context**

To receive properties, the target portlet must provide the `com.ibm.portal.pagecontext.enable` preference parameter in the portlet.xml deployment descriptor with a value of true. If the portlet receives any subsequent updates, set the `com.ibm.portal.context.enable read-only` preference to true. Only String property types are supported and the context is passed as parameters of the action request. The following example shows how a portlet receives context.

```java
public void processAction(ActionRequest request, ActionResponse response) throws PortletException, IOException {
    PortletSession ps = request.getPortletSession(true);
    appDeployed = request.getParameter("appDeployed");
    serverName=request.getParameter("servername");
    ps.setAttribute("servername",serverName);
    ps.setAttribute("appDeployed",appDeployed);
    launchPage(request, response);
}
```

The target portlet checks the value of the `com.ibm.portal.action` parameter for the request during action processing to determine if any properties have been passed. If properties are being passed to the portlet, the value of this parameter is `com.ibm.portal.pagecontext.receive`. For example:

```java
    String action = req.getParameter(com.ibm.portal.action.name);
    if (action!=null && action.equalsIgnoreCase("com.ibm.portal.pagecontext.receive")) {
        // code to get the properties as a parameter on the request
    }
```

**Setting the scroll location when launching new portlets**

After a portlet is launched and the console page is refreshed, the user's browser is scrolled to the location of the launched portlet. To turn this behavior off and have the browser scroll back to the user's previous location, the console module must indicate this by including the `com.ibm.isc.portlet.anchor.off` property on the `addPortlet()` method with a value of true. The constant `com.ibm.isc.api.ExternalConstants.PORTLET_ANCHOR_OFF` can be used for this purpose, as in the following example.

```java
PropertyValue[] propertyValues = new PropertyValue[1];
PropertyController pc =
    propertyFactoryService.createProperty(config);
    pc.setName(ExternalConstants.PORTLET_ANCHOR_OFF);
    pc.setClassname("java.lang.String");
```
PropertyValue value =
    propertyFactoryService.createPropertyValue(request, pc, "true");
propertyValues[0] = value;

The default setting for this property, if not specified, is false.

Developing transformations

Transformations manipulate the event generated by a source target before it is
delivered to the target portlet. You can develop a transformation to convert an
event name, parameter name, or parameter value to match the needs of a target
portlet. Using transformations to handle events is optional.

For example, if the source target sends an event that includes the cost of a selected
item in US dollars, use a transformation to convert the cost to Japanese yen before
the event is delivered to the target portlet.

Specify the transformation for an event using one of the following methods:

- During runtime, the console administrator edits a page to create or edit wires.
The administrator has the option of specifying the transformation for an event.
- A wire descriptor is deployed to the console and specifies the unique name of a
  transformation for a wire. The unique name is provided in the transformation
descriptor.
- The target portlet can use the transformation APIs to specify which
  transformation handles an event before it is delivered to the target.

Transformation types

The transformation types are: Java class, JavaScript functions, and URL servlets.
You can use APIs specific to each type to develop transformations that can convert
an event name, parameter names, or parameter values before the event is delivered
to the target portlet. Tivoli Integrated Portal also provides a simple string
transformation which can be used to transform parameter names only.

All transformation types that you can develop receive the following objects from
the event broker:

Source event
The event sender triggers the event and is provided as an object that
contains a name value pair. The first name value pair is the source event
name.

Source element
Table 6 outlines the name value pairs of the object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>srcPortletName</td>
<td>A String that provides the source portlet name as specified by the &lt;portlet-name/&gt; element in the portlet descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srcModuleId</td>
<td>A String that provides the appID (from the application-definition/&gt; element of the topology descriptor) of the console module where the source portlet is included.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6. Name value pairs for the source element (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>srcPortletApplication</td>
<td>A String that provides the portlet application (as specified by the id attribute of the &lt;portlet-app/&gt; element in the portlet descriptor) of the source portlet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Target event name**

An object that provides the QName of the target event.

These objects are passed to the transformation depending on the transformation type.

All transformations must return the target event. For JavaScript and URL transformations, the target event object is returned as a regular JSON object that is structured as name value pairs. The first property must be `name` and its value set to the event name. All other properties are optional.

```json
{
    'name' : 'http://ibm.com/tip/TestEventA',
    'paramA' : 'paramAValue',
    'paramB' : 'paramBValue'
}
```

For Java transformations, the event returned to the target by this transformation must be an instance of the Event interface. Any additional event parameters are stored as a Hashtable and returned as the event payload.

**Developing Java transformations**

You can use Java class files to handle event transformations.

**Procedure**

1. Create a Java class file and import the following classes:

   ```java
   import com.ibm.portal.Transformation;
   import com.ibm.portal.TransformationException;
   import com.ibm.portal.Event; // to handle the source event
   import com.ibm.portal.WireSourceElement; // to handle the source element
   import javax.xml.namespace.QName; // to handle the target event name
   ```

2. Implement the Transformation interface.

   ```java
   public class JavaTransformationSample implements Transformation {}
   ```

3. Provide the `eventTransform()` method, which the event broker invokes to pass the transformation information when the event is fired.

   ```java
   public Event eventTransform(Event srcEvent, WireSourceElement srcElement, QName targetEventName) throws TransformationException {
       Object value = srcEvent.getValue();
       transformValue((Hashtable) value);
       return srcEvent;
   }
   ```

The `srcEvent` object is passed using the Event interface. The code in this sample passes the source event as a hash table to a `transformValue()` method where the event parameters are changed.
Developing JavaScript transformations

You can use JavaScript functions to handle event transformations.

Procedure
1. Create a Javascript file.
2. Create a JavaScript function.

```javascript
TIPJavaScriptTransformationSample=function(srcEvent,srcElement,targetEventName){
    if(srcEvent==null) return null;
    if(targetEventName==null) return srcEvent;

    var appendTransformedLabel=function(obj){
        for(var i in obj){
            if(i == "name") continue;
            else if(typeof(obj[i]) == "object"){
                obj[i] = appendTransformedLabel(srcEvent[i]);
            }else{
                obj[i] += "_jstransformed";
            }
        }
        return obj;
    }
    if(targetEventName)
        srcEvent.name = targetEventName;
    srcEvent = appendTransformedLabel(srcEvent);
    return srcEvent;
}
```

Developing URL servlet transformations

A URL transformation is a servlet that has been deployed to the same application server as Tivoli Integrated Portal. The servlet gets srcElement, srcEvent, and targetEventName as HTTP parameters from the request. These parameters are Strings in JSON format.

Procedure
1. Create a servlet class.
2. Create the source and target event.

```java
String srcEvent = request.getParameter("srcEvent");
String srcElement = request.getParameter("srcElement");
String targetEventName = request.getParameter("targetEventName");
```

Defining transformations in the transformation descriptor

Define transformations using the `<transformation:transformation/>` in ibm-portal-transformation.xml, which is deployed to the console along with the transformation code.

About this task

Each transformation definition contains a description, a title, and one of the following elements depending on the transformation type:

- `<transformation:java-class/>` element that provides the fully-qualified class name of the JAR file with the transformation class
- `<transformation:function-name/>` element that provides the name of the JavaScript function
• `<transformation:url/>` element that provides the relative or absolute URL to the servlet performing the transformation. The servlet must be deployed on the same application server as the console.

**Procedure**

2. Enter a `<transformation:transformation/>` element, its description, and title.

```xml
<transformation:transformation uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.transformation.JavaTransformationSample">
  <transformation:description uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.transformations.JavaTransformationSample.description">
    <base:nls-ref key="JavaTransformationSample.description" locationName="classes/com/ibm/TIP/samples/actions/transformations/nl/JavaTransformationSample" />
  </transformation:description>
  <transformation:title uniqueName="com.ibm.TIP.samples.transformation.JavaTransformationSample.title">
    <base:nls-ref key="JavaTransformationSample.title" locationName="classes/com/ibm/TIP/samples/actions/transformations/nl/JavaTransformationSample" />
  </transformation:title>
</transformation:transformation>
```

3. If it is a Java transformation, enter the `<transformation:java-class/>` element.

```xml
<transformation:java-class>
  com.ibm.TIP.samples.actions.transformations.JavaTransformationSample
</transformation:java-class>
```

4. If it is a JavaScript transformation, enter the `<transformation:function-name/>` element.

```xml
<transformation:function-name>
  TIPJavaScriptTransformationSample
</transformation:function-name>
```

5. If it is a URL servlet transformation, enter the `<transformation:url/>` element.

```xml
<transformation:url>
  https://www.example.com:9046/ibm/ClientSideActions/servlet/com.ibm.TIP.URLTransformationSampleServlet
</transformation:url>
```

**Deploying transformations**

After you have defined the transformation in the transformation descriptor, deploy the transformation code and descriptor to the console.

**Java transformation**

1. After compiling the Java transformation class, create a JAR file to contain the class and any other necessary artifacts (for example, resource bundles).
2. Place the JAR file in the following location on the server.

```sql
tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/pojoTransformations
```
3. Place the transformation descriptor, `ibm-portal-transformation.xml`, in the following location on the server.

```sql
tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/Transformations/locationUniqueName
```
locationUniqueName is a unique directory for this transformation descriptor. This value is also used in a wire descriptor to specify a transform to handle an event.

4. Restart the console.

**JavaScript transformation**

1. Save the JavaScript transformation code using the file name transformation.js.
2. Place transformation.js and the transformation descriptor, ibm-portal-transformation.xml in the following location on the server.

   ```
tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/
Transformations/locationUniqueName
```

   locationUniqueName is a unique directory for this transformation descriptor. This value is also used in a wire descriptor to specify a transform to handle an event.

**URL transformation**

1. Deploy the servlet to the application server on the same machine as the console.
2. Place the transformation descriptor, ibm-portal-transformation.xml in the following location on the server.

   ```
tip_rad_profile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/ISCWire.war/
Transformations/locationUniqueName
```

   locationUniqueName is a unique directory for this transformation descriptor. This value is also used in a wire descriptor to specify a transform to handle an event.

After the transformation has been deployed to the console, it can be specified on the wire definition using the wire descriptor or when editing the page in the console user interface.

---

**Exporting and importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data**

You can export customized configuration data from an existing Tivoli Integrated Portal/Web GUI installation to another by exporting the data and subsequently importing the exported data.

Exporting and importing customized settings can be done at the command line through the tipcli.bat|.sh Export and tipcli.bat|sh Import commands.

**Note:** The tipcli.bat|.sh Export and tipcli.bat|sh Import commands are case sensitive. Also, if you make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

You can export and import the following elements:

- Custom pages and customized system page elements, with the exception of core and system pages, including:
  - Page name and layout.
  - Portlet entities.

  **Note:** Copies of a portlet entity are not exported; either through the console Export Wizard or through the tipcli.bat|.sh Export command.

- View profiles.
- Events and wires.
- Access permissions.
- Navigation structure.

- Custom views (or customized system views).

**Note:** You can also export pages associated with a view if the exportpageinview parameter is set to true.

- Custom roles, including:
  - Role name, creation date, and update date.
  - Role mapping information in relation to users and groups.
  - Associated role preference, that is, the relevant console preference profile.

- Console properties and customization properties, including:
  - Transformations.
  - Themes and images.
  - Bundles.

In a load balanced environment the import operation migrates imported elements across all the computers in the pool, with following conditions:

- All the required applications (WAR files) must be deployed on all computers in the pool.
- The load balanced pool configuration must be locked during the import operation.
- The import operation must be ran on one of the nodes in the pool.
- You must provide the load balancing manager an updated file list to update the load balancing scope. The migration tool plugin provides the file list.
- The load balanced pool configuration, can then be unlocked.
- The import of transformations in a load balanced environment is not supported. Transformations must be imported to each node independently.

The `haSupport` command controls this aspect of the import operation:

- If it is set to `True`, then only load balancing information is imported, that is, no transformation data.
- If it is set to `False`, then only transformation data is imported, that is, no load balancing data.
- If it is set to `Both`, then transformation data and load balancing data is imported.

### Basic export commands

You can export pages, views and profile preferences using the basic export commands.
Exporting pages in simplified mode

By using the ExportPage command you can export specific pages without having to provide additional qualifying parameters.

Before you begin

Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task

To export specific pages in simplified mode for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal:

Procedure

1. At the command line change to: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.
2. To return a list of customized pages that can be exported, run the following command:

   - Windows: \tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat ListPages --customizePages true
   - UNIX/Linux: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListPages --customizePages true

   Note: The page ID is the last element of the returned records, for example, the page ID for the following record is BIXRjKkYngNsRavnu0fYpx1279539744250:
   - com.ibm.isclite.global.custom.module-SPVS-
   - com.ibm.isclite.admin.PortletPicker.navigationElement.pagelayoutA
   - .modified.BIXRjKkYngNsRavnu0fYpx1279539744250

3. Review the list of returned page records and take note of the page IDs for the pages that you want to export.
4. To export specific pages, run the following command:

   - Windows: \tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat ExportPage --uniqueName pageID_1,pageID_2,pageID_3
   - UNIX/Linux: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ExportPage --uniqueName pageID_1,pageID_2,pageID_3

   Note: The fileportletEntities.xml is always exported, even if you specify NONE as an argument to the uniqueName parameter.

Results

When the command completes, a Data.zip file is created in tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/.

What to do next

Locate tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/Data.zip and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.
Exporting views in simplified mode
By using the ExportView command you can export specific views without having to provide additional qualifying parameters.

Before you begin
Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task
To export specific views in simplified mode for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal:

Procedure
1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. Optional: To return a list of customized views that can be exported, run the following command:
   - **Windows** `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ListViews`
   - **UNIX** `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListViews`
3. Review the list of returned view records and take note of the view IDs for the views that you want to export.
4. To export specific views, run the following command:
   - **Windows** `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ExportView --uniqueName viewID_1, viewID_2, viewID_3`
   - **UNIX** `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ExportView --uniqueName viewID_1, viewID_2, viewID_3`

   **Note:** The file `portletEntities.xml` is always exported, even if you specify `NONE` as an argument to the `uniqueName` parameter.

Results
When the command completes, a `data.zip` file is created in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/`.

What to do next
Locate `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/data.zip` and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

Exporting console preference profiles in simplified mode
By using the ExportProfile command you can export console preference profiles without having to provide additional qualifying parameters.

Before you begin
Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task
To export console preference profiles in simplified mode:
Procedure
1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. Optional: To return a list of console preference profiles that can be exported:
   - Windows: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ListPreferenceProfiles`
   - UNIX/Linux: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListPreferenceProfiles`
3. Review the list of returned records and take note of the unique names for the console preference profiles that you want to export.
4. To export specific console preference profiles, run the following command:
   - Windows: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ExportProfile --uniqueName profile_ID1,profile_ID2,profile_ID3`
   - UNIX/Linux: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ExportProfile --uniqueName profile_ID1,profile_ID2,profile_ID3`

   Note: The file `portletEntities.xml` is always exported, even if you specify NONE as an argument to the `uniqueName` parameter.

Results
When the command completes, a `Data.zip` file is created in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/`.

What to do next
Locate `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/Data.zip` and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

Advanced export commands
You can use the advanced `tipcli Export` commands and apply a number of parameters to define which items you want to include and exclude in relation to the export operation.

Exporting all customization data
You can export all customization data for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal in one command.

Before you begin
Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task
To export all customization data for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal:

Procedure
1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. Optional: To return a list of plugins that will be run during the export operation, run the following command:
   - Windows: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ListExportPlugins`
ListExportPlugins

3. To export all customization data, run the following command:

- **UNIX/LINUX**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password`
- **Windows**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password`

**Results**

When the Export command completes, a `data.zip` file is created in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/`.

**Note:**

Refer to the links at the end of the page to view details of customs parameters that can be applied to the Export command.

**What to do next**

Locate `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/data.zip` and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

**Related reference:**

- [“tipcli - Export plugins” on page 82](#)

Use the Export command to export customization data for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal. Use the ListExportPlugins command to list plugins that are available for export.

**Exporting using a properties file**

You can specify your export requirements in properties file instead of specifying your requirements using separate parameters at the command line.

**Before you begin**

By default, the `tipcli` command uses the `tip_home_dir/TIPProfile/etc/tipcli.properties` file unless this behavior is overridden by the specifying a discrete settings file using the `settingFile` parameter.

Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

**About this task**

To export customization data using a properties file:

**Procedure**

1. Create a properties file that specifies the data that you want to export and save it as `export-settings.properties` in a known location.

   Below is example content for an export properties file:
   
   ```properties
   import.includePlugins=ImportPagePlugin
   export.includePlugins=ExportPagePlugin
   import.backupDir=c:/tmp/bkups
   export.exportFile=c:/tmp/extest.zip
   ```
import.importFile=c:/tmp/extend.zip
username=tip_admin_user
password=tip_admin_password
import.haSupport=true

Note: Some parameters are import or export specific. Import specific parameters should be prefixed by import. and export specific parameters should be prefixed by export.. For example, import.backupDir=c:/tmp/bkups.

2. At the command line change to: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.

3. To export customization data based on the contents of a specific properties file, run the following command:

   - **UNIX**  
     tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --settingFile export_properties_file
   - **Windows**  
     tip_home_dir/profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --settingFile export_properties_file

Where:

export_properties_file

An argument to the settingFile parameter that provides the location and name of the export properties file, for example, C:\\tmp\\export.properties.

Note: You must use double backslashes characters (\\) when specifying the path to your settings file.

Note: If there is a conflict between settings specified in the properties file and parameters provided at the command line, then the command line parameters take precedence.

Results

When the Export command completes, a extest.zip file is created in the root temporary directory, for example on Windows systems the file is saved in c:\tmp.

What to do next

Locate extest.zip and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

Exporting specific pages

When exporting Tivoli Integrated Portal data, you can specify that you want to export particular pages.

Before you begin

Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task

To export specific pages for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal:

Procedure

1. At the command line change to: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin.
2. To return a list of customized pages that can be exported, run the following command:

   - **Windows**  `tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat ListPages --customizePages true`
   - **UNIX**     `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListPages --customizePages true`

   **Note:** The page ID is the last element of the returned records, for example, the page ID for the following record is `BIXRjLkYngNsRavnu0fYpx1279539744250`:
   
   ```
   com.ibm.isclite.global.custom.module-SPSV-
   com.ibm.isclite.admin.PortletPicker.navigationElement
   .pagelayoutA
   .modified
   .BIXRjLkYngNsRavnu0fYpx1279539744250
   ```

3. Review the list of returned page records and take note of the page IDs for the pages that you want to export.

4. To export specified pages, run the following command:

   - **UNIX**     `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --pages pageID_1, pageID_2, pageID_3`
   - **Windows**  `tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --pages pageID_1, pageID_2, pageID_3`

**Results**

When the command completes, a `data.zip` file is created in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/`.

**What to do next**

Locate `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/Data.zip` and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

**Exporting specific views**

When exporting Tivoli Integrated Portal data, you can specify that you want to export particular views.

**Before you begin**

Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

**About this task**

To export specific views for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal:

**Procedure**

1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. Optional: To return a list of customized views that can be exported, run the following command:

   - **Windows**  `tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat ListViews`
3. Review the list of returned view records and take note of the view IDs for the views that you want to export.

4. To export specific views, run the following command:

   ```
   tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --views viewID_1,viewID_2,viewID_3 --exportpageinviews [true|false]
   ```

   ```
   tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat Export --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password --views viewID_1,viewID_2,viewID_3 --exportpageinviews [true|false]
   ```

   Where:

   **exportpageinviews**
   
   An optional parameter, when set to true ensures that you also export pages associated with the views that you have specified.

   **Note:** Whether the optional parameter exportpageinviews is set to true or false, if a view has a default node in the navigation pane associated with it, then the page associated with the node is always exported. This is also true, even if you specify NONE as the argument to the --pages parameter.

**Results**

When the command completes, a data.zip file is created in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/`.

**What to do next**

Locate `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/output/data.zip` and copy it to the computer where you intend to apply the exported customization data.

**Rules for exporting**

When exporting customized configuration data, it is important to know the rules governing the export function and the options available to you.

The following rules apply when exporting customized configuration data from a Tivoli Integrated Portal environment:

**Rules and options for pages**

**Rule**

1. You can export a particular page by page ID or choose to export all pages.
2. You can export pages associated with a particular view.
3. You can export pages that are associated with a particular portlet from a particular WAR.
4. If a page contains multiple portlets, but only some from a specified WAR, then all elements of the page are exported.
5. Pages that are targets of a wire for a specified page are exported.
6. The default export scope is All if you do not define pages to be exported under rule 2 and rule 3.
7. The default export scope is NONE if you define pages to be exported under rule 2 and rule 3.
Rules and options for views
1. You can export a particular view by view ID or choose to export all views.
2. You can optionally export all views that contains a specified page.
3. The default export scope is All.
4. You can optionally export all pages associated with the views that you want to export.
5. If an view has a default node in the navigation pane associated with it, then that page is automatically exported with the view.

Rules and options for custom roles and role preferences (console preference profiles)
1. You can export a particular role by role ID or choose to export all roles.
2. You can export a custom role and role preference that is associated with a specified page or view.
3. The default export scope is set to All, unless the \textit{includeEntitiesFromApps} parameter has been specified for a page or view, whereby it is then set to \textit{REQUIRED}.
4. If a console preference profile has a custom view as its default view, then that view is automatically exported. If the exported view has a default node in the navigation pane, then the associated page is automatically exported with the view.

Rules and options for user preferences
1. You can export user preferences by user ID or choose to export preferences for all users.
2. The default export scope is set to All, unless the \textit{includeEntitiesFromApps} parameter has been specified for a page or view, whereby it is then set to \textit{REQUIRED}.

Rules and options for console properties and customization properties
All console properties and customization properties are exported.

Rules and options for transformations
All transformations are exported.

Import commands
You can use the \texttt{tipcli Import} commands and apply a number of parameters to define which items you want to include and exclude in relation to the import operation.

Importing previously exported data
You can import data that was exported from another instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal.

Before you begin
Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

Ensure that you have run the export operation on an originating instance of the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server and that you have copy the output file (data.zip) to the following directory on the other instance:
\texttt{tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/input}
About this task

To import data from a data.zip file that was exported from another instance Tivoli Integrated Portal Server:

Procedure

1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. Optional: To return a list of plugins that will be run during the import operation, run the following command:
   - **Windows**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ListImportPlugins`
   - **UNIX** / **Linux**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat ListImportPlugins`
3. To import the customization data, run the following command:
   - **Windows**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat Import --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password`
   - **UNIX** / **Linux**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Import --username tipadmin_user_name --password tipadmin_password`

Results

When the `Import` command completes, the imported data is merged with the existing Tivoli Integrated Portal environment.

Related reference:

"Import tipcli commands" on page 83

Tipcli commands for importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data.

Rolling back imports

After you import data you can rollback your configuration to the pre-import state provided you have made no changes to the environment.

Before you begin

If you have performed multiple imports, you can also consecutively rollback individual imports. In all cases, you must have not had made changes to the environment.

Ensure that the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is running.

About this task

To roll back imports for a Tivoli Integrated Portal environment:

Procedure

1. At the command line change to: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin`.
2. To rollback an import, run the following command:
   - **Windows**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.bat Import --rollback ALL`
   - **UNIX** / **Linux**: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh Import --rollback ALL`
When the command completes successfully, the Tivoli Integrated Portal environment is restored to the state that prevailed before the latest import operation was performed.

3. Optional: If you performed multiple imports and you want to roll back more than the most recent import operation, you can re-run the `tipcli.bat Import --rollback ALL` command. You can re-run the rollback command multiple times to consecutively roll back a number of import operations.

When you re-run the rollback command a second or subsequent time, the Tivoli Integrated Portal environment is restored to the state that prevailed prior the settings for that particular import operation being applied.

**Rules for importing**

When importing customized configuration data, it is important to know the rules governing the import function and the options available to you.

The following rules apply when importing customized configuration data for a Tivoli Integrated Portal environment:

**Rules and options for pages**

- **Rule**
  1. You can import all pages included in an exported package.
  2. You can exclude system customized pages that do not exist in the new environment.
  3. You can exclude pages associated with a WAR that is not deployed in the new environment and thereby avoid introducing empty pages.
  4. If a page contains multiple portlets and some of portlets are associated with a WAR that is not deployed in the new environment, the page is not imported.

**Rules and options for views**

All views included in an exported package are imported.

**Rules and options for custom roles and role preferences (console preference profiles)**

All roles included in an exported package are imported.

**Rules and options for user preferences**

All user preferences included in an exported package are imported.

**Rules and options for console properties and customization properties**

All console properties and customization properties included in an exported package are imported.

**Rules and options for transformations**

All transformations included in an exported package are imported, if the `haSupport` parameter is set to Both or False.

Table 1 provides details how various elements are processed during import:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pages</td>
<td>Overwritten</td>
<td>In relation to pages, roles are merged, view memberships remain unchanged, and positions are modified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 7. Rules for overwriting and merging during import (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Views</td>
<td>Overwritten</td>
<td>In relation to views, existing page memberships are merged with imported pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roles</td>
<td>Skipped</td>
<td>In relation to roles, user and group mappings are merged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Console preference profiles</td>
<td>Skipped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credential data</td>
<td>Merged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property files</td>
<td>Merged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformations</td>
<td>Skipped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charts</td>
<td>Overwritten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

tipcli command reference

tipcli - Export plugins

Use the Export command to export customization data for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal. Use the ListExportPlugins command to list plugins that are available for export.

Syntax

**ListExportPlugins**

Use the ListExportPlugins command to list all plugins that can be exported. Use the list of returned plugins to assist you when you are specifying plugins to be exported.

**Export** [--includePlugins|--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2] [--settingFile setting_file] --username tip_username --password tip_user_password

Parameters

If you provide no parameters to the Export command, all custom data is exported by default.

**Note:** If you specify additional parameters for the tipcli.bat|sh Export and make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

Table 8. Export parameters and arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--includePlugins</td>
<td>--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8. Export parameters and arguments (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--settingFile setting_file]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. You can specify your export requirements in properties file instead of specifying your requirements using separate parameters at the command line. Provide a path to the settings file as the argument to the settingFile parameter. On systems running Windows you must use double backslashes characters (\) when specifying the path to your settings file, for example, C:\tmp\export.properties. Command line parameters take precedence over entries in the settings file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username tip_username</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The user name for a user with the isadmin role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password tip_user_password</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the specified user name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 1 - Return a list of plugins available for exporting

The following example returns a list of plugins that can be exported:

Windows
C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv22\profiles\TIPProfile\bin>tipcli.bat ListExportPlugins

Example 2 - Export a subset of available plugins

The following example exports the CMS plugin only:

Windows
C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv22TWA\profiles\TIPProfile\bin>tipcli.bat Export
--includePlugins com.ibm.tivoli.tip.cli.cms.CmsExportPlugin
--username tipadmins --password tippassword

Import tipcli commands

Tipscli commands for importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data.

Note: If you specify additional parameters for the tipcli.bat|.sh Import and make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

ListImportPlugins

Use the ListImportPlugins command to list all plugins that are available to be imported.

Import [--includePlugins|--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2] [--settingFile setting_file] [--backupDir backup_dir] --username tip_username --password tip_user_password

Use the Import command to import customization data into a Tivoli Integrated Portal environment. If you provide no parameters to the Import command, all custom data is imported by default.

Table 9. Import command arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--includePlugins</td>
<td>--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 9. Import command arguments (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--settingFile setting_file]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. You can specify your import requirements in a properties file instead of specifying your requirements using separate parameters at the command line. Provide a path to the settings file as the argument to the settingFile parameter. On systems running Windows you must use double backslashes characters () when specifying the path to your settings file, for example, C:\tmp\import.properties. Command line parameters take precedence over entries in the settings file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--backupDir backup_dir]</td>
<td>You can specify a directory to save the backup data during an import operation so that if it is required you can subsequently restore settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username tip_username</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The user name for a user with the isadm role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password tip_user_password</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the specified user name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Resource types

You can use the portal to create pages, roles, and views. All of these resources that you create using the portal are assigned a resource type of Custom. With other resource types, a more limited set of actions are available.

The type of resource is determine by how it was created.

Core
This resource type is central to the operation of the portal. Core resources cannot be created or deleted in the portal, and you cannot edit its properties. However, you can make other changes that do not alter the nature of the resource, for example, including a core page in a custom view.

System
This resource type is created by products and applications that deploy the resource to the portal. For example, when an application is installed to the portal environment, it can define certain pages, roles, and views needed to administer the application through the portal. All of these have a resource type of System. Like core resources, system resources cannot be created or deleted. However, for views, pages, and folders, you can create copies of system resources, which are explained under System Customized. And like core resources, you can perform actions on a system resource, like changing access to the resource, without modifying its properties.

System Customized
This is a copy of a system resource with properties, such as the name of the resource, that have been changed in the portal. The original system resource is always maintained, but the system customized version of the resource is used until the original is restored. When the system resource is restored, the system customized copy is deleted.

You can create system customized pages, folders, and views, but not roles, wires, or external URLs.
Custom

These are resources that you create using the portal. Custom resources can be created, edited, and deleted by any user whose role has access to the Pages, Views, Portlets, and Roles portlets under the Settings folder in the navigation.

Manage Global Refresh

Portal administrators use Manage Global Refresh to configure portlet refresh settings for all users of the portal. Portlet refresh is used to refresh the content of a single module without reloading the entire page. As a result, your experience with the portal interface is quicker and more interactive. Use these settings to fine tune how each portlet refreshes its content individually on the page.

Using Manage Global Refresh

Use this module for the following tasks:

- Giving permission to portal users to edit their own portlet refresh options.
- Configuring default refresh settings for portal modules. Administrators can set values for refresh mode, refresh interval, and show timer settings. These settings become the default values for Configure Portlet Refresh.
- Setting the minimum refresh interval for each portal module. Use this setting to prevent the performance impacts of too many calls to the server to refresh content.

Portlet refresh settings

Restore Default Configuration

Changes all of the displayed field values to the values that were last saved. At least one portlet must be selected to enable this button. To save the changes displayed by this button, select the portlets that you want to restore to the default settings and click Apply or OK.

Select all

Selects all of the portlets displayed. A maximum of 10 refreshable portlets can be displayed and selected at a time.

Deselect all

Deselects all of the portlets displayed.

Select

Use the checkbox to select individual portlets that you want to restore to the default settings.

Portlet

Indicates the name of the portlet or portal module which can be refreshed.

Refresh Mode

Select one of the following options:

- No Refresh
  Indicates that the portlet content will not be refreshed automatically. The refresh timer is not displayed in the portlet title bar, but the portlet can still be refreshed manually.
- Timed Refresh
  Indicates that the portlet content is refreshed automatically based on the value of the refresh interval.
- Smart Refresh
Indicates that after the refresh interval has timed out, the client should query the portlet on the server to determine if it should refresh the content. If the portlet has updates to provide, then the content is updated on the client. Otherwise, no change is made and the timer is started again.

- Unregister
  Disables portlet refresh capabilities for this portlet. The portlet still displays in Manage Global Refresh. Portlet refresh can be subsequently restored by setting this value to one of the other settings.

**Refresh Interval**
Indicate a value in seconds after which the portlet's content can be refreshed from the server without reloading the entire page. This value must be greater than or equal to the minimum refresh interval.

**Minimum Refresh Interval**
Indicates the minimum value for the refresh interval. This value is determined by the administrator.

**User Configurable**
Indicates whether users can change refresh setting in Configure Portlet Refresh.

**Show Timer**
Indicates whether to display a timer in the portlet title bar showing the number of seconds remaining until the next refresh can take place.
Chapter 3. Developing dashboards for event visualization

You can create pages that act as “dashboards” for visualizing events. You can select from the portlets that are provided with the Web GUI, and also from other products that are deployed in your Tivoli Integrated Portal environment.

For example, you can develop a map or a set of gauges that give an at-a-glance overview of the state of your network, and one or more event lists for drilling into the details of specific nodes. You can use wires to configure the communications between the portlets. Provided the portlets are supported on mobile devices, you can view these pages on a supported mobile device.

Before you begin

- Determine which portlets you want on the page.
- If you want a map on the page, design the map.
- If you want a custom gauge on the page, develop the metric that will feed the gauge display.
- Decide which users, groups, or user roles you want to have access to the page and assign the roles accordingly.
- If you want the portlets to communicate in a custom wire, develop the wires and transformations that will control the communications between the portlets.
- If you want a custom event relationship to be displayed on an Event View, define the relationship.
- If you want custom tools to run in response to a user clicking a row an Active Event List, develop the tool.

About this task

Related concepts:

“Developing wires” on page 57
Wires are the route or connections of client-side events between source portlets and targets. A wire defines the event name, the source portlet that sends the event, and the target that receives the event. The target can be a portlet on the same page, a portlet on a different page, or a different page. When the target of an event is a page, the event is delivered to all portlets on the page. There are two types of wires: system and custom.

“Developing transformations” on page 66
Transformations manipulate the event generated by a source target before it is delivered to the target portlet. You can develop a transformation to convert an event name, parameter name, or parameter value to match the needs of a target portlet. Using transformations to handle events is optional.

Related tasks:

“Visualizing event information on maps” on page 317
You can use maps to graphically represent the status of a network.

“Visualizing event information on gauges” on page 298
You can graphically represent the values of various metrics on gauges.

“Assigning roles to users and groups” on page 131
Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

“Defining event relationships” on page 246
Use event relationships to organize an Event Viewer. Event relationships group events in the list by the relationships between them.

“Creating event management tools” on page 205
You can create and administer CGI, SQL, command line and script tools to be used in the AEL. You can also configure prompts that are displayed to users in the Active Event List (AEL) when performing actions with tools.

Wiring Event Viewers and Active Event Lists

You can use wires and transformations to configure an Event Viewer and an Active Event List (AEL) to pass event data between each other. Under the configuration described here, a custom wire and transformation are applied. When a user clicks a row in the Event Viewer, all unacknowledged events that have the same Node as the selected row are displayed to the AEL. The instructions in this topic describe a possible option for wiring two portlets. You can develop your own transformations and apply them to the wires.

Before you begin

Depending on the requirements that you have of the page, perform some or all of the tasks described in “Chapter 3, “Developing dashboards for event visualization,” on page 87.”

About this task

Restriction: The following restriction applies if you create the page in freeform mode: If you overlay portlets on top of another, so that one portlet is only partially visible beneath another portlet, limitations apply. If the portlet underneath is applet-based and the portlet on top is HTML-based, the applet-based portlet is visible through the HTML portlet. This limitation shows when you arrange the portlets on the page. The following Web GUI portlets are applet-based: Active...
Event List (AEL), Maps, and Event Dashboard. For example, if you arrange an Event Viewer over an AEL, the AEL is visible through the Event Viewer. To avoid this problem, arrange applet-based portlets and HTML-based portlets alongside each other, not over each other.

**Procedure**

To develop a page that wires an Event Viewer and an AEL:
1. Log in as a user that has the iscadmins role.
2. Create the page, assign it to a location in the navigation and specify the roles that users need to view the page.
3. Add the AEL and the Event Viewer to the page.
4. From the page action list, select **Edit Page**.
5. Click **Show Wires**, and then click **New Wire**.
6. Specify the wires that connect the Event Viewer and the AEL:
   - In the Select Source Event for New Wire window, click **Event Viewer > NodeClickedOn**, and then click **OK**.
   - In the Select Target for New Wire window, click **My Workspaces > This page page > Active Event List (AEL)**, where *page* is the name of the page that you created in step 2.
   - In the Transformation window, select **Unacknowledged Matched Nodes**. A description of the transformation is displayed, which states that the transform may be applied to the Web GUI Event Viewer. This transformation is the default custom transformation. However, you can add your own custom transformations.
7. Save the page.

**Results**

You can now click an event in the Event Viewer and display all the associated unacknowledged events for the selected Node in the AEL.

**What to do next**

Test the wires as follows:
1. Identify unacknowledged events that belong to a particular Node.
2. Open the page that you defined in step 2 of the preceding procedure.
3. In the Event View, click an event that belongs to the Node that you identified.

In the AEL, all the unacknowledged events that belong to that Node are displayed.
Related tasks:

“Selecting items for display on a page” on page 32
After you created a page, or while you are editing a page, select or change the portlets that are displayed on the page. If the page layout is in classic mode, you split the page into sections and then select the item that is displayed in each section from a list. If the page layout is in freeform mode, you drag the items from a content palette onto the page, and then position and size each item. Items can be portlets, widgets, or iWidgets. The items for selection depend on the products that are in your Tivoli Integrated Portal installation.

“Configuring communications between portlets using wires” on page 33
You can create connections, or wires, between portlets so that they can exchange messages with each other. When an action occurs in a source portlet, it creates an event, which contains information that can be sent to other portlets. To work with wires on a page, the page must be in edit mode.

“Editing the properties of a page, folder, or external URL” on page 38
You can edit the properties of custom and system navigation nodes, which include pages, folders, and external URLs. Properties of a node include its display name and its location in the navigation. You can also indicate whether multiple or only single instances of a page node can be launched in the portal.

Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173
You can change the settings of the portlets to customize their appearance and setup to your requirements.

Wiring an event list to display related events from a gauge

To configure a page to display events for a gauge metric in an Event Viewer or AEL, create a page that contains the Gauges portlet and the Event Viewer or Active Event List (AEL) portlet, and then customize the Gauges portlet to display events in the Event Viewer or AEL when you click the gauge.

Before you begin

Depending on the requirements that you have of the page, perform some or all of the tasks described in Chapter 3, “Developing dashboards for event visualization,” on page 87.

About this task

Restriction: The following restriction applies if you create the page in freeform mode: If you overlay portlets on top of another, so that one portlet is only partially visible beneath another portlet, limitations apply. If the portlet underneath is applet-based and the portlet on top is HTML-based, the applet-based portlet is visible through the HTML portlet. This limitation shows when you arrange the portlets on the page. The following Web GUI portlets are applet-based: Active Event List (AEL), Maps, and Event Dashboard. For example, if you arrange an Event Viewer over an AEL, the AEL is visible through the Event Viewer. To avoid this problem, arrange applet-based portlets and HTML-based portlets alongside each other, not over each other.

Procedure

In these steps, “event list” refers to either the AEL or Event Viewer, depending on which portlet you want to add to the page. To create the page, and configure the communication between the portlets:

1. Log in as a user that has the iscadmins role.
2. Create the page, assign it to a location in the navigation and specify the roles that users need to view the page.
3. Add the Gauges portlet and the required event list to the page.
4. Edit the portlet preferences for the gauges.
5. From the Click action list, select Send Event (using wires), and then click OK. Repeat this step for each gauge with associated metrics that represent event data. By default, events for the following metrics can be rendered as events in the Event Viewer or AEL:
   - status
   - escalated
   - unresolved
   - acknowledged
   - lastminute
6. Specify the wires that connect the Event Viewer and the AEL:
   - From the page action list, select Edit Page.
   - Click Show Wires, and then click New Wire.
   - In the Select Source Event for New Wire window, select Gauges > NodeClickedOn, and then click OK.
   - In the Select Target for New Wire window, select the Event Viewer, and then click OK.
   - In the Transformation window, select Unacknowledged Matched Nodes. A description of the transformation is displayed, which states that the transform can be applied to the Event Viewer. This transformation is the default custom transformation. However, you can add your own custom transformations.
   - Select Event Viewer from the Select Target for New Wire window, and then click OK.
   - In the Transformation window, select Show Gauge Events. A description of the transformation is displayed.
7. Save the page.

**Results**

You can now click a gauge in the Gauges portlet page and display its associated events in the Event Viewer portlet page.
**Related tasks:**

- “Selecting items for display on a page” on page 32
- “Configuring communications between portlets using wires” on page 33
- “Editing the properties of a page, folder, or external URL” on page 38
- Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173

---

**Wiring gauges to an Event Viewer for display on mobile devices**

Create a gauge and configure a wire to launch a mobile event list with a predefined filter when you click the gauge. Configure the gauge for display on mobile devices.

**Before you begin**

Depending on the requirements that you have of the page, perform some or all of the tasks described in Chapter 3, “Developing dashboards for event visualization,” on page 87.

**Procedure**

1. Log in as a user that has the iscadmins role.
2. Create the page, assign it to a location in the navigation and specify the roles that users need to view the page.
3. Add the Gauges portlet and the Event Viewer to the page.
4. Specify the metrics that you want to be applied to the gauges.
5. Edit the portlet preferences for the Gauges portlet as follows:
   - Select the **HTML for mobile devices** checkbox.
   - Select a metric that you defined in step 1 from the **Metrics** list.
   - Select **SEND EVENTS via Wires** from the **Click action** list and define the wire:
     - a. Select the **NodeClickedOn** event and click **OK**.
     - b. Select **Event Viewer** as the target for the wire and click **OK**.
     - c. Select **Show Gauge Events** as the transformation and click **OK**.
     - d. Save the wire.
   - Select **url** from the **Mobile device touch action** list and type the URL in the **Mobile device Script/URL** field.
6. Open the page and click the gauge that you defined in step 2 on page 92. An Event Viewer is launched with the filter applied.

7. Re-edit the portlet preferences for the Gauges page that you created in step 2 on page 92. Then, copy the URL and send it to a mobile device by email or SMS, or scan the QR code using a mobile device. The Gauges page is displayed on the display of the mobile device.

8. Tap the gauge that you defined in step 1. The mobile event list is displayed with the filter defined by the gauge.

Related tasks:

“Selecting items for display on a page” on page 32
After you created a page, or while you are editing a page, select or change the portlets that are displayed on the page. If the page layout is in classic mode, you split the page into sections and then select the item that is displayed in each section from a list. If the page layout is in freeform mode, you drag the items from a content palette onto the page, and then position and size each item. Items can be portlets, widgets, or iWidgets. The items for selection depend on the products that are in your Tivoli Integrated Portal installation.

“Configuring communications between portlets using wires” on page 33
You can create connections, or wires, between portlets so that they can exchange messages with each other. When an action occurs in a source portlet, it creates an event, which contains information that can be sent to other portlets. To work with wires on a page, the page must be in edit mode.

“Editing the properties of a page, folder, or external URL” on page 38
You can edit the properties of custom and system navigation nodes, which include pages, folders, and external URLs. Properties of a node include its display name and its location in the navigation. You can also indicate whether multiple or only single instances of a page node can be launched in the portal.

Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173
You can change the settings of the portlets to customize their appearance and setup to your requirements.
Chapter 4. Administering users, roles, and groups

You can create different kinds of Web GUI users, assign them roles and add them to groups to determine their ability to perform tasks. You can also modify the preferences of a Web GUI user.

Web GUI users, roles, and groups

The users of all products that are installed into the Tivoli Integrated Portal framework, including the Web GUI, are centrally administered. Users are associated with roles and groups.

Groups and roles can be administered only by a Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator, that is, a user with the iscadmins role.

Web GUI users

Web GUI users can be classified in different ways. Users can be classified according to the roles that are assigned to them. This determines their ability to access features and administer content. Within the Web GUI, administrators and users are defined by the roles they are assigned.

The following table describes the different types of Web GUI users that can be defined using roles.

Table 10. Web GUI user types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of user</th>
<th>Roles necessary</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Administrator</td>
<td>Web GUI administrator role (ncw_admin)</td>
<td>The administrator can access the administrative functions and all event management functions of the Web GUI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web GUI user role (ncw_user)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-write user</td>
<td>Web GUI user role (ncw_user)</td>
<td>A read-write user can access event management functions, run AEL tools, and change the filter or view applied to an AEL or monitor box. Read-write users who are also ObjectServer users can modify ObjectServer data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web GUI read-write role (netcool_rw)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Optional: Web GUI editor role for the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard (ncw_dashboard_editor)</td>
<td>Read-write users who are also assigned the ncw_dashboard_editor role can modify the portlet preferences of the event dashboard; these preferences control the layout of the monitor boxes, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read-only user</td>
<td>Web GUI user role (ncw_user)</td>
<td>A read-only user can access event management functions, but cannot run AEL tools or modify ObjectServer data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Web GUI read-only role (netcool_ro)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related tasks:

“Administering users” on page 104
You can perform tasks that help you manage users.

“Creating the Web GUI administrative user” on page 100
The Web GUI is supplied with one administrative user, ncoadmin. It is good practice for the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator to create one or more additional Web GUI administrative users to have permissions to modify Web GUI settings.

Web GUI roles

Roles must be assigned to users so that the users can view data and execute functions.

The user roles for the Web GUI are as follows:

ncw_user
This role gives a user access to the event management functions of the Web GUI. In addition to this role, the user must also have the ncw_admin role, netcool_rw role or the netcool_ro role; these roles control whether the user has administrative access, read-write access or read-only access to these functions.

ncw_admin
This role gives a user access to the administrative functions of the Web GUI. A user with this role also requires the ncw_user role.

netcool_rw
This role gives a user read-write access to Web GUI event management functions. Users with this role have access to AEL tools and can change event data. A user with this role also requires the ncw_user role.

netcool_ro
This role gives a user read-only access to Web GUI event management functions. Users with this role can access the AEL and view events, but cannot run AEL tools or change event data. A user with this role also requires the ncw_user role.

ncw_dashboard_editor
This role gives a user access to the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard portlet. Read-only users can also have this role.

ncw_gauges_viewer
This role gives a user access to the Gauges page. Users without the ncw_user role require this role to view the Gauges page in a Web browser, or to view an HTML page generated from the Gauges page on a supported mobile device. Use this role in preference to ncw_user when you want to restrict a user to viewing gauges only and not other parts of the Web GUI, for example the Active Event List. Users with the ncw_admin role also require this role to view and edit a Gauges page.

ncw_gauges_editor
This role gives a user access to the portlet preferences of the Gauges page. Users with this role also require the ncw_user role. Users with the netcool_ro role can edit the portlet preferences of the Gauges page if they are assigned the ncw_gauges_editor and ncw_user roles.
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. In the navigation pane, click Settings > Roles to add and remove roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.

### User groups in the Web GUI

Groups can be used to logically categorize users into units with common functional goals.

#### Related tasks:

"Administering groups" on page 121

You can perform tasks that help you manage groups.

### Supplied users and groups

As supplied, the Web GUI has two users and two groups. These enable you to begin using the product as soon as installation is complete.

The Web GUI is supplied with two users (named ncouser and ncoadmin) and two groups (named Netcool_OMNIbus_User and Netcool_OMNIbus_Admin). Each user is a member of at least one of these groups, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User ID</th>
<th>Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ncouser</td>
<td>Netcool_OMNIbus_User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncoadmin</td>
<td>Netcool_OMNIbus_Admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Netcool_OMNIbus_User</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Group roles

The groups have the following roles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group name</th>
<th>Roles assigned</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Netcool_OMNIbus_Admin</td>
<td>ncw_admin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ncw_dashboard_editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ncw_gauges_editor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ncw_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netcool_rw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Netcool_OMNIbus_User</td>
<td>ncw_user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netcool_ro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These assigned roles mean that ncouser is a read-only user and ncoadmin is an administrator.
**Using the users and groups**

The supplied users enable you to access the product as soon as the product is ready for use. They also provide a convenient means of accessing the product for temporary or demonstration purposes.

The groups provide a convenient way of allocating user or administrative privileges to any user you create. For example, as you create each read-only user you assign them to the Netcool_OMNIbus_User group.

**Web GUI user administration**

User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

By default, the authorization for performing user administration tasks is as follows:
- Generic user administration tasks, such as creating users and assigning roles and groups, are performed by the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators, that is, users with the iscadmins role.
- Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user is performed by the Web GUI administrators, that is, users with the ncw_admin role.

**Note:** The Web GUI does not close sessions that are incorrectly logged-out and counts these as active sessions.

The following table lists the different user administration tasks, and shows what kind of user can perform them.

*Table 13. User administration tasks*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>Performed by</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creating users</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting users</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing another user's password</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigning roles to a user</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigning groups to a user</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing a user's display name</td>
<td>Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing your own password</td>
<td>Any user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting ObjectServer SQL filters for a user</td>
<td>Web GUI administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting the Web GUI home page for a user</td>
<td>Web GUI administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting event list preferences for a user</td>
<td>Web GUI administrator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Related tasks:

“Creating users” on page 107
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

“Deleting users” on page 114
You can search for and list the existing users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, you can delete them and remove their user IDs from the user registry.

“Changing information about a user” on page 110
You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

“Changing passwords” on page 101
You can use the Change Your Password portlet to change your password from the default provided by the administrator.

“Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user” on page 101
Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.

“Assigning roles to users and groups” on page 131
Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

“Creating the Web GUI administrative user” on page 100
The Web GUI is supplied with one administrative user, ncadmin. It is good practice for the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator to create one or more additional Web GUI administrative users to have permissions to modify Web GUI settings.

“Administering users” on page 104
You can perform tasks that help you manage users.

Changing passwords

You can use the Change Your Password portlet to change your password from the default provided by the administrator.

About this task

When you log in to the portal, you can change your own password using the Change Your Password portlet. Administrators can change passwords for other users using the Manage Users portlet.

Attention: If you are an administrator and you want to change the password for the tipadmin administrator and the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus ObjectServer root user, you must use the Settings > Change Your Password portlet to change their password. Do not use the Users and Groups > Manage Users portlet.

Tip: For security reasons, change the password of the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus ObjectServer root user after installation.

To change passwords:

Procedure

• To change your own password, follow these steps:
1. Log in to the portal using the user ID whose password you would like to change.
2. In the navigation pane, click **Settings > Change Your Password**.
3. Enter your new password in the relevant fields and click **Set Password**.
   - As an administrator, to change the password for a user, follow these steps:
     1. In the navigation pane, click **Users and Groups > Manage Users** and click the user's name from the User ID column. A User Properties page is displayed.
     2. In the General tab, enter the new password in the relevant fields and click OK.

**Attention:**

If you authenticate to a Microsoft Active Directory server, it must be configured for SSL before you can use the Change Your Password portlet. If SSL is not enabled, you will receive an error when attempting to change the password for any user who is registered on the Active Directory Server.

**TIPCP0005E** Could not set the password via the underlying security system. This could be because a password rule was not met, you do not have access to change the password, or another reason.

**Related concepts:**

“Web GUI user administration” on page 98

User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

---

**Creating the Web GUI administrative user**

The Web GUI is supplied with one administrative user, ncoadmin. It is good practice for the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator to create one or more additional Web GUI administrative users to have permissions to modify Web GUI settings.

**About this task**

The administrator does not have to be an ObjectServer superuser.

If your configuration uses an ObjectServer as the user authentication source, note that user names cannot exceed 30 characters.

To create a Web GUI administrative user:

**Procedure**

1. Log in as the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator, that is a user with the iscadmins role.
2. Optional: Create a new user.
3. Click **Users and Groups > User Roles**.
4. Complete any combination of the search fields to help find the user.
5. Select the number of users to display and click **Search**.
6. Click the user ID of the user in the grid.
7. Set the check boxes for the following roles:
   - ncw_admin (Web GUI administrator)
   - ncw_user (Web GUI user)
8. Click **Save**.
9. Log in as the Web GUI administrative user and check that you have access to administrative pages.

The Web GUI can view the **Administration** entry in the navigation.

**Related concepts:**
- “Web GUI users” on page 95
  Web GUI users can be classified in different ways. Users can be classified according to the roles that are assigned to them. This determines their ability to access features and administer content. Within the Web GUI, administrators and users are defined by the roles they are assigned.
- “Web GUI user administration” on page 98
  User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

**Related tasks:**
- “Administering users” on page 104
  You can perform tasks that help you manage users.

---

### Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user

Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.

**About this task**

You can modify preferences for Web GUI users. All other user account administration tasks are handled by the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrator.

To modify the preferences and the event list options of a Web GUI user:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Settings > User Preferences for Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI**.
2. Select a user and click **Modify**. The preferences and event list configuration settings are displayed for the selected user.
3. To modify the user profile and set the event list options for the user, set the following parameters:

   **User filter**
   
   Type ObjectServer SQL commands to filter alert data from the ObjectServer for the individual user. This filter is optional, and is the highest level of data filtering applied to a user session. The following example shows alerts only if they occur more than 100 times and have a severity of 4 or higher:
   
   ```
   Tally > 100 AND Severity >=4
   ```

   **Note:** If a user is ObjectServer-authenticated, the Restriction Filters defined in the ObjectServer override any user filters.

   For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, see the IBM **Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Administration Guide**.

   For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, go to the IBM Tivoli Network Management Information Center at [http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v8r1/index.jsp](http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v8r1/index.jsp) and search for **ObjectServer SQL**.
User's home-page

Type a default page for the user. This page is displayed when the user logs in to the Web GUI using the following URL:

http://server:port/ibm/console/webtop

To define the home page, you add the full URL or type a path to the page, for example: /ibm/console/webtop/mypage.html. The mypage.html file needs to be defined in the tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/OMNIbusWebGUI.war directory. You can also save the files for user home pages to separate directories within the OMNIbusWebGUI.war location. In this case, remember to set the correct path. For example, if the mypage.html file is saved to the .../OMNIbusWebGUI.war/pages directory, then the path must be set to .../pages/mypage.html.

For more information about setting home pages for users, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI Administration and User's Guide.

Event List Configuration

The following preferences determine the facilities in the AEL and the Event Viewer event lists available to the user:

Allow filter and view selection
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to select predefined filter and view settings from the drop-down menus for filters and views in the toolbar of the event list.

Allow filter builder access
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to use the Filter Builder component within the event list.

Allow view builder access
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to use the View Builder component within the event list.

Allow preference configuration
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to change user preferences in the event list. For the AEL, if you do not select this check box the Edit menu does not contain the Preferences option.

Allow refresh rate configuration
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to set the refresh rate of the event list. The user must also have access to the Preferences window to be able to do this.

Refresh rate (seconds)
Type the value in seconds to set the default refresh rate for the event list.

Minimum refresh rate (seconds)
Type the value in seconds to set the minimum refresh rate for the event list.

Allow event selection
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to select alerts in the event list.

Show basic event information
Select this check box if you want the user to have access to the Information window in the Alerts menu of the AEL. If selected,
the user can view the **Fields** tab in the Information window. In the Event Viewer, select this check box if you want the user to be able to double-click an event to display the Information window. You can provide full access to the Information window, or limit what the user can see in this window by selecting or clearing the following check boxes.

**Show event details**
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to view the **Details** tab in the Information window.

**Show journals**
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to view the **Journal** tab in the Information window. To view the **Journal** tab, the user must also exist in the ObjectServer that the event is associated with.

**Edit journals (read write role)**
Select this check box if you want the user to be able to add journal entries.

**Restriction:** Only users who are also ObjectServer users and have the Web GUI read-write user role (netcool_rw) assigned can add journal entries.

**Globalization Settings**
The following preferences determine the internationalization features the user requires.

**Calendar Type**
Choose the type of calendar to use for dates and times in the Web GUI. You can choose any of the following calendars:

- **Gregorian**
- **Hebrew**
- **Hijri**
- **Hijri Civilian**

**Enable Bidi support**
Select this check box if you want to enable support for bi-directional text in Web GUI portlets. When you set this you can specify further characteristics of the system's behavior:

**Plain text alignment in editable fields and cursor position in empty editable fields**
You can set either of two behaviors for fields on Web GUI pages that you can edit:

- The text direction matches that set for the Web GUI itself.
- The text direction follows the text direction set the portlet.

**Text alignment in complex expression fields**
You can set either of two behaviors for pages that contain complex expressions such as a SQL query, a file path, or a URL:

- The text direction matches that set for the Web GUI itself.
- The text direction is always left to right.
4. Click **Save** to save and activate the settings.

**Related concepts:**

- **“Web GUI user administration” on page 95**
  User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

- **“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133**
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

- **“Filters” on page 249**
  Filters constrain the rows returned by a data source by applying SQL correlation conditions to the field data in the data source. Filters can be applied to the following event displays in the Web GUI: the Active Event List (AEL), Lightweight Event List (LEL), the Event Viewer, Table View, and monitor boxes on an Event Dashboard. To create and edit filters, you use an HTML utility called the Filter Builder.

- **“Views” on page 251**
  Views constrain the columns displayed in an Active Event List (AEL) and the Event Viewer. You can control the order in which columns are displayed, lock columns in the display, and control the sorting of information in the columns. Views in the Web GUI differ from the views that you can configure in Tivoli Integrated Portal. Views in Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane

---

**Administering users**

Use the Web console to create users and manage user profiles.

**What to do next**

From the left navigation pane, click **Manage Users**. Before you can perform some tasks for users, you must first search for existing users that match the search criteria that you specify. After the search completes, a table displays the users that match your search criteria. To manage users, you can perform these tasks:

**Related concepts:**

- **“Web GUI users” on page 95**
  Web GUI users can be classified in different ways. Users can be classified according to the roles that are assigned to them. This determines their ability to access features and administer content. Within the Web GUI, administrators and users are defined by the roles they are assigned.

**Related tasks:**

- **“Creating startup pages” on page 39**
  You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.
Searching for users

You can search for existing users that match the search criteria that you specify.

Procedure
1. From the navigation pane, click Manage Users.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table displays the users that match your search criteria.

What to do next

Creating users
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

Deleting users
You can search for and list the existing users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, you can delete them and remove their user IDs from the user registry.

Duplicating group assignments for a user
You can search for users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, these users can be added as members of the same groups that another existing user is already a member of. For example, if all the members of a department need to belong to the same groups as the department manager, you can duplicate the groups that the manager belongs to for all the other users that you choose.

Customizing search filters for users
You can create a filtered list of users by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The filtered list of users is limited to displaying only the users that meet the filter requirements. You can filter users by the letters that the user ID contains or by the letters that the user ID starts or ends with.

Changing the display options for the list of users
You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of users. For example, you can change the number of users to be viewed per page or you can display additional details about the users.
Customizing search filters for users
You can create a filtered list of users by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The filtered list of users is limited to displaying only the users that meet the filter requirements. You can filter users by the letters that the user ID contains or by the letters that the user ID starts or ends with.

Procedure
1. From the navigation pane, click Manage Users.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table displays the users that match your search criteria.
6. Click the filter icon.
7. Do one of the following:
   - To create a new filter for an attribute if none exists, click the [No Filter] link.
   - To select an existing filter, click on the filter name.
8. If you are creating a new filter, select a filter type from the list. The types of filters are Contains, Starts with, or Ends with.
9. Type the letters that you want to search for in the Text field. The wildcard character is not permitted in this field.
10. Click Apply.

What to do next
After you click Apply, the name of the filter is listed in the column under the attribute. The filter name matches the letters that were typed in the Text field. If no filter has been used for an attribute, the text [No Filter] displays.

The list of users is refreshed, and a filtered list of user IDs is displayed. The filter name and the total number of filtered user IDs are also shown.

Click the hide filter icon, or click Close, when you have finished working with filters.

You can search for existing users that match the search criteria that you specify.
You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of users. For example, you can change the number of users to be viewed per page or you can display additional details about the users.
Changing the display options for the list of users

You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of users. For example, you can change the number of users to be viewed per page or you can display additional details about the users.

Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click Manage Users.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table displays the users that match your search criteria.
6. Click the options icon.
7. If you want to view more or fewer entries on a page, change the number in the Entries Per Page field.
8. If you want to show more details about a user, select one or more check boxes next to the attributes that you want to display additional columns for.
9. If you want to see the user IDs on a different page, type the page number in the field at the bottom of the list, and click Go to jump to that page.
10. Click Apply.
11. Click the hide options icon, or click Close, after changing the display options for the list of users.

What to do next

- Searching for users
  You can search for existing users that match the search criteria that you specify.

- Customizing search filters for users
  You can create a filtered list of users by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The filtered list of users is limited to displaying only the users that meet the filter requirements. You can filter users by the letters that the user ID contains or by the letters that the user ID starts or ends with.

Creating users

You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

About this task

If your configuration uses an ObjectServer as the user authentication source, note that user names cannot exceed 30 characters.

Ensure that all user IDs are unique across all user repositories that are defined in the realm.
Procedure
1. Click Manage Users on the navigation pane.
2. Click Create to create a new user.
3. In the User ID field, type a unique name to identify the user. This user ID will be added to the user registry and also will be used as the login account name. For example, you might type d1ucas.
4. Optional: Click Group Membership and then follow the steps in “Changing group membership for a user” on page 109 to add the user as a member of one or more groups.
5. In the First name field, type the given or first name of the user. For example, you might type Diana.
6. In the Last name field, type the family or last name of the user. For example, you might type Lucas.
7. Optional: In the E-mail field, type an e-mail address for the user. For example, you might type d1ucas@tivoli.com.
8. In the Password field, type a unique password. For example, you might type d4lucas.
9. In the Confirm password field, type the same password again.
10. Click Create. If successful, a message will display that indicates that the user has been created. Also, the user ID and other user information will be added to the user registry, and a new login account will be created for the user.
11. To create another user, click Create Like.
12. Repeat the procedure until all the new users have been created.

What to do next
Related concepts:
“Web GUI user administration” on page 98
User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

Related tasks:
“Assigning roles to users and groups” on page 131
Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

Deleting users
You can search for and list the existing users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, you can delete them and remove their user IDs from the user registry.

Duplicating group assignments for a user
You can search for users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, these users can be added as members of the same groups that another existing user is already a member of. For example, if all the members of a department need to belong to the same groups as the department manager, you can duplicate the groups that the manager belongs to for all the other users that you choose.
Changing group membership for a user

You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.

Procedure

1. During the process of “Creating users” on page 107, click Group Membership.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select Group name.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, the results are displayed in two lists: one list is for groups that matched the search criteria and one list, named Current Groups, is for groups that the user is already a member.
6. To add the user to one or more groups, highlight the groups from the matching groups list to select them. For example, you might highlight ibmaustin01 and ibmaustin02 and then click < Add.
7. Optional: To undo or remove the user as a member, highlight the groups from the Current Groups list and then click Remove >.
8. Return to the process of “Creating users” on page 107 to complete the steps.

What to do next

Adding a user to other groups
You can add a user as a member to selected groups.

Changing information about a user
You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

Removing a user from other groups
After searching for the groups in which the user is currently a member, you can remove the user from membership in groups that you select.

Viewing information about a user
You can view information about a specific user.

Viewing the groups the group is a member of
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.

Viewing information about a user

You can view information about a specific user.

Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click Manage Users.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
3. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.

4. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.

5. Click **Search**. After the search completes, the users that match your search criteria are displayed as hypertext links.

6. Click on one of the user links to view information about the selected user. You can only view the information, you cannot change it.

7. Click **Cancel** after viewing to return to the previous window.

### What to do next

- **Changing information about a user**
  You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.

### Changing information about a user

You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

#### Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click **Manage Users**.
2. Complete the steps in [“Searching for users” on page 105](#) to find the user.
3. Click on one of the user links to change information about the user, as needed.
4. In the **First name** and **Last name** fields, enter the new information, if needed.
5. Optional: In the **E-mail** field, enter the new information, if needed.
6. Optional: In the **Password** and **Confirm password** fields, enter the new password, if needed, and confirm the new password.
7. To save the changes, either click **OK** to save and return to the previous window, or click **Apply** to save but remain on the same window.

### What to do next

**Related concepts:**

- [“Web GUI user administration” on page 98](#)
  User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.

- **Viewing information about a user**
  You can view information about a specific user.
Viewing the groups the user is a member of
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.

**Viewing the groups the user is a member of**
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.

**Procedure**
1. From the navigation pane, click **Manage Users**.
2. Complete the steps in "Searching for users" on page 105 to find the user.
3. Click the user name link to see the user properties.
4. Click the **Groups** tab to see the list of groups, in ascending order, that the user is currently a member of.

**What to do next**
- **Adding a user to other groups**
  You can add a user as a member to selected groups.
- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.
- **Changing information about a user**
  You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.
- **Removing a user from other groups**
  After searching for the groups in which the user is currently a member, you can remove the user from membership in groups that you select.
- **Viewing information about a user**
  You can view information about a specific user.

**Adding a user to groups**
You can add a user as a member to selected groups.

**Procedure**
1. Complete the steps in "Viewing the groups the user is a member of".
2. Confirm that the user in the **User ID** field is the user that you want to add to more groups.
3. Click **Add**.
4. In the **Search by** field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select **Group name**.
5. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
6. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
7. Click **Search**. After the search completes, a list is displayed of the groups that match your search criteria.
8. Highlight one or more groups to select them, and click **Add**.
9. Repeat steps 3 to 7 for any other groups you want to add the user to.
10. Click Close.

**What to do next**

- **Removing a user from other groups**
  After searching for the groups in which the user is currently a member, you can remove the user from membership in groups that you select.

- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.

- **Changing information about a user**
  You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

- **Viewing information about a user**
  You can view information about a specific user.

- **Viewing the groups the user is a member of**
  You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.

**Removing a user from groups**

After searching for the groups in which the user is currently a member, you can remove the user from membership in groups that you select.

**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in “Viewing the groups the user is a member of” on page 111.
2. Confirm that the user in the User ID field is the user that you want to remove from other groups.
3. Select the check boxes next to one or more groups, and then click Remove.
4. Click Remove when asked to confirm the removal.

**What to do next**

- **Adding a user to other groups**
  You can add a user as a member to selected groups.

- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.

- **Changing information about a user**
  You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.

- **Viewing information about a user**
  You can view information about a specific user.

- **Viewing the groups the group is a member of**
  You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.
Adding users as members of a group

You can add more users as members of a group.

Procedure

1. After completing the steps in “Viewing a list of members of a group” on page 127, click Add Users.
2. Confirm that the Group name field displays the name of the group to which you want to add more users as members.
3. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search by. For example, select User ID.
4. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users.
5. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
6. Click Search. After the search is complete, a list displays of the users that matched your search criteria.
7. Highlight one or more users in the list to select them, and then click Add.
8. Click Close.

What to do next

The users are immediately added to the list of members.

Adding more groups as members of a group

After viewing the list of members in a group that you specify, you can add more groups.

Removing members from a group

After searching for the list of members in a group that you specify, you can remove users and groups as members from the group.

Duplicating group assignments for a user

You can search for users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, these users can be added as members of the same groups that another existing user is already a member of. For example, if all the members of a department need to belong to the same groups as the department manager, you can duplicate the groups that the manager belongs to for all the other users that you choose.

Procedure

1. Complete the steps in “Searching for users” on page 105.
2. Select the check boxes next to one or more users that you want to assign the same membership as another group.
3. Choose the Duplicate Group Assignments action.
4. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
5. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
6. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
7. Click Search. After the search has been completed, a table displays the users that match your search criteria.

8. Highlight the name of the user whose group membership you want to duplicate for the previously selected users, and click OK. The group membership of the user is duplicated for the previously selected users.

What to do next

Creating users
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

Deleting users
You can search for and list the existing users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, you can delete them and remove their user IDs from the user registry.

Deleting users
You can search for and list the existing users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or more users, you can delete them and remove their user IDs from the user registry.

Before you begin
If an LDAP directory is defined as the user repository, delete all assignments of the group to roles before you proceed.

Procedure
1. From the navigation pane, click Manage Users.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more users. For example, select User ID.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of users, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all users. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table displays the users that match your search criteria.
6. Select the check boxes next to the users that you want to delete.
7. Click Delete.
8. Click Delete again when asked to confirm the deletion. The users are immediately deleted and removed from the user registry. The table that lists the users is refreshed, and the selected users are no longer displayed in the list.

What to do next

Related concepts:
“Web GUI user administration” on page 98
User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

Creating users
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a
login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the
new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.

**Duplicating group assignments for a user**

You can search for users that match your search criteria. After selecting one or
more users, these users can be added as members of the same groups that
another existing user is already a member of. For example, if all the members
of a department need to belong to the same groups as the department manager,
you can duplicate the groups that the manager belongs to for all the other users
that you choose.

### Administering roles

Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have
been assigned. In the navigation pane, click **Settings > Roles** to add and remove
roles and to assign access to portlets, pages, and views.

To manage users and groups and assign them to roles, click **Users and Groups**.

After the portal is installed, there are some roles already defined to the server.

**Attention:** The “suppressmonitor” role is used to hide the tasks associated with
the application server, including the tasks in the Security, Troubleshooting, and
Users and Groups folders.

### Access levels

The access level that a role has to a resource determines the actions that users
within that role can perform on the resource.

**Table 14. Access rights to portal resources based on access level**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Access Level</th>
<th>“User”</th>
<th>“Privileged User”</th>
<th>“Editor”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portlet</td>
<td>View and interact with the portlet and access portlet help</td>
<td>View and interact with the portlet, edit personal settings, and access portlet help</td>
<td>View and interact with the portlet, edit personal settings, edit global settings, and access portlet help</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Page</td>
<td>Launch the node from the navigation</td>
<td>Launch the node from the navigation and edit the content and layout</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folder</td>
<td>Note: Folders are always available in the navigation if the user has access to at least one of its pages.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External URL</td>
<td>Launch the node from the navigation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View</td>
<td>Select the view</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a given resource, if a role does not have one of these access level settings, then
the role has no access to the resource.

Only users with “adminsecuritymanager” and “Administrator” role can create,
delete or change the properties of a role. If you assign access for any other role to
the Roles portlet, users in that role will only be able to view roles and change
access to views and pages.
Note: The access control settings are not observed when using the administrative portlets under the Settings node. Users with access to these pages and portlets will be able to create, edit, and delete all custom pages, portlets, and views. For example, if a user has no access to “Page Two”, but has access to Pages, that user can edit all of the properties of “Page Two” and change access control settings. Keep this in mind when granting access to the Settings portlets for a role.

If a user is assigned to multiple roles, the user acquires the highest access level between these roles for a resource. For example, if a user belongs to the manager role with “Privileged User” access to a portlet and also belongs to the communications role with no access to the portlet, then the user has “Privileged User” access to the portlet.

Tasks

You can grant access for multiple roles while creating or editing a resource, such as a page or a portlet. You can also grant access to multiple pages or views while creating or editing a role.

Related concepts:

“Web GUI roles” on page 96
Roles must be assigned to users so that the users can view data and execute functions.

Related information:

“Administering views” on page 42
Views are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane. Views also can include one or more pages that are launched when the view is selected. Tivoli Integrated Portal view differ from the view that you can configure in the Web GUI. Web GUI views are a means of constraining the columns that are displayed in event lists.

“Administering portlets” on page 46
Portlets are web applications that display information or provide a service in a portal page. You can only work with portlets that have been deployed to the portal. Use Portlets to create, edit, and delete a portlet from a page.

“Administering pages” on page 30
Portal content is composed of pages, folders, and external URLs. Each of these resources is represented in the navigation pane as a node. Click Settings > Pages to create, edit, and delete pages and folders for the portal navigation. You can also edit external URLs that are launched from the navigation pane. You cannot create URLs in the portal. Instead, URLs are created when an application is deployed to the portal that includes the URL node in its descriptors.

Managing roles for users

Administrators can search for users and manage their roles in the User Roles page.

About this task

To search for users and manage their roles:

Procedure

1. In the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > User Roles. The User Roles page is displayed.
2. In the search fields provided, you can enter search criteria by given name, surname, user ID, and e-mail address. If you do not have exact details for a particular item, all of the search fields support using an asterisk (*) as a wildcard character. For example, to return all user records with a given name that starts with “Mich”, enter mich* in the First name field.

Tip: You can leave the search fields blank to return all user records.

3. From the Number of results to display list, select the number of records that you want returned and click Search.

Restriction: Returned records are displayed one page only. If more records are available than the setting you chose from the list, only a partial list is returned. To display all records you need to search again after selecting a larger number from the Number of results to display list.

A list of records that match your search criteria are listed in the grid.

4. Select a user from the User ID column. A list of available roles for the selected user is displayed on a new page. Those roles that are currently associated with the selected user are checked.

5. Modify the roles associated with the user as required, that is, check the roles that you want associated with the user and clear those that you do not.

6. Click Save to commit your changes, or Reset to reset the form to its initial state. Once you click Save, the User Roles page is displayed. The entry for the user in the Roles column is updated to reflect your changes.

What to do next

You can select another user from the search results and update their role settings, enter new search criteria to manage other user records, or close the User Roles page.

Managing roles for groups

Administrators can search for groups and manage their roles in the Group Roles page.

About this task

To search for user groups and manage their roles:

Procedure

1. In the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > Group Roles. The Group Roles page is displayed.

2. In the search fields provided, you can enter search criteria by group ID and description. If you do not have exact details for a particular item, both search fields support using an asterisk (*) as a wildcard character. For example, to return all group records with a group ID that starts with “tes”, enter tes* in the Group ID field.

Tip: You can leave the search fields blank to return all records.

3. From the Number of results to display list, select the number of records that you want returned and click Search.

Restriction: Returned records are displayed one page only. If more records are available than the setting you chose from the list, only a partial list is returned. To display all records you need to search again after selecting a larger number.
from the Number of results to display list. A list of records that match your search criteria are listed in the grid.

4. Select a group from the Group Name column. A list of available roles for the selected group is displayed on a new page. Those roles that are currently associated with the selected group are checked.

5. Modify the roles associated with the group as required, that is, check the roles that you want associated with the group and clear those that you do not.

6. Click Save to commit your changes, or Reset to reset the form to its initial state. Once you click Save, the Group Roles page is displayed. The entry for the group in the Roles column is updated to reflect your changes.

What to do next

You can select another group from the search results and update its role settings, enter new search criteria to manage other group records, or close the Group Roles page.

Creating roles

Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. All roles that are created in the portal have a resource type of Custom. This procedure describes creating a role for testing purposes. After completing these steps, you can remove or edit this role for production use.

Procedure

1. Click Users and Groups > Roles in the navigation. A list of all roles in the portal is displayed.
2. Click New. The properties panel for the new role is displayed.
3. Enter a descriptive name for the role.
4. Optional: Expand the Users and Groups section. Use this section to associate a role with one or more users and groups. The method to add users and groups is similar, so this topic describes adding users only. To associate a user with a role, follow these steps:
   a. In the Users panel, click Add. A new page is displayed that allows you to search for and select users to be added to the role.
   b. Provide search filters in the relevant fields, select the maximum number of results that you want returned and click Search to return a list of users that match your criteria.

   Tip: If you leave the search filter fields blank, the system returns all users (up to a limit of 1000).

   c. From the returned results, select the users that you want to associate with the role and click Add. The previous page is displayed listing the selected users in the Users panel.
5. Expand the Access to Views section. Use this section to grant access to one or more custom views for users who are assigned to the new role. If you have already created a custom view, follow these steps.
   a. Click Add. A list of available views is displayed.
   b. Select one or more views and click OK.
   c. To make sure the role has access to all of the pages within the view, click Grant to All.
6. Expand the **Access to Pages** section. A list of pages that the role can access is displayed. However, this list is empty if you did not add a view and grant access to all of the pages within the view.

7. Optional: Click **Add** to grant access to additional pages.

8. For each page that is listed, verify that the **Access Level** is set correctly.

9. Click **Save** to save your changes and return to Roles.

**Results**

The new role is created with access to the views, users and groups, and pages that you indicated. To grant access to the portlets on those pages you must edit the portlets.

**Related concepts:**

"Web GUI roles" on page 96

Roles must be assigned to users so that the users can view data and execute functions.

**Related tasks:**

"Assigning roles to users and groups" on page 131

Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

**Editing roles**

Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. If you have sufficient authorization in the portal, you can change the name of custom roles. For all roles, you can change access to views and pages and set the access level to pages.

**About this task**

**Procedure**

1. In the navigation pane, click **Users and Groups > Roles**. A list of all roles in the portal is displayed.

2. Click the name of the role that you want to edit. The properties panel for the role is displayed. If this is a custom role, the only field you can edit is **Role Name**. For all other resource types, you cannot edit any of the role properties.

3. Optional: Expand the **Users and Groups** section. Use this section to associate a role with one or more users and groups. The method to add users and groups is similar, so this topic describes adding users only. To associate a user with a role, follow these steps:
   a. In the **Users** panel, click **Add**. A new page is displayed that allows you to search for and select users to be added to the role.
   b. Provide search filters in the relevant fields, select the maximum number of results that you want returned and click **Search** to return a list of users that match your criteria.
   c. From the returned results, select the users that you want to associate with the role and click **Add**. The previous page is displayed listing the selected users in the **Users** panel.
4. Expand the Access to Views section. Use this section to grant access to one or more custom views for users who are assigned to the new role. If you have already created a custom view, follow these steps.
   a. Click Add. A list of available views is displayed.
   b. Select one or more views and click OK.
   c. To make sure the role has access to all of the pages within the view, click Grant to All.
5. Expand the Access to Pages section. A list of pages that the role can access is displayed. However, this list is empty if you did not add a view and grant access to all of the pages within the view.
6. Optional: Click Add to grant access to additional pages.
7. For each page that is listed, verify that the Access Level is set correctly.
8. Click OK.

Results

Your changes are saved and you are returned to the Roles page.

What to do next

For any pages that you added for the role, you should ensure that the role also has access to the portlets on the page.

Related concepts:
“Web GUI roles” on page 96
Roles must be assigned to users so that the users can view data and execute functions.

Related tasks:
“Assigning roles to users and groups” on page 131
Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

Deleting custom roles

You can delete only roles with the resource type of Custom. These are roles created using the portal.

About this task

Attention: Before deleting a role, consider whether any users are actively using the role and any impacts this might have on services. If necessary, notify users in advance of any plans for changes that could affect their work.

Follow these steps to delete a custom role.

Procedure
1. Click Users and Groups > Roles in the navigation pane. The Roles page is displayed with the list of roles in the portal.
2. Select the custom role that you want to delete. You can select more than one custom role.
3. Click Delete. A message is displayed at the top prompting you to confirm the deletion.
4. Click OK.
**Results**

The custom role is removed from the list.

---

**Administering groups**

You can perform tasks that help you manage groups.

**What to do next**

From the left navigation pane, click **Users and Groups > Manage Groups**. Before you can perform some tasks for groups, you must first search for existing groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After the search completes, a table displays the groups that match your search criteria. To manage groups, you can perform these tasks:

**Related concepts:**

- “User groups in the Web GUI” on page 97

Groups can be used to logically categorize users into units with common functional goals.

**Related tasks:**

- “Creating startup pages” on page 39

You can create startup pages, which are displayed after a user logs in, and assign them to users or user groups based on their role. You can also hide the links to other portlets and pages from the navigation.

- **Creating groups**
  You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

- **Deleting groups**
  You can search for and list the existing group names that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, you can delete them and remove the group names from the user registry.

- **Duplicating group assignments for a group**
  You can search for groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, these groups can be members of the same groups as another existing group. For example, if all groups at the Austin site should belong to the same groups as an existing group, you can duplicate the groups that one group belongs to for all the other groups that you choose.

- **Customized search filters for groups**
  You can create a filtered list of groups by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The list of groups will be limited because only the groups that meet the extended search criteria will be displayed.

- **Changing the display options for the list of groups**
  You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of groups. For example, you can change the number of groups to be viewed per page.
Searching for groups

You can search for existing groups that match the search criteria that you specify.

Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > Manage Groups.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select Group name.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table is displayed that lists the group names that match your search criteria. Descriptions, if any, are also provided.

What to do next

Creating groups
You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

Deleting groups
You can search for and list the existing group names that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, you can delete them and remove the group names from the user registry.

Duplicating group assignments for a group
You can search for groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, these groups can be members of the same groups as another existing group. For example, if all groups at the Austin site should belong to the same groups as an existing group, you can duplicate the groups that the one group belongs to for all the other groups that you choose.

Customized search filters for groups
You can create a filtered list of groups by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The list of groups will be limited because only the groups that meet the extended search criteria will be displayed.

Changing the display options for the list of groups
You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of groups. For example, you can change the number of groups to be viewed per page.

Customizing search filters for groups
You can create a filtered list of groups by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The list of groups will be limited because only the groups that meet the extended search criteria will be displayed.

Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > Manage Groups.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select Group name.
3. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.

4. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.

5. Click **Search**. After the search completes, a table displays the groups that match your search criteria.

6. Click the filter icon.

7. Do one of the following:
   - To create a new filter for an attribute if none exists, click the [No Filter] link.
   - To select an existing filter for an attribute, click on the filter name link.

8. If you are creating a new filter, select a filter type from the list. The types of filters are **Contains**, **Starts with**, or **Ends with**.

9. Type the letters that you want to search for in the **Text** field. The wildcard character is not permitted in this field.

10. Click **Apply**. The list of groups is refreshed and a filtered list of group names displays. The filter name and the total number of filtered group names are also shown.

11. Click the hide filter icon, or click **Close**, when you have finished working with filters.

**What to do next**

If no filter has been applied for an attribute, the text [No Filter] displays. If you click **Apply**, the name of the filter is listed in the column under the attribute. The filter name matches the letters that were typed in the **Text** field.

**Searching for groups**
You can search for existing groups that match the search criteria that you specify.

**Changing the display options for the list of groups**
You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of groups. For example, you can change the number of groups to be viewed per page.

**Changing the display options for the list of groups**
You can change how the search results are displayed when viewing the list of groups. For example, you can change the number of groups to be viewed per page.

**Procedure**

1. From the navigation pane, click **Manage Groups**.

2. In the **Search by** field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select **Group name**.

3. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.

4. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click **Search**. After the search completes, a table displays the groups that match your search criteria.
6. Click the **options** icon.
7. If you want to view more or fewer entries on a page, change the number in the **Entries per page** field, and click **Apply**.
8. If you want to see the group names on a different page, type the page number in the field at the bottom of the list, and click **Go** to jump to that page.
9. Click the **hide options** icon, or click **Close**, after changing the display options for the list of groups.

**What to do next**

**Searching for groups**
You can search for existing groups that match the search criteria that you specify.

**Customizing search filters for groups**
You can create a filtered list of groups by specifying the type of filter and the text to be used as part of the search criteria. The list of groups will be limited because only the groups that meet the extended search criteria will be displayed.

**Creating groups**
You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

**Procedure**
1. From the navigation pane, click **Users and Groups** > **Manage Groups**.
2. Click **Create** to create a new **group**.
3. In the **Group name** field, type a name to be used to identify the group. This group name will be added to the user registry. For example, you might type ibm
4. Optional: In the **Description** field, type a brief description for the group to distinguish this group from other groups. This description will be added to the user registry. The description must be an alphanumeric string with characters that are part of the local code set. For example, Users and groups, CNC Company Dept 047
5. Click **Create** to add the group name and the description, if entered, to the user registry. If successful, a message displays indicating that the group has been created.
6. To create another group, click **Create like**.
7. Repeat the procedure until all the new groups have been created.

**Related tasks:**

"Assigning roles to users and groups" on page 131
Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

**Deleting groups**
You can search for and list the existing group names that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, you can delete them and remove the group names from the user registry.

**Duplicating group assignments for a group**
You can search for groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After
selecting one or more groups, these groups can be members of the same groups as another existing group. For example, if all groups at the Austin site should belong to the same groups as an existing group, you can duplicate the groups that the one group belongs to for all the other groups that you choose.

**Viewing information about a group**

You can view information about a specific group.

**Procedure**
1. Complete the steps in “Searching for groups” on page 122.
2. Click on one of the group name links to view the information about the selected group. You can only view the information, you cannot change it.
3. Click Cancel after viewing to return to the previous window.

**What to do next**

**Adding a group to other groups**
Before you can add a group to other groups, you must first search for the groups in which you want the group to be a member.

**Changing information about a group**
You can change the information about a specific group. You can change the name of the group, add a new description for the group if none exits, or change the existing description.

**Viewing the groups the group is a member of**
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified group is currently a member of.

**Changing information about a group**
You can change the information about a specific group. You can change the name of the group, add a new description for the group if none exits, or change the existing description.

**Procedure**
1. From the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > Manage Groups.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select Group name.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, the groups that match your search criteria are displayed in the column as hypertext links.
6. Click on one of the group links to change information about the group, as needed.
7. Optional: In the Group name field, enter a different name for the group, if needed.
8. Optional: In the Description field, enter a different description that the existing description, or enter a new description if none currently exists, if needed.
9. To save the changes, either click OK to save and return to the previous window, or click Apply to save but remain on the same window.
What to do next

Viewing information about a group
You can view information about a specific group.
Viewing the groups the group is a member of
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified group is currently a member of.

Viewing the groups the group is a member of
You can view a list of existing groups that the specified group is currently a member of.

Procedure

1. From the navigation pane, click Users and Groups > Manage Groups.
2. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select Group name.
3. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
4. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
5. Click Search. After the search completes, a table displays a list of groups, as hypertext links, that match your search criteria.
6. Click the group name link to see the group properties.
7. Click the Groups tab to see the list of groups, in ascending order, that the group is currently a member of.

What to do next

Adding a group to other groups
Before you can add a group to other groups, you must first search for the groups in which you want the group to be a member.
Changing information about a group
You can change the information about a specific group. You can change the name of the group, add a new description for the group if none exists, or change the existing description.
Viewing information about a group
You can view information about a specific group.
Viewing the members of a group
You can search for a list of users and groups that are existing members of a specific group.

Adding a group to other groups
Before you can add a group to other groups, you must first search for the groups in which you want the group to be a member. Note that when an ObjectServer registry is used to manage users and groups you cannot add groups to other groups.

About this task

Restriction: If the ObjectServer acts as the user repository for your system, a group cannot contain other groups.
**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in “Viewing the groups the group is a member of” on page 126.
2. Confirm that the group in the **Group name** field is the group that you want to add to other groups.
3. Click **Add**.
4. In the **Search by** field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select **Group name**.
5. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search if for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.
6. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
7. Click **Search**. After the search completes, a list is displayed of the groups that match your search criteria.
8. Highlight one or more groups to select them, and click **Add**.
9. Click **Close**.

**Viewing the members of a group**

You can search for a list of users and groups that are existing members of a specific group.

**Viewing a list of members of a group**

You can search for a list of users and groups that are existing members of a specific group.

**Procedure**

1. From the navigation pane, click **Users and Groups > Manage Groups**.
2. Complete the steps in “Searching for groups” on page 122.
3. Click the name of a group.
4. Click the **Members** tab to view the users and groups that are existing members of the specified group. Icons are used to help distinguish a user from a group member.

**What to do next**

- **Adding more groups as members of a group**
  After viewing the list of members in a group that you specify, you can add more groups.
- **Adding more users as members of a group**
  You can add more users as members of a group.
- **Removing members from a group**
  After searching for the list of members in a group that you specify, you can remove users and groups as members from the group.
Removing a user from groups

After searching for the groups in which the user is currently a member, you can remove the user from membership in groups that you select.

**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in “Viewing the groups the user is a member of” on page 111.
2. Confirm that the user in the User ID field is the user that you want to remove from other groups.
3. Select the check boxes next to one or more groups, and then click Remove.
4. Click Remove when asked to confirm the removal.

**What to do next**

- **Adding a user to other groups**
  You can add a user as a member to selected groups.
- **Changing group membership for a user**
  You can search for and list the existing groups that match the search criteria. When creating a new user, you can choose the groups from the search results list in which you want the user to be a member.
- **Changing information about a user**
  You can change information about a specific user, such as the e-mail address. You can update the e-mail address, change the first or last name information, or set a new password.
- **Viewing information about a user**
  You can view information about a specific user.
- **Viewing the groups the group is a member of**
  You can view a list of existing groups that the specified user is currently a member of.

Adding groups as members of a group

After viewing the list of members in a group that you specify, you can add more groups. Note that when an ObjectServer registry is used to manage users and groups you cannot add groups as members of a group.

**About this task**

**Restriction:** If the ObjectServer acts as the user repository for your system, a group cannot contain other groups.

**Procedure**

1. After completing the steps in “Viewing a list of members of a group” on page 127, click Add Groups.
2. Confirm that the Group name field displays the name of the group to which you want to add more groups as members.
3. In the Search by field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search by. For example, select Group name.
4. In the Search for field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups.
5. In the Maximum results field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.
6. Click **Search**. After the search is complete, a list of the groups that matched your search criteria is displayed.

7. Highlight one or more groups in the list to select them, and then click **Add**.

8. Click **Close**.

**What to do next**

The groups are immediately added to the list of members.

- **Adding more groups as members of a group**
  - You can add more users as members of a group.

- **Removing members from a group**
  - After searching for the list of members in a group that you specify, you can remove users and groups as members from the group.

**Removing members from a group**

After searching for the list of members in a group that you specify, you can remove users and groups as members from the group.

**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in “Viewing a list of members of a group” on page 127.
2. Confirm that the **Group name** field displays the name of the group from which you want to remove members.
3. Select the check boxes next to one or more group members.
4. Click **Remove**.
5. Click **Remove** again when queried to confirm the removal of the selected members from the group. The members are immediately removed and are no longer displayed in the table.

**What to do next**

- **Adding more users as members of a group**
  - You can add more users as members of a group.

- **Adding more groups as members of a group**
  - After viewing the list of members in a group that you specify, you can add more groups.

**Duplicating group assignments for a group**

You can search for groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, these groups can be members of the same groups as another existing group. For example, if all groups at the Austin site should belong to the same groups as an existing group, you can duplicate the groups that the one group belongs to for all the other groups that you choose.

**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in “Searching for groups” on page 122.
2. Select the check boxes next to one or more groups that you want to assign the same membership as another group.
3. Choose the **Duplicate Group Assignments** action.
4. In the **Search by** field, select the attribute from the list that you want to use to search for one or more groups. For example, select **Group name**.
5. In the **Search for** field, either type the string that you want to search for to limit the set of groups, or use the wildcard character (*) to search for all groups. Whether the search is case sensitive or case insensitive depends on the user registry that you are using.

6. In the **Maximum results** field, specify the maximum number of search results that you want to display.

7. Click **Search**. After the search has been completed, a table displays the groups that match your search criteria.

8. Highlight the name of the group whose group assignment is to be duplicated for the previously selected groups, and click **OK**. The group membership of the group is duplicated for the previously selected groups.

**What to do next**

- **Creating groups**
  You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

- **Deleting groups**
  You can search for and list the existing group names that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, you can delete them and remove the group names from the user registry.

**Deleting groups**

You can search for and list the existing group names that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, you can delete them and remove the group names from the user registry.

**Before you begin**

If an LDAP directory is defined as the user repository, delete all assignments of the group to roles before you proceed.

**Procedure**

1. Complete the steps in [“Searching for groups” on page 122](#).
2. Select the check boxes next to the groups that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **Delete** again when asked to confirm the deletion. The groups are immediately deleted and removed from the user registry. The table that lists the groups is refreshed, and the selected groups are no longer displayed in the list.

**What to do next**

- **Creating groups**
  You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

- **Duplicating group assignments for a group**
  You can search for groups that match the search criteria that you specify. After selecting one or more groups, these groups can be members of the same groups as another existing group. For example, if all groups at the Austin site should belong to the same groups as an existing group, you can duplicate the groups that the one group belongs to for all the other groups that you choose.
Groups

A group is a collection of members that can be used to satisfy specific business needs, such as granting access to a resource.

Membership in a group named Company XYZ can be all the users in a department (Dept 047). A group within another group is referred to as a nested group. For example, Dept 047 might be a group within a larger group named Company XYZ Austin.

Members

A member is a user or group within a group.

For example, membership in a group named Company XYZ can be both an individual user (Harry Jones) as well as all the users in his department (Dept 047).

Users

A user is an individual who uses a computer. Users can include any user from expert programmers to computer novices.

For example, users might include:
- Users who use a computer product.
- Users who administer the same product and provide their users with access privileges.
- Users who administer users and groups by using a console menu to complete tasks.
- Users who use the same product for development purposes.

An example of a user task might be resetting your own password. An example of an administrator task might be creating new users and groups.

Assigning roles to users and groups

Assign roles to users or groups so that users are authorized to perform functions in the Web GUI. If you assign the roles to groups, the authorizations that are associated with the roles cascade to all users that are members of the groups.

Procedure

To assign roles to users and groups:

- To assign roles to user groups:
  1. Click Users & Groups > Group Roles.
  2. Complete any combination of the search fields to help locate the groups.
  3. Select how many groups to display and click Search. A list of groups appears in the grid.
  4. Click the name of the group you want to assign roles to.
  5. From the Role(s) list, select the roles to assign the user group.
  6. Click Save.

- To assign roles to users:
  1. Click Users & Groups > User Roles.
  2. Complete any combination of the search fields to help locate the users.
3. Select how many users to display and click **Search**. A list of matching users appears in the grid.
4. Click the user ID of the user you want to assign roles to.
5. From the **Role(s)** list, select the roles to assign the user.
6. Click **Save**.

**Results**

The changes take effect immediately.

**What to do next**

Ensure that users log out and log back in again, so that their authorizations are refreshed. If users need write-permission to the ObjectServer, for example to use the Active Event List (AEL) or the Web GUI tools, ensure that the user synchronization function is enabled.

**Related concepts:**

"Web GUI user administration" on page 98
User administration in the Web GUI is divided between the Tivoli Integrated Portal administrators and the Web GUI administrators.

**Related tasks:**

"Creating roles" on page 118
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. All roles that are created in the portal have a resource type of **Custom**. This procedure describes creating a role for testing purposes. After completing these steps, you can remove or edit this role for production use.

"Editing roles" on page 119
Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. If you have sufficient authorization in the portal, you can change the name of custom roles. For all roles, you can change access to views and pages and set the access level to pages.

"Creating groups" on page 124
You can create one or more groups. The group names and descriptions are added to the user registry.

"Creating users" on page 107
You can create one or more users. The users are added to the registry and a login account for each new user is automatically created. When creating the new user, you can also add the user as a member of one or more groups.
Chapter 5. Administering a load balancing cluster

Tasks for administering the Web GUI in a load balancing environment.

For instructions on how to set up a load balancing cluster, add nodes to a cluster, and remove nodes from a cluster, refer to the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Installation and Deployment Guide.

For instructions on how to set up a load balancing cluster, add nodes to a cluster, and remove nodes from a cluster see Setting up and configuring a load balancing environment.

Related concepts:
“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment”
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

The Web GUI in a load balancing environment

Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

A load balancing environment consists of a group of Web GUI servers that are linked together and operate as a single server. The name for the group of servers is a cluster and each of the servers is known as a node.

The primary benefits of a cluster are as follows:
- Load balancing – where the workload of servicing user requests is spread among the nodes. This improves the overall performance of the system.
- Availability – to maintain the availability of network monitoring even if some cluster nodes are unavailable for any reason (for example, they are shut down for maintenance).

The following sections contain more information on clusters, on administering them, and on using them:
- “Structure of a cluster” on page 134
- “Configuration data” on page 134
- “Updating configuration data” on page 135
- “Conditions necessary for changing configuration data” on page 136
- “Administering a load balancing cluster” on page 136
- “Using a load-balanced cluster” on page 137

Related concepts:
Chapter 5, “Administering a load balancing cluster”
Tasks for administering the Web GUI in a load balancing environment.
Structure of a cluster

A cluster consists of a group of Web GUI servers, an HTTP server, and a DB2 database.

- The servers carry out service requests from users. In addition, each server is configured to trust the other servers in the cluster and is able to communicate with all the other cluster members. This enables them to cooperate as a single unit.
- The HTTP server distributes user HTTP sessions among the servers. It allocates requests among the servers either randomly or in a round robin fashion. The method that the HTTP server uses depends on how it was set up when installed.
- The DB2 database holds the configuration data for the cluster.

Configuration data

Configuration data defines how a Web GUI server operates. It is held differently in a cluster than it is in a standalone server.

A standalone Web GUI server holds its configuration data in the local file system. In a cluster, the DB2 database holds the configuration data for the entire cluster. This is the master copy of the data that is shared by all the cluster nodes. A single set of configuration data means that each node is configured identically. There is no configuration data that is specific to a cluster node.

Although the database holds the master copy, each node also has a copy in its local file system. This is for fault tolerance reasons and allows the cluster to continue operation should the configuration database become unavailable during operation. When a node starts it reads a complete set of configuration data from the database into the local file system and loads it into memory to improve performance.

The configuration data that the database holds includes:
- Data sources
- Users, groups, and roles
- Page layouts, customized page information, and portlet descriptors
- Deployment descriptors
- Filters and views
- All items in the configstore:
  - AEL menus and menu configuration data
  - Metrics for gauges
  - Prompts
  - Tools
  - User preferences
- AEL preferences such as the refresh time and the number of rows to display
- Web GUI properties such as the default time zone and the timeout period
- Maps and resources, together with their properties
- Gauges and their properties
- Charts and their properties
- Predictive eventing information
- TADDM events
- Access information for the Inline frame portlet
Updating configuration data

Changes to the configuration data need to be coordinated across the entire cluster irrespective of which node initiated the changes.

The configuration data can change in any of three ways:

- The facilities of the Web GUI itself (for example, setting a set of preferences for a portlet)
- By editing the configuration files directly (for example, setting the metrics for a gauge)
- By using WAAP commands (for example, enabling predictive eventing)

A change could originate on any cluster node. However, this change needs to be propagated to the entire cluster to maintain the commonality of the cluster’s configuration.

Updating the database

The process for changing configuration data is as follows:

1. A user on a node changes an item in the configuration and requests that the node saves the change.
2. The node writes the new information (for example a configuration file) to the database.
3. The node notifies all the other cluster nodes that there is revised configuration information.
4. The node updates its local copy of the configuration data to reflect the change.
5. The other cluster nodes read the new information from the database and update the copies in their local file systems.
6. The cluster continues to operate with the new configuration settings.

Detecting changes to the configuration files

It is not always necessary to restart the cluster or any of its nodes to pick up the new configuration information. Instead, revised configuration data is automatically applied when it occurs. This is achieved through:

- The Web GUI timed tasks facility
- A file that lists the files to be monitored and an associated set of monitor processes

Timed tasks determine when each node loads changed files from the database.

The file is named webgui-home/etc/system/stores.lst and contains a list of all the configuration files that are kept in the database. When a node starts or joins the cluster it creates a set of processes that monitor each of the files listed in stores.lst. Whenever a change occurs to one of those files, the corresponding process propagates the changed file to the DB2 database and notifies other nodes of the change.

This file monitoring capability means that an individual component of the Web GUI (such as a portlet) does not need to know whether configuration information is maintained in a database or in the local file system. Instead, the component always writes changes to its configuration directly to the local file system. The monitoring processes take care of updating the database.
There are some exceptions where a restart of a node, and usually the cluster, is necessary. Changing any of the following files requires a restart of the server:

- `server.init`
- `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml`

### Conditions necessary for changing configuration data

To be able to operate correctly, certain conditions need to be met before the cluster can allow changes to its configuration data.

For the cluster to operate successfully, the DB2 database must be available. The database is the key coordination point of the cluster because it contains the configuration data.

If the database becomes unavailable after the cluster has started, operations continue, with each node using their local copy of the configuration data. However, each node prevents any changes occurring to the configuration data. This state continues until the DB2 database becomes available again. At this point, the cluster nodes refresh their locally stored configuration from the database and allow changes to configuration data to take place once more. The policy of allowing changes to occur only when the database is available helps to ensure that the cluster remains synchronized and that common behavior is maintained across the cluster.

When a node starts and joins the cluster, it reads the configuration data from the database, even though it may have data in its local file system. Nodes do this to ensure that they always have the latest set of configuration data. If the database is unavailable when a node starts, it cannot continue because it cannot be sure that the local copy of the configuration data is up to date.

In addition to the configuration data, each cluster node must be run the same version of the Web GUI, with the same set of features, and set up in the same way. As with the data, this is the only way to provide a common service to the users of the Web GUI.

### Administering a load balancing cluster

Administration of a load balancing cluster has two aspects that you need to be aware of:

- "Day-to-day administration"
- "Cluster administration" on page 137

#### Day-to-day administration

In day-to-day administration, bear in mind that any change you make always applies to the entire cluster not just the node where you make the change. For instance, adding a user to one node adds that user to all nodes. There may be a short time delay before a change is applied to all the nodes. This depends on how often the timed tasks interval is set, and how long it is until the next execution of the timed tasks facility.

An advantage of this propagation of configuration data is that it simplifies your administration job. You need only to make each change once, and the cluster ensures that all nodes receive it. If the database is unavailable, you cannot make any change to the configuration data. When using the Web GUI itself, the system prevents you from saving any changes to the data. When editing files or using
WAAP, the node you are using will not propagate the changed information until
the database becomes available once more.

Cluster administration

After set up, a cluster requires little administration over and above the day-to-day
administration that any Web GUI installation requires. However, the Web GUI
provides a comprehensive set of tools for you to administer the cluster. These tools
enable you to do the following:

- Enable load balancing after installation
- Administer the timed tasks facility
- Add and remove nodes
- Resynchronize a cluster node
- Export configuration information from a test environment into production
- Maintain the list of files to be monitored and propagated to the database when
ever they change

Related tasks:

"Administering timed tasks" on page 7

Timed tasks are the key part to a Web GUI server automatically loading changes in
configuration data, without the need to restart the server. You manage timed tasks
through properties in the Web GUI initialization file (server.init).

Using a load-balanced cluster

To users, the Web GUI behaves almost identically in a clustered environment as a
standalone server. All that many users might notice, after a move to a clustered
environment, is an increased responsiveness of the product. This is due to the
overall increases in performance that the cluster provides.

Maintaining the list of files to monitor

On each cluster member has a copy of a file named stores.lst that holds a list of
files to monitor for changes. When any of these files changes, the monitoring
process copies it to the database.

About this task

You can add further files to the list for monitoring and saving to the database.
Carry out the following procedure on each member of the cluster.

Important: You can add further files to store in the database only. Do not modify
or remove any of the supplied entries in the file. Doing so adversely affects the
operation of the cluster.

Procedure

1. In a text editor, open the file webgui-home/etc/system/stores.lst.
2. Add entries for any other directories that you want to include in the database.
   Note that subdirectories associated with entries in the stores.lst are not
   monitored. Additional entities must be added to monitor the subdirectories.
   Specify all directories relative to the path webgui-home/etc/configstore.
3. Save the file and exit from the text editor.
   The revised content of the file is copied to the database and propagated to all
   nodes in the cluster.
When administering the Web GUI in a load balancing environment, there are a number of practices you can use to avoid problems occurring in the cluster.

**Cluster administration tools**

Use the cluster tools to administer the members of the cluster.

**Monitoring a load balancing cluster**

If synchronized data fails to be committed to a node in the cluster, that node should be removed from the cluster for corrective action. Use the diagnosis tool to identify any unsynchronized nodes in the load balancing cluster.

To determine if changes to global data are not committed to any of the nodes, use the HATool command script to check the synchronization of modules and repositories on the nodes in a cluster. For the HATool, you must provide the DB2 administrator’s credentials.

**Query synchronization of modules**

Use this command to determine if all nodes have identical sets of modules deployed.

```bash
HATool.bat/sh modules username password -byNodes -showAll
```

The following parameters are optional.
- **-byNodes**
  Specifies that the results of the command are ordered by the node in the cluster. This parameter is optional. The default is to list the results by module.
- **-showAll**
  Specifies that all modules and nodes in the cluster should be returned. This parameter is optional. The default is to return only modules for unsynchronized nodes.

**Query the synchronization of global repositories**

Use this command to determine if all repositories are synchronized on all nodes.

```bash
HATool.bat/sh repositories username password -byNodes -showAll
```

The following parameters are optional.
- **-byNodes**
  Specifies that the results of the command are ordered by the node in the cluster. This parameter is optional. The default is to list the results by repository.
- **-showAll**
  Specifies that all modules and nodes in the cluster should be returned. This parameter is optional. The default is to return only repositories for unsynchronized nodes.

**Release the global lock**

Use this command to manually release the global lock placed on all of the console nodes when the cluster is in maintenance mode. This command is used when a node cannot commit a change during synchronization and has to be taken offline.
Load balancing best practices

When administering the Web GUI in a load balancing environment, there are a number of practices you can use to avoid problems occurring in the cluster.

Overview

Administrative items that need special attention in a load balancing environment are:

- **Timed tasks**
- **The configuration database**
- **The list of files to maintain in the database**
- **Custom web content**

Timed tasks

Timed tasks are an essential element in the smooth running of a load balancing cluster. They ensure that all changes to files in `webgui-home/etc/configstore/` and its subdirectories are detected and loaded into the server, without the need to restart the Web GUI server.

As a minimum, ensure that the `timedtasks.enabled` property in the `server.init` file is set to `true`.

In most cases the schedules supplied for filters and views and for other components are adequate. However, you can change the schedules to suit your specific needs. If you do this in a load balancing environment, you are recommended to create identical schedules for the same set of components on all nodes in the load balancing cluster.

The configuration database

A load balancing cluster uses a database to hold the configuration data. Individual nodes in the cluster hold only a copy of this data, primarily for performance reasons. The master copy of the configuration data is always the one in the database.

Always make sure that the database is available before making any changes to the Web GUI configuration. This is especially important if you are modifying the configuration files directly, such as defining the metrics for the gauge page. Without the database, the node where you make the change is unable to put the change into the database and then propagate that to all other nodes. The result is an inconsistent configuration in the cluster. In extreme cases this could affect the performance of the cluster.

Where ever possible, use the Web GUI itself to change the configuration. The Web GUI always checks that the database is available before allowing you to save any changes to the configuration. This avoids many of the potential data inconsistencies that could arise were you to edit the files directly.
The list of files to maintain in the database

A cluster includes a file named stores.lst that holds a list of directories whose content is to be stored in the configuration database. As supplied, the file specifies all the directories that contain information which must be synchronized across a cluster. You can add further directories to this list for other files that you want synchronized on all nodes. Note that subdirectories associated with entries in the stores.lst are not monitored. Additional entities must be added to monitor the subdirectories.

Periodically check the stores.lst to ensure it is fully up to date. The file itself is one of those synchronized across all nodes. So any changes you make to it are automatically propagated to the other nodes.

Take care when editing stores.lst to change only those entries you have added. Do not remove any of the supplied entries, as this can adversely affect the operation of the cluster.

Custom web content

Place any custom web content, such as HTML file, in subdirectories of

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/
OMNIbusWebGUI.war
```

In addition, add these directories to the list of files to maintain in the database.

Related concepts:

- “The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.
- “Overview of timed tasks” on page 8
  Timed tasks simplify the administration of a Web GUI server or of a cluster of Web GUI servers.

Related tasks:

- “Administering timed tasks” on page 7
  Timed tasks are the key part to a Web GUI server automatically loading changes in configuration data, without the need to restart the server. You manage timed tasks through properties in the Web GUI initialization file (server.init).
- “Maintaining the list of files to monitor” on page 137
  On each cluster member has a copy of a file named stores.lst that holds a list of files to monitor for changes. When any of these files changes, the monitoring process copies it to the database.

Troubleshooting

Use the troubleshooting notes to help correct problems with a load balancing cluster.
Resynchronizing a node with the cluster

In rare circumstances a fault may cause the configuration data of a node to become corrupted. Use this procedure to bring the data of a node back in synchronization with the cluster.

About this task

To resynchronize a node with the cluster restart the node.

Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Recovering from a database corruption

An event such as a power failure may corrupt the content of the load-balancing database. To recover from a database corruption, disjoin all nodes from the cluster, destroy and then recreate the IBM DB2 database, and rejoin the nodes to the cluster.

Procedure

To recover from a cluster configuration database corruption, proceed as described in the steps below.

For more information about how to remove nodes from a load balancing cluster, rejoin nodes to a cluster, and start these Web GUI load balancing operations, see the section Setting up and configuring a load balancing environment in Chapter 20 of the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

For more information about removing and creating DB2 database, see the IBM DB2 information center at http://pic.dhe.ibm.com/infocenter/db2luw/v9r7/index.jsp.

1. Remove all nodes from the load balancing cluster.
2. Remove the DB2 database.
3. Create a new DB2 database.
4. Rejoin all the nodes to the cluster.
5. Restart Web GUI load balancing operations.

Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

disjoin command fails with DB2 SQL errors

Actions to take if the disjoin command fails.

Failure on line 166 of uninstall.ant

The disjoin command fails with the following error.

[java] Disjoin from HA system procedure commencing...
[java] Exception thrown: Problem with the database!
[java] DB2 SQL error: SQLCODE: -204, SQLSTATE: 42704, SQLERRMC: DB2INST1.NODES
[java] Please check that the database is not empty!

BUILD FAILED
/opt/IBM/tivoli/tipv2/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/ha/uninstall.ant:166: Java returned: 1
To resolve this problem:

- Ensure that the DB2® host is running.
- Ensure that the user and database information in the properties file is correct.
- Check that the database is not empty.
- Ensure that the port for communication between the DB2 host and the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is correctly defined.

**Failure on line 90 of uninstall.ant**

The `disjoin` command fails with the following error.

```
/installant/IBM/tivoli/tipv2/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/ha/uninstall.ant:90: The server is running, it must be stopped!
```

To diagnose this problem, change to `$TIPHOME/bin` and run the following command:

```
./serverStatus.sh -all -profileName TIPProfile -username adminuser -password adminpass
```

_output is displayed that is similar to the following sample:

```
ADMU0116I: Tool information is being logged in file
/installant/IBM/tivoli/tipv2/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/serverStatus.log
ADMU0128I: Starting tool with the TIPProfile profile
ADMU0503I: Retrieving server status for all servers
ADMU0505I: Servers found in configuration:
ADMU0506I: Server name: server1
ADMU0509I: The Application Server "server1" cannot be reached. It appears to be stopped.
```

This problem is because the `uninstall.sh` command is running and hanging on the `serverStatus` command. The message `ADMU0509I: The Application Server "server1" cannot be reached. It appears to be stopped.` indicates that the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is hanging. The following table describes some common causes and solutions for this problem:

**Table 15. Causes and solutions for stopping the serverStatus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More than one Tivoli Integrated Portal application or component is running. For example, Tivoli Common Reporting is running alongside the Web GUI. In this case, the <code>serverStatus</code> command is hanging on a Tivoli Common Reporting process that is still running.</td>
<td>For Tivoli Common Reporting, run the Tivoli Common Reporting stop script before you run the <code>disjoin</code>. The Tivoli Common Reporting script stops all underlying Tivoli Integrated Portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A JAVA_HOME or JAVA environment variable is incorrectly set.</td>
<td>Check the values of these environment variables and correct if necessary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The server.xml file is corrupted.</td>
<td>In the output of the <code>serverStatus</code> command, review the error information and fix the configuration in the file. Alternatively, restore a backup copy of the file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 6. Troubleshooting

Consult these troubleshooting notes to help determine the cause of the problem and what to do about it.

Establishing the cause of problems
When problems occur in your Web GUI environment, the product contains a number of utilities that can help you establish the cause of the problems. You can change the logging levels and consult the relevant log files for information, set traces, and turn on auditing for Web GUI objects.

Checking system information
To determine the status of the server and client, and to help you with troubleshooting, access the system information for the Web GUI.

Procedure
To access the system information, in the navigation pane, click Troubleshooting and Support > System Information for Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI.

Results
The following information is displayed:
• Web GUI server version
• Java Runtime Environment
• Memory usage
• Operating system information
• Web GUI server properties
• ObjectServer properties
• System properties

Setting the log level
The log level determines the amount of detail that the Web GUI writes to the log files. As supplied, the product logs all events of the Information severity and above. Use these procedures to change the level if required.

About this task
You can change the log in either of the following ways:
• Setting the log level in the server initialization file
• Using the WebSphere administration console

Related tasks:
“Restarting the server” on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
**Editing the server initialization file**

**Procedure**

To change the logging level in the server initialization file:

1. Log in to the machine running the Web GUI using a command line interface.
2. Open `webgui-home/etc/server.init` in a text editor.
3. Locate the `trace.level` property.
4. Change its value to the required minimum severity level to write to the log files.
   The available log levels, in ascending order of ascending severity, are:
   - FINEST
   - FINER
   - PROFILE
   - FINE
   - CONFIG
   - INFO
   - WARNING
   - SEVERE
5. Save the file.

**Using the WebSphere administration console**

**Procedure**

You can also use the WebSphere administration console. Use this method when diagnosing an issue with the help of IBM Technical Support. To set the logging level using the WebSphere administration console:

1. Log in to the Web GUI as an administrative user.
2. Click **Settings** > **WebSphere Admin Console**.
3. On the WebSphere Admin Console page, click **Launch WebSphere Admin Console**.
   The console opens in a new browser window.
4. Click **Troubleshooting > Logs and Trace**.
5. In the Logging and Tracing page, click the name of the Tivoli Integrated Portal (for example, server1).
6. Click **Change Log Detail Levels** and click the **Runtime** tab.
7. Expand the tree of components under **All Components**, expand the tree under `com.ibm.tivoli.*` and then the tree under `com.ibm.tivoli.ncw.*`.
8. For each of the elements that technical support have advised you to change the log level:
   a. Click the name of the element.
   b. Click **Message and Trace Levels** and choose the required minimum severity level to write to the log files.
9. Click **OK** and close the WebSphere administration console window.
Generating performance logs

A performance log can help to identify bottlenecks in your system configuration. Use these procedures to create a performance log if required.

About this task

You can generate a performance log in either of the following ways:

- Setting the trace level in the server initialization file
- Using the WebSphere administration console

Related tasks:

“Setting the log level” on page 143

The log level determines the amount of detail that the Web GUI writes to the log files. As supplied, the product logs all events of the Information severity and above. Use these procedures to change the level if required.

Editing the server initialization file

Procedure

Follow the instructions in “Editing the server initialization file” on page 144 in “Setting the log level” on page 143 to set `trace.level` to PROFILE.

Using the WebSphere administration console

Procedure

Follow the instructions in “Using the WebSphere administration console” on page 144 in “Setting the log level” on page 143 to set the log level to FINER.

Setting a trace

Enable a trace of the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server when you want to keep a record of activity.

Before you begin

The portal has a Troubleshooting Logs and Trace option for enabling a trace.

About this task

Follow these steps to set a trace that will record the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server actions in a log file: `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1/trace.log`.

Procedure

1. Log in to the Tivoli Integrated Portal Web GUI.
2. In the navigation pane, click **Settings > Websphere Admin Console** and click **Launch Websphere Admin Console**.
3. In the WebSphere Application Server administrative console, select **Troubleshooting > Logs and traces**.
4. Select the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server name (such as `server1`) in the Logging and Tracing portlet.
5. In the **Configuration** tab, click **Change Log Detail Levels**.
7. Select a log level (such as **All Messages and Traces**) and click **OK** or **Apply**.
8. When prompted to save the configuration, click **Save**.
9. Restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server:
   a. In the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin` directory, depending on your operating system, enter one of the following commands:
      - **Windows**
        ```
        stopServer.bat server1
        ```
      - **UNIX**
        ```
        stopServer.sh server1
        ```
      **Note:** On UNIX and Linux systems, you are prompted to provide an administrator username and password.
   b. In the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin` directory, depending on your operating system, enter one of the following commands:
      - **Windows**
        ```
        startServer.bat server1
        ```
      - **UNIX**
        ```
        startServer.sh server1
        ```

**Results**

After the server has been stopped and restarted, trace entries are saved to the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1/trace.log` file.

**Auditing the usage of objects**

How to set up auditing of objects such as maps, filters, and views to determine which are being used.

**Procedure**

To enable auditing of objects in the Web GUI:

1. Navigate to the following directory:
   ```
   tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/nodes/TIPNode/servers/server1
   ```
2. Edit `server1.xml`
3. Locate the `<services> element with an `xmi:type` attribute of `loggingservice.http:HTTPAccessLoggingService`. For example:
   ```xml
   <services xmi:type="loggingservice.http:HTTPAccessLoggingService"
            xmi:id="HTTPAccessLoggingService_1183077764084"
            enable="false" enableErrorLogging="true"
            enableAccessLogging="true">
      <errorLog xmi:id="LogFile_1183077764084"
                filePath="${SERVER_LOG_ROOT}/http_error.log"
                maximumSize="500"/>
      <accessLog xmi:id="LogFile_1183077764085"
                 filePath="${SERVER_LOG_ROOT}/http_access.log"
                 maximumSize="500"/>
   </services>
   ```
4. Change the value of the `enable` attribute of the `<services>` element to `true`.
5. Add the following attributes to the `<services>` element:
   ```
   errorLogLevel="DEBUG" accessLogFormat="COMBINED"
   ```
6. Locate the 4 `<transportChannels>` elements that have an `xmi:type` attribute with a value `channelservice.channels:HTTPInboundChannel`.
7. In each of these elements, set the value of the `enableLogging` attribute to `true`.
8. Save the file.
9. Restart the server.
Results

After restarting the server, page navigation is recorded in the following log files:

  http_access.log
  http_error.log

Both files are in `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1`.

Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Web GUI log files

The Web GUI has several log files providing information on various aspects of its operation, as described here.

The following table describes the Web GUI log files.

Table 16. Log files

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log file</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>webgui-home/integration/migration_tool/log/migration.log</code></td>
<td>The migration log. Contains information relating to the migration process, if you have migrated to the Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI V7.4.0 from a previous version. If any errors caused the migration to fail at any point, these are listed in the migration log file. Any files, directories, or properties that could not be migrated are also listed in the migration log file. You can set the level of detail in this log in <code>webgui-home/integration/migration_tool/etc/logging.properties</code> file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs and subdirectories</code></td>
<td>Several Tivoli Integrated Portal log files are contained in this directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/ncw/ncw.n.log</code></td>
<td>In the file name a number replaces <code>n</code>. Contains event and user monitoring information. You can set the level of detail in this log in the initialization file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/ncw/ncw.n.profile</code></td>
<td>In the file name a number replaces <code>n</code>. Contains performance metrics. You can set the level of detail in this log in the initialization file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/ncw/ncw.n.trace</code></td>
<td>In the file name a number replaces <code>n</code>. Contains trace information. You can set the level of detail in this log in the initialization file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 16. Log files (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Log file</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs and subdirectories</td>
<td>For more information about server logs, go to the IBM WebSphere® Application Server Information Center at the following Web address and search for server logs. <a href="http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wasinfo/v6r1/index.jsp">http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/wasinfo/v6r1/index.jsp</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/dci-common/OMNIbusWebGUI/dci-security.log</td>
<td>DCI Security component log file. You can set the level of detail in this log in webgui-home/etc/dci-common/security/dci-security.properties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Viewing TIPProfile logs for login errors**

In the event of a login error, review the system outage and system error logs to help determine the cause.

**About this task**

Follow these steps to open the system outage and system error logs:

**Procedure**

1. At the command line, change to the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/server1` directory.
2. Open `SystemOut.log` and `SystemErr.log` in a text editor. On Windows, for example, the command `notepad systemout.log` opens the log in Windows Notepad.
3. Review the errors.
4. If the cause and solution to your login error is not apparent, send the `SystemOut.log` and `SystemErr.log` from this directory and the `server1_exception.log` (and any other files that were modified within a few minutes of this one) from the sibling `ffdc` directory to your security administrator for further examination.

**Related tasks:**

“Viewing the application server profile” on page 2

Open the application server profile to review the port number assignments and other information.

**Editing a properties file**

Properties files describe the environment and their settings are usually predefined or added during installation. You do not need to change these files unless instructed by IBM Software Support.

**About this task**

The properties files are on the computer where the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is installed.

**Procedure**

1. Locate the `tip_home_dir/properties` directory, where `tip_home_dir` represents the installation path for the application server. For example, `C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv2` is the default installation path on Windows; `/opt/IBM/tivoli/tipv2/` is the default installation path on Linux or UNIX.
2. Open the desired properties file in a text editor.
3. Edit the file as needed, and then save and close it.
4. Stop the application server, and then restart it.

---

**Applying fix packs for the Web GUI**

Considerations to make when applying a fix pack for the Web GUI. In particular there are special considerations when applying a fix pack in a load balancing environment.

**About this task**

Each fix pack for the Web GUI includes a *Readme* file that contains detailed installation instructions. The following information, however, provides a general overview of the installation process.

**Important:** Always use the instructions in the *Readme* file to apply a fix pack. There may be additional steps required in addition to the general advice given here.

**Stand-alone system**

**Procedure**

On a stand-alone installation of the Web GUI, the general procedure for applying a fix pack is:

1. Stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal and its associated services.
2. Extract the installation files from the archive.
3. Install the fix pack in silent mode.
4. Restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal.

**Load balancing environment**

**Procedure**

In a load balancing environment a number of co-operating instances of the Web GUI form a cluster. In such and environment, the general procedure for applying a fix pack is:

1. Remove each node from the cluster and restart them as stand-alone systems.
2. On each node in turn, follow the procedure for a stand-alone system to apply the fix pack.
3. Recreate the cluster and each node in turn.
   
   When doing this you do not need to recreate or edit any of the configuration files or the database. Instead:
   
   a. On one node run the commands to set up the cluster.
   b. On all other nodes run the commands to join the cluster.
   c. Prepare the HTTP server for load balancing.
   d. Start Web GUI load balancing operations on each node.
MustGather information for opening Problem Management Reports

IBM Software Support requires specific information to help you diagnose and resolve problems. This information is called MustGather information. It can be log files, operating system information and descriptions of the behavior that your environment exhibits. The MustGather information that is required for the Web GUI is published in a technote.

If you need to open a Problem Management Report (PMR), refer to https://www-304.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21631338. MustGather information consists of general information, which is required for all PMRs, and problem-specific information. Refer to the section that describes your problem to find out which problems-specific information is needed.

Troubleshooting user authentication

This information lists common problems that you might encounter when configuring the user authentication for the Web GUI, either through an LDAP directory, an ObjectServer, or the Tivoli Integrated Portal file-based repository. It contains likely solutions to these problems and references other useful sources of information.

Harmless authentication messages

Certain sign-on messages are routine and might not indicate that a problem has occurred.

For installations that have been configured to use the Tivoli Integrated Portal authentication service, it is possible that an authentication client receives CTGES1504E and CTGES1505E messages. These messages are generated when an unused single sign-on LTPA token is discarded, and might be insignificant.

An authentication client attempts to use all single sign-on tokens provided to it when authenticating to an authentication service. Some of these tokens might not apply to the configured authentication service, causing CTGES1504E and CTGES1505E messages to be generated on the client and CTGES1089E on the server. When not accompanied by other CTGES0008E authentication client errors, these messages indicate only that a particular single sign-on token was discarded.

Troubleshooting LDAP user repositories

If you defined an LDAP directory as a user repository in the realm and you experience problems, this information lists some common problems and likely solutions.

The following information lists common best practices for using an LDAP directory as your Web GUI user repository. Ensure that the following information is true of your environment before you read the troubleshooting topics.

• All repositories that are defined in the realm need to be available and running. If one repository becomes unavailable, all other repositories are affected. If this problem occurs, you cannot log in, even if your user is in a repository that is still available. To solve this problem, use WebSphere Application Server commands to allow access when all repositories are available, or the federated repositories will not function properly. For more information, see http://www-01.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg1PK78677 and
All user IDs need to be unique across all repositories in the realm. Ensure that no user IDs are duplicated: if duplicates exist, delete them.

If users cannot perform functions that write to the ObjectServer, the user synchronization function might not be enabled.

If user synchronization is enabled, no ObjectServers can be defined as repositories in the realm.

Ensure that users and groups are configured in the Websphere administrative console.

Ensure that the maxSearchResults attribute in the *wimconfig.xml* file is set to a suitable value. For more information, see “No LDAP groups available” on page 158.


**Logging into the Web GUI after the LDAP server has failed**

If the Web GUI is configured to authenticate against an LDAP server, no user can log into the Web GUI if the LDAP server fails.

This problem also affects the default tipadmin user. To enable access to the Web GUI installation for the tipadmin user if the LDAP server fails:

1. Change to the `/opt/IBM/tip_v2/profiles/TIPProfile/bin` directory and start the `wsadmin` utility.
2. Use the `updateIdMgrRealm` command to change the `allowOperationIfReposDown` parameter from `false` to `true`, on the defaultWIMFileBasedRealm realm:
   ```shell
   $AdminTask updateIdMgrRealm {-name defaultWIMFileBasedRealm -allowOperationIfReposDown true}
   ```

You can now log into the Web GUI by using the tipadmin user and password.

Unable to log in
An LDAP directory is defined as a repository in the realm but the LDAP users cannot log in to the Web GUI.

Cause
A value might be missing from the Distinguished name of a base entry in this repository field for the LDAP directory in the realm. The value of this field corresponds to the nameInRepository attribute in the wimconfig.xml configuration file.

Resolution
1. Open the $TIPHOME/profiles/TIPProfile/config/cells/TIPCell/wim/config/wimconfig.xml file.
2. In this file, search for the nameInRepository attribute and check whether the value of the attribute is missing, as in the following example:
<config:baseEntries name="o=example" nameInRepository=""/>
3. Add a value to the nameInRepository attribute. For example, for a domain called “example.com” where the search base is the root domain, change the attribute to look like the following example:
<config:repositories xsi:type="config:LdapRepositoryType"
   adapterClassName="com.ibm.ws.wim.adapter.ldap.LdapAdapter"
   id="example" isExtIdUnique="true" supportAsyncMode="false"
   supportExternalName="false" supportPageing="false" supportSorting="false"
   supportTransactions="false" certificateFilter="" certificateMapMode="exactdn"
   ldapServerType="AD2003" translateRDN="false">
   <config:baseEntries name="o=example" nameInRepository="DC=example,DC=com"/>
4. Save the file and restart the server.

If the stopServer command fails, terminate the underlying process and reissue the command.

Related tasks:
[“Restarting the server” on page 1]

Login failed message
An LDAP directory is defined as a repository in the realm, but certain LDAP users cannot log in.

Affected users receive the following error message:
Login failed. Check the user ID and password and try again

Cause
In the LDAP directory, the affected users do not have sufficient privileges to look up all the groups in the directory. If this is the cause of the problem, the following entries are written to the SystemOut.log file.

com.ibm.websphere.security. CustomRegistryException
com.ibm.ws.security.auth.ContextManagerImpl. runAs 4161
   FormLoginServlet.formLogin 308

com.ibm.websphere.security. CustomRegistryException
com.ibm.ws.security.registry.UserRegistryImpl.createCredential 818
Resolution

Work with your LDAP administrator to ensure that the affected LDAP users have sufficient privileges to look up all the groups in the LDAP directory.

Users in LDAP groups cannot use the Active Event List

If you use the Manage Groups page to assign a role to an LDAP group that authorizes the group members to use the AEL, for example ncw_admin or ncw_user, the users in that group cannot use the AEL. However, if you assign one or both of these roles to the individual users, they can use the AEL.

Cause

The wimconfig.xml configuration file contains an invalid line.

Resolution

Edit the wimconfig.xml file as follows:

1. Locate the following section:
   
   ```xml
   <config:groupConfiguration>
     <config:memberAttributes dummyMember="uid=dummy" name="member"
      objectClass="groupOfNames" scope="direct"/>
     <config:membershipAttribute name="member" scope="direct"/>
   </config:groupConfiguration>
   ```

2. Delete the following line from this section:
   
   ```xml
   <config:membershipAttribute name="member" scope="direct"/>
   ```

   The section now reads as follows:
   
   ```xml
   <config:groupConfiguration>
     <config:memberAttributes dummyMember="uid=dummy" name="member"
      objectClass="groupOfNames" scope="direct"/>
   </config:groupConfiguration>
   ```

3. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
Cannot search for LDAP users
On the Manager Users page, you cannot search for individual users that originate from an LDAP directory. However, you can search for user groups from the LDAP directory, and see the users that are members of the groups.

Cause

In the LDAP directory, the field that you use to populate the Login properties field in the repository might contain NULL values, or non-unique values. NULL values and non-unique values are not permitted.

Resolution

Contact your LDAP administrator and verify that the field contains no NULL values, and that all values are unique. If the field contains NULL values, or values that are not unique, you need to use a different field to populate the Login properties field.

For example, if you specify cn as the login property and your LDAP administrator confirms that this field contains NULL values, you need to use a different field, that does not contain NULL values, as the login property.

Cannot log in after the LDAP bind password is changed
If the bind password of the LDAP directory is changed, no user is able to log in, even the tipadmin user. This restriction is due to the design of the underlying IBM WebSphere Application Server. The application server expects all user repositories that are in the federated repository to be running so that any user in any repository can be authenticated. To resolve this problem, change the LDAP bind password in the federated repository to match the password in the LDAP directory.

1. Change to tip_home_dir/bin and run the wsadmin command-line utility with the argument -conntype NONE.
2. At the prompt, run the updateIdMgrLDAPBindInfo command to update the LDAP password under the federated repository.
   $AdminTask updateIdMgrLDAPBindInfo -id repositoryId -bindPassword bindpassword -bindDN bindDN
   
   Where repositoryId is the unique ID of the LDAP directory in the federated repository, bindpassword is the binding password of the LDAP directory, and bindDN is the binding distinguished name.
3. Run the following command to save the change to the configuration and then log out of wsadmin.
   $AdminConfig save
4. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

"Restarting the server" on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
No LDAP users in duplicate Web GUI
After you configure a Web GUI instance to be a duplicate of another, working instance of the Web GUI, with the identical LDAP configuration, no LDAP users are displayed in the duplicate.

When you use the Manager Users page to search for users, no LDAP users are available. The tipadmin user, and any other users that are in the Tivoli Integrated Portal file-based repository are available on the Manager Users page and can log in.

The most likely cause of this problem is that you did not restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal after you added the LDAP configuration to the duplicate Web GUI. Restart the server for the configuration to take effect.

Related tasks:
“Restarting the server” on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Cannot search for LDAP users and groups
Users and groups that originate from an LDAP directory are not shown in the realm when you search on the Manage Users page or the Manage Groups page.

The following exception is written to the SystemOut.log log file:
com.ibm.ws.wim.adapter.ldap.LdapConnection search(String, String, Object[], SearchControls)CWWIM4520E The 'javax.naming.NameNotFoundException: 
[LDAP: error code 32 - 0000208D:NameErr: DSID-031001A8, problem 2001 (NO_OBJECT), data 0, best match of: '

Cause
In the realm, the configuration of the repository for the LDAP directory is lacking the properties for the base search entry for the repository in the realm and in the LDAP directory.

Resolution
1. From your LDAP administrator, obtain the base search entry.
2. In Tivoli Integrated Portal, click Settings > Websphere Administrative Console > Security > Global Security > Federated repositories. Click the link under Base entry that corresponds to the LDAP directory.
3. Ensure that the following fields contain valid entries:

   **Distinguished name of a base entry that uniquely identifies this set of entries in the realm**
   Type the root entry for the LDAP directory in the realm.

   **Distinguished name of a base entry in this repository**
   Type the root of the subtree in the LDAP directory for the objects that you want to be added to the repository in the realm. For example, if you want all users in the dc=ibm,dc=com subtree to be added to the repository, type dc=ibm,cd=com.

4. Save your changes and restart the server.
Several tasks can be performed in this section:

**Error message:** Class 'Entity' does not have a feature named 'uid' displayed when searching for users or group

A Class 'Entity' does not have a feature named 'uid' is displayed in Tivoli integrated Portal.

This error occurs in the following instances:

- When you search for LDAP users or groups on the Manage Users page or the Manage Groups page. No users are identified by the search.
- When you add filters to an LDAP repository in the realm.

You are searching for users or groups that originate from an LDAP directory that was added as a repository to the realm. The users are in the LDAP subtree that was defined in the repository.

**Cause**

The LDAP entity types that are defined for the repository are invalid.

**Resolution**

1. From your LDAP administrator, obtain the values for the search base, objects, and search filter that are supported by the type of LDAP directory that is defined in the realm. For example IBM Tivoli Directory Server or Microsoft Active Directory.

2. In Tivoli Integrated Portal, click Settings > Websphere Administrative Console > Security > Global Security. Click the Configure button and then click the link under Repository Identifier that corresponds to your LDAP directory. Then click LDAP entity types.

3. For the Group entity type, review the values the following fields. Ensure the values that are entered in these fields are identical to the values that you obtained from your LDAP administrator, and that there are no typos or mistakes in the syntax.
   - Object classes
   - Search bases
   - Search filter

4. Repeat the previous step for the PersonAccount entity type and the OrgContainer entity type.

5. Restart the server.

**Related tasks:**

"Restarting the server" on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
No users or groups available for setting preferences
When you attempt to set user preferences, no LDAP users are available for selection.

Cause
The search base, which is used to search the LDAP directory for users and groups, is left blank. When the LDAP directory is searched, too many LDAP objects are returned. Narrow the search base.

Resolution
1. Edit the federated repository, selecting the LDAP directory.
2. In the Configuration window, click LDAP entity types, at the bottom of the window.
4. In the Search base field, type a search base that narrows the range of objects searched. See the samples below.
5. Repeat these steps for the PersonAccount entity type.

Sample search bases
The following example shows a search base that narrows the objects searched to users in the organizational unit (OU) webtopuser, in the example.com domain.
OU=webtopuser,OU=users,DC=example,DC=com

The following example shows a search base that narrows the objects searched to users in two OUs in the example.com domain: webtopuser and webtopadmin. In the Search base field, use a semicolon (;) to separate the OUs.
OU=webtopuser,OU=users,DC=example,DC=com;OU=webtopadmin,OU=users,DC=example,DC=com

No LDAP users on the Manage Users page
You cannot find any LDAP users by using the Manage Users page. The LDAP directory was previously defined for a different instance of the Web GUI and works, so you know the problem is not caused by the LDAP directory or the repository in the realm. You can still log in as the tipadmin user, or any LDAP user.

Cause
The server was not restarted after the LDAP repository was defined.

Resolution
Restart the server.

Related tasks:
“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
No LDAP groups available
No groups are present in the Manage Groups page. An LDAP directory is defined as a repository in the realm. Groups are defined in the search base for the repository.

Cause
The maximum number of search results, as defined in the wimconfig.xml configuration file, is too small. This number is controlled by the maxSearchResults attribute. The default value for this attribute is 4,500.

Resolution
1. Edit the wimconfig.xml file, by changing the maxSearchResults attribute to a value greater than 50,000, as shown in the following example:
   `<config:configurationProvider maxPagingResults="500" maxSearchResults="500000" maxTotalPagingResults="1000" pagedCacheTimeOut="900" pagingEntityObject="true" searchTimeOut="600000">`
2. Restart the server.

Related tasks:
"Restarting the server" on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

No permissions to run tools from the Active Event List
When you attempt to run tools from the Active Event List (AEL), an error is displayed that states that you do not have permission. Your user is defined in the LDAP directory, the correct roles are assigned, and the user is synchronized with the ObjectServer.

Cause
The login properties of the bind account of the LDAP directory are defined in the incorrect order. These properties are as follows:
- cn: Used to verify the LDAP directory users
- uid: Used to synchronize the LDAP directory users with the ObjectServer

In the configuration of the bind account, the uid property needs to precede the cn property.

Resolution
2. Select Federated repositories and click Configure.
3. Select the LDAP repository.
4. In the Login properties field, ensure that the properties are entered as follows:
   `uid;cn`
5. Restart the server.

Related tasks:
"Restarting the server" on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
Failed to execute tool error in the Active Event List

In the Active Event List (AEL) you attempt to acknowledge events, add journal entries, assign an event to another user, or delete an event, a failed to execute tool error message is displayed.

The webtop.log log file might contain an error message, stating that the user concerned does not exist, even though you have verified the existence of the user in the ObjectServer and the Web GUI.

Cause

The user that is attempting to run the tool does not have write-access to the ObjectServer.

Resolution

This problem might have one of several different causes. To resolve the problem, perform all the following resolution tasks:

• Ensure that the webgui_home_dir/etc/dci-common/security/dci-security.properties file contains the following entries:
  – login.property:uid
  – group.property:cn
  If these entries are not present, add them and then restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.
• Ensure that the ObjectServer user and the LDAP user have identical user names. The ObjectServer user name needs to be identical to the distinguished name of the user in the LDAP directory. The user names are case-sensitive.
• Ensure that the ObjectServer user is assigned to the Normal group. This group gives the permissions that are needed to modify events.
• Ensure that the user is enabled. If the user is not used to log in to the ObjectServer no password is required. When a user runs SQL tools from the AEL, the user is not authenticated against the ObjectServer, only the roles are checked.

Users not synchronized to the ObjectServer

LDAP users that are assigned the ncw_admin role or the ncw_role are not synchronized to the ObjectServer, although the user synchronization functionality is enabled.

Cause

The wimconfig.xml configuration file contains an invalid line.

Resolution

Edit the wimconfig.xml file as follows:

1. Locate the following section:

   <config:groupConfiguration>
   
   <config:memberAttributes dummyMember="uid=dummy" name="member"
   objectClass="groupOfNames" scope="direct"/>
   
   <config:membershipAttribute name="member" scope="direct"/>
   
   </config:groupConfiguration>

2. Delete the following line from this section:

   <config:membershipAttribute name="member" scope="direct"/>
The section now reads as follows:

```xml
<config:groupConfiguration>
  <config:memberAttributes dummyMember="uid=dummy" name="member"
    objectClass="groupOfNames" scope="direct"/>
</config:groupConfiguration>
```

3. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

- "Restarting the server" on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

**Cannot log in as the tipadmin user, or start or stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal server**

After you define an ObjectServer in the federated repository, you can no longer log in to Tivoli Integrated Portal as the tipadmin user. Additionally, an error is displayed on the command-line interface if you attempt to run the `stopServer` or `startServer` commands.

Attempts to stop or start the server result in the following error:

```
00000000 AdminTool E ADMU0111E: Program exiting with error: java.lang.RuntimeException: ADMU0022E: Access is denied for the stop operation on Server MBean because of insufficient or empty credentials.
```

Provided that you could log in as the tipadmin user before you added the ObjectServer to the realm, the most likely cause of this error is duplicate tipadmin users in the Tivoli Integrated Portal file-based repository and in the ObjectServer. The file-based repository has a tipadmin user that was used previously to authenticate with the ObjectServer. The ObjectServer that was added also has a tipadmin user, and the application server is attempting to use that user to authenticate with the ObjectServer, instead of the file-based tipadmin user.

To resolve this problem:

1. Use the `nco_sql` command to drop the tipadmin user from the ObjectServer.
2. Use a `kill` command to manually stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal process.
3. Restart Tivoli Integrated Portal by using the `startServer` command.

**Tivoli Integrated Portal cannot use the ObjectServer for user authentication**

After you put the application server into SP800-131a mode, Tivoli Integrated Portal cannot connect to the ObjectServer to authenticate users. This problem occurs in both transition mode and strict mode.

The following error is written to the `SystemError.log` file.

```
NCOS VMM plug-in could not connect to the primary ObjectServer
```

If this problem occurs, check the SSL setting in the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/com.sybase.jdbc3.SybDriver.props` file. The SSL settings can be reset when the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) component starts and set to `false`, which means that SSL is not used. If this is the case, reedit the file; it is not reset again by the VMM component.
No user role assigned
Users should have the minimum required product level roles assigned or they might not see the contents of their default product pages after logging in.

Troubleshooting security problems
This information lists common problems that you might encounter when configuring the security settings for the Web GUI. This information covers problems encountered with SSL and TLS encryption, and the FIPS 140-2 and NIST SP800-131a security standards.

Problems loading applets after TLS is enabled
After you enable TLS 1.0 or 1.2 and restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server, problems occur when you open Web GUI pages that contain an applet, for example, the Active Event List.

The applet can fail to load, or the applet is able to load by using the cached JAR files but cannot connect to the server, which results in an error on the client that is similar to the following sample.

[ERROR] HttpReply.setFromStream() Remote host closed connection during handshake

If this error occurs, TLS 1.0 or 1.2 is not enabled in the Java plug-in. Use the Java control panel to enable the required version of TLS to make the applet work.

Cannot log into Tivoli Integrated Portal on Internet Explorer 9 with TLS support
After you enable Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.0 or 1.2, you cannot log in to Tivoli Integrated Portal on Internet Explorer 9.

An error message is displayed in the browser that is similar to the following sample.

Internet Explorer cannot display the webpage

To resolve this problem, ensure that the TLS protocols are enabled in the Internet Explorer settings. Ensure that all the relevant SSL and TLS options are selected and try to log in again.

stopServer command fails after change to SSL configuration
After you change the secure mode or the SSL type in the administrative console, the next time you run the stopServer command, it hangs and then fails.

On the command-line interface, an error message is displayed that is similar to the following sample.

ADMU0509I: The server "server1" cannot be reached. It appears to be stopped.

In the stopServer.log file, a SOAP connection error is recorded, which is similar to the following sample.

This error occurs because the application server treats administrative tools such as the `stopServer` command as clients. After the change to the secure mode or SSL configuration, the client needs to know how to connect to the application server.

To solve this problem, edit the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/properties/ssl.client.props` file as follows, depending on the configuration of the application server. After you make the changes, rerun the `stopServer` command and then restart. If the command still fills, use a `kill` command to stop the underlying Tivoli Integrated Portal process and then attempt to restart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secure mode or SSL configuration</th>
<th>Parameters and their values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FIPS 140-2</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.security.useFIPS=true</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP800-131a transition mode</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.security.useFIPS=true</code> <code>com.ibm.websphere.security.FIPSLevel=transition</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP800-131a strict mode</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.security.useFIPS=true</code> <code>com.ibm.websphere.security.FIPSLevel=SP800-131</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.ssl.protocol=SSL_TLS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS 1.0</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.ssl.protocol=SSL_TLS</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLS 1.2</td>
<td><code>com.ibm.ssl.protocol=TLSv1.2</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related tasks:

“[Restarting the server](#)” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

**Troubleshooting problems with SP800-131a encryption**

This information contains problems that you might encounter when you configure NIST SP800-131a levels of encryption.

**Tivoli Integrated Portal cannot use the ObjectServer for user authentication**

After you put the application server into SP800-131a mode, Tivoli Integrated Portal cannot connect to the ObjectServer to authenticate users. This problem occurs in both transition mode and strict mode.

The following error is written to the `SystemError.log` file.

NCOS VMM plug-in could not connect to the primary ObjectServer

If this problem occurs, check the SSL setting in the `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/com.sybase.jdbc3.SybDriver.props` file. The SSL settings can be reset when the Virtual Member Manager (VMM) component starts and set to `false`, which means that SSL is not used. If this is the case, reedit the file; it is not reset again by the VMM component.
Certificate warning is displayed after certificate conversion

After you convert the server certificates with SP800-131a levels of encryption, a Java warning message is displayed the next time you stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal server. The warning message asks if you want the new certificate to be added to the truststore of the client.

This warning is to be expected. The application server treats administration tools, such as the `stopServer` command, as clients, so the tools need to make a secure connection to the server. For this reason, the application server signer certificate needs to be in the truststore of the client.

Click `y` in response to this message to add the updated certificate to the truststore.

SSL handshake error on the command-line interface after certificate conversion

After you convert the server certificates with SP800-131a levels of encryption, a `CWPKI022E: SSL HANDSHAKE FAILURE` error is displayed on the command-line interface the next time you stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.

This error is the same as is described in the topic "Certificate warning is displayed after certificate conversion." In this case the application server is unable to display a Java dialog to prompt you to accept the signer certificate. If the `CWPKI022E: SSL HANDSHAKE FAILURE` error is displayed, you can use the `retrieveSigners` command, which is included in the application server, to copy the signer certificate to the truststore. The command is at `tip_home_dir/bin`.

Related reference:

- `retrieveSigner command reference`

Cannot connect to the ObjectServer with TLS 1.2

After TLS 1.2 is enabled in the ObjectServer and the `server.init` file is updated with the `webtop.fips.level` set to `sp800-131`, the Web GUI log records errors that it is unable to connect to the ObjectServer.

The most likely cause of this problem is that the application server is not set to SP800-131a mode (either transition mode or strict mode). If the server is accidentally set to FIPS 140-2 mode, or left in FIPS 140-2 mode, TLS 1.2 can be enabled but does not work because the FIPS provider does not support TLS 1.2. SP800-131a mode is needed for the JSSE2 provider to be used and for the system properties to be set that enforce NIST compliance in the provider.

Troubleshooting connections to the ObjectServer

This information contains common problems that you might encounter with the event feed connection to the ObjectServer. These problems might occur on one of the event display portlets, for example the Active Event List or Event Dashboard, and can result in slow performance.
Slow network response

Performance issues can cause an unresponsive script message to display after login.

If, immediately after logging in, you get a message about an unresponsive script and you are asked whether to continue or cancel opening the Web page, click Continue. After a short time, the welcome page for the console is displayed.

Such messages can indicate a slow network link between your computer and the application server. Ping the server computer to see the round trip response time. Use response times of 40 ms or better.

Try using a remote desktop connection to a computer that has a better response time with the application server and logging in from there.

Consider using a caching HTTP proxy to improve speed and reduce network traffic.

Unresponsive Active Event List

The Active Event List (AEL) becomes unresponsive, or some AEL functions, for example tools, fail to run. If this problem occurs, contact the system administrator to find out whether a Web GUI Application Programming Interface (WAAPI) script is running.

If a WAAPI script is running at the time you experience an unresponsive AEL, wait for the script to finish running. After the script finishes, the AEL is restored and works normally.

AEL fails to start and displays message W0025

If the Active Event List (AEL) fails to start and the W0025 message is displayed, there are a number checks that can be made in order to resolve the problem. These checks are presented in the following topic.

About this task

If there is a problem with the connection to the ObjectServer or an incorrect JVM or browser installed, the AEL may fail to start and the following message is displayed:

W0025 The event list is unavailable. Contact your administrator.

Procedure

Should that message appear on a user’s web browser, carry out the following checks:
1. Make sure that the ObjectServer is running.
   If not, start it and ask the user to try again.
2. Make sure that user’s computer can connect to the ObjectServer.
3. Make sure that the user’s computer has one of the supported web browsers.
4. Make sure that the latest support version of the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is installed on the user’s computer and that it is appropriate for the web browser in use.
Event Dashboard unable to get data from server

For certain monitor boxes the Event Dashboard displays the error message: Unable to get data from the server. In addition, the Event Dashboard fails to display some filters correctly.

About this task

The Event Dashboard displays the following error message for certain monitor boxes:

Unable to get data from the server

Clicking on one of those monitor boxes causes the following error message to appear:

The event list is unavailable

However, the default Active Event List (AEL) can successfully display events.

This problem arises because the Event Dashboard fails to display some filters correctly. This is due to a mismatch between the data source name provided for these filters and the data source names defined in `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml`.

Procedure

1. Carry out one of the following actions to correct this mismatch
   - Use the Filter Builder to correct the name in the relevant filters.
   - Edit `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` to use the correct data source name.
2. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

- Setting up filters for event data on page 252
  Use the Filter Builder to apply filters to an event list or Event Dashboard portlet. Administrators and read-write users can create and edit filters.
- Restarting the server on page 1
  After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

The connection to the ObjectServer is lost or the AEL issues a timeout

If the connection to the ObjectServer persistently is lost or the AEL issues a timeout, adjust the query timeout setting for the datasource associated with the ObjectServer.

Procedure

1. Edit `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml`.
2. Locate the `<ncwConnectionParameters>` element for the appropriate data source, and within that element, locate the `<ncwQueryTimeout>` element.
3. Increase the value of the `baseTime` attribute to increase the period of the timeout.
4. Restart the server.
5. If the problem persists, repeat this procedure to increase the timeout further.
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

To change the configurations that control how the Web GUI receives events from data sources, modify the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` configuration file that is in `webgui-home/etc/datasources`. The file structure must conform to the content of the Web GUI configuration Document Type Definition (DTD). The elements and attributes that are in the DTD are described here.

---

**Troubleshooting event displays on maps**

Use this information to help you troubleshoot problems with event displays on Web GUI maps.

**Maps are slow to display severity colors**

Filters in maps are slow to show severity colors. This may be accompanied by high CPU usage on the Web GUI server.

If the performance of the Web GUI is otherwise satisfactory, there are three likely causes of this condition:

- **Frequency of map refresh**
- **Result caching**
- **Map complexity**

**Frequency of map refresh**

The frequency that a map refreshes is defined in two ways:

- The `maplet.refresh` property in the `server.init` file. This sets a global refresh rate for the system.
- The portlet preferences for individual maps.

In either case, make sure that the refresh frequency is no lower than 10 seconds. For complex maps, use a higher value.

**Result caching**

Use the `<result-cache>` element in the data source configuration file for data sources that provide the map with data. This can help to reduce the load on the data sources.

**Map complexity**

The complexity of a map is the most likely cause of this condition. Rather than use a small number of maps that contain many filters, limit the number of filters on a map to no more than 30 to 40. Then drill down from these filters to further maps.
Changing the height setting of a Map portlet has no effect

Changing the height of a map portlet using the **Height** box or the **Use Customizer** check box in the portlet preferences has no effect. The map always renders to the same size.

The **Height** and **Use Customizer** do not override the height of the Map portlet. That is controlled by the height settings available in the Map Editor. To set the height of a map, set the **Use Customizer** portlet preference, and configure the height of the map in the Map Editor.

**Related tasks:**

- “Setting preferences for the Map portlet” on page 190
  To customize the appearance and setup of the Map portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

- “Customizing maps” on page 321
  After you have created your map, you can customize it by added map objects to the map, and editing the properties of the map objects.

The Event Viewer portlet page is blank

The Event Viewer portlet opens but the page is blank and you are unable to customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet.

**Cause**

This problem is caused because a user, other than the user that installed the Tivoli Integrated Portal server, attempted to stop and then restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server. As a result, several additional microbroker files, that are associated with this user, have been created in the `$TIPHOME/profiles/TIPProfile/temp/microbroker` directory. The Event Viewer then fails to load when the Tivoli Integrated Portal server is restarted by the original user.

**Resolution**

1. Stop the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.
2. Remove the microbroker files, that belong to the unspecified user, from the following directory: `$TIPHOME/profiles/TIPProfile/temp/microbroker`
Related tasks:

“Restarting the server” on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.
Chapter 7. Performance tuning tips for the Web GUI

Use this information to troubleshoot performance in the Web GUI.

Increasing JVM memory on the Web GUI server

To improve Web GUI performance, you can increase the amount of memory on the server.

About this task

To increase (or decrease) the amount of memory available to the Java Virtual Machine (JVM), carry out the following steps:

Procedure

1. Manually stop the application server.
2. Change to the \texttt{tip\_home\_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin} directory.
3. Use the \texttt{wsadmin} command to increase the heap size for the JVM, as follows:
   \texttt{wsadmin.sh -lang jython -conntype NONE}
4. At the \texttt{wsadmin>} prompt, issue the following commands, where \texttt{xxx} is the new heap size value, in megabytes.
   \begin{verbatim}
   jvm=AdminConfig.list("JavaVirtualMachine")
   AdminConfig.modify(jvm, '[initialHeapSize xxx]')
   AdminConfig.modify(jvm, '[maximumHeapSize xxx]')
   AdminConfig.save()
   exit
   \end{verbatim}
5. Restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server. The changes take effect when the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server is restarted.

Attention: If you attempt to start the Tivoli Integrated Portal Server with a maximum heap size that is too large, error messages that are similar to the following are generated in the \texttt{tip\_home\_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/}
\texttt{server1/native stderr.log} file:

\begin{verbatim}
JVMJ9GC019E -Xms too large for -Xmx
JVMJ9VM015W Initialization error for library j9gc23(2): Failed to initialize
Could not create the Java virtual machine.
\end{verbatim}

Increasing memory on Web GUI client Java Virtual Machines

To increase event volumes in the Active Event List (AEL), or if a \texttt{java.lang.OutOfMemoryError} error occurs on the AEL, modify the heap sizes of the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) on the Web GUI client.

About this task

A \texttt{java.lang.OutOfMemoryError} error might occur during failover from the primary ObjectServer to the backup ObjectServer. This error might also occur if, depending on the configuration of your views, an AEL is running more than 20,000 events. If this error occurs, the following message is displayed in the AEL:

\begin{verbatim}
Entity Unavailable
\end{verbatim}
By increasing the initial and maximum heap sizes, you can solve this error.

To increase heap sizes:

**Procedure**
1. On the Web GUI client, open the Control Panel for the Java Plug-In.
2. Click *Advanced*.
3. In the field under *Java Runtime Parameters*, modify the heap sizes. For example:
   - `-Xms64m -Xmx128m`
4. Click *Apply* and close the Control Panel.
5. Log out of the Web GUI and log back in.

**What to do next**
Verify that the error no longer occurs. If the error persists then increase the heap size further, for example to `-Xms256m -Xmx512m`

**Performance tuning**
To improve the throughput of events from a data source to the Web GUI, or to distribute the load between the ObjectServer and the Web GUI server, you can adjust several configuration settings.

**Important:** Several factors, such as the availability of system memory, event load and the number of products running in your network, influence performance. Consider these factors when changing the configuration settings of the Web GUI because they might negate any performance benefits achieved by changing the Web GUI configuration.

The following parameters in the `webgui-home/etc/server.init` file can be modified to tune performance:

**ael.top-n.value**
This property limits the number of events to be displayed in any given Active Event List (AEL). Limiting this value, for example to 3000, might improve the time required to load or refresh an AEL.

**aelview.queries.enabled**
This property enables the creation of transient AEL views, but it also increases the load on the Web GUI. If you do not use this functionality, disable this property.

**maplet.refresh**
This property controls the frequency with which Web GUI maps are refreshed. If you lower the value of this property, for example to 10, event throughput might be increased. If you increase the value of this property, for example to 30, the load on the Web GUI server might be reduced. Consider this property alongside results caching in the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` file.

The following elements in the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` file can be modified to tune performance. These elements are child elements of the `<results-cache>` element.

**<chart>**
This property controls caching for Web GUI charts. If you set the *enabled*
attribute to true, the Web GUI server caches the results of SQL queries for a configurable period of time. This reduces the load on the ObjectServer, but may increase the memory requirements of the Web GUI server, in order to store the cached data.

<eventList>
This property controls caching for event list results, that is, for the AEL, Lightweight Event List (LEL) and Table View. If you set the enabled attribute to true, the Web GUI server caches the results of SQL queries for a configurable period of time. This reduces the load on the ObjectServer, but may increase the memory requirements of the Web GUI server, in order to store the cached data.

<eventSummary>
This property controls caching for event summary results, that is, for the Event Dashboard and map pages. If you set the enabled attribute to true, the Web GUI server caches the results of SQL queries for a configurable period of time. This reduces the load on the ObjectServer, but may increase the memory requirements of the Web GUI server, in order to store the cached data.

<ncwOSConnection>
This property has two attributes that control the pool of JDBC connections to the data source: minPoolSize and maxPoolSize. By default, minPoolSize has a value of 5 and maxPoolSize a value of 10. To improve throughput, you can increase the values of these attributes. This increases the number of parallel requests to the data source and reduces the occurrence of requests being blocked through lack of an available connection.

<metric>
This property controls caching for the event metrics that provide information for the gauges on Gauges pages. If you set the enabled attribute to true, the Web GUI server caches the results of SQL queries for a configurable period of time. This reduces the load on the ObjectServer, but may increase the memory requirements of the Web GUI server, in order to store the cached data.

The following parameter in the webgui-home/etc/system/userdefaults.props file can be modified to tune performance:

**ael_user_properties_refresh_time**
This property controls the default AEL refresh frequency for new users. To improve event throughput, set the value of this property as low as possible. The lowest configurable value is 30. Individual users can override this value by setting their AEL user preferences.

**Related tasks:**
“Restricting the number of rows displayed in the Active Event List” on page 197
You can impose a limit on the number of rows returned to the Active Event List (AEL). When operators open the AEL, they see only the specified number of rows.
Chapter 8. Setting portlet preferences

You can change the settings of the portlets to customize their appearance and setup to your requirements.

**Related concepts:**

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 123
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Related tasks:**

“Creating event management tools” on page 205
You can create and administer CGI, SQL, command line and script tools to be used in the AEL. You can also configure prompts that are displayed to users in the Active Event List (AEL) when performing actions with tools.

### Setting AEL portlet preferences

To customize the appearance and setup of the AEL portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

**Before you begin**

Before a click-action can be used to operate a tool, you must have previously defined the tool.

**About this task**

To set AEL portlet preferences:

**Procedure**

1. Open an AEL portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options > Personalize.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.
3. In the General Settings and the Appearance of the AEL area, set the following portlet properties:
   - **Filter** Select a predefined filter from this list.
   - **Filter SQL** Type the SQL syntax that is used to create a transient filter. When the filter string is applied to an AEL, only the rows that meet the criteria set by the filter are displayed. If any value is typed in this field, the Filter list is disabled.
   - **View** Select the view that is applied to the AEL. When a view is applied to an AEL, only the columns that are specified by the view are displayed. The view selected from the list overrides the default view that is assigned to a filter selected from the Filter list.
   - **Transient filter name** Type the name to assign to the transient filter generated by the SQL
expression in the Filter SQL field. This name is displayed as the title for the associated AEL. If any value is typed in this field, the Filter list is disabled.

Event list single-click action
Select the action to perform when you click an event in the AEL once. You can select default actions, such as opening the information window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

Event list double-click action
Select the action to perform when you double-click an event in the AEL. You can select default actions, such as opening the information window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

Data Sources
Select one or more data sources from which the event data is retrieved.

Portlet Title
Type the label to be displayed at the top of the AEL portlet.

Use Customizer
Select this check box to use drag and drop to control the height of the AEL applet on a page that contains multiple portlets. If you clear this check box, use the Height field to specify an alternative height, in pixels.

Height
Set the height of the portlet frame in pixels.

Title Bar
Select this check box to display the title bar.

Menu Bar
Select this check box to display the menu bar.

Tool Bar
Select this check box to display the tool bar.

Filters and Views
Select this check box to display the Edit Filters button and the list of available filters, and the Edit Views button and the list of available views on the tool bar.

Summary Bar
Select this check box to display the summary bar.

Status Bar
Select this check box to display the status bar.

4. In the Appearance of the AEL area, select the check box for the bars you want to be displayed in the AEL portlet, and clear the check box for the bars you do not want to be displayed.

5. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.
Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

6. Click OK to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

Related tasks:
“Editing portlet shared settings” on page 51
Some portlets include an Edit Shared Settings mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

“Creating CGI tools” on page 214
Create a CGI tool that runs a CGI script from the AEL to process and return ObjectServer field information.

“Creating SQL tools” on page 218
Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

“Creating command-line tools” on page 221
Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

“Creating script tools” on page 224
Create script tools to pass contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to separate portlet instances or to dynamically customized page content.

Setting Chart portlet preferences
To customize the appearance and setup of the Chart portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

About this task
To set Chart portlet preferences:

Procedure
1. Open a Chart portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
   • To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options. > Edit shared settings.
3. In the General Settings area, set the following portlet properties:
   Chart Template
   Select the chart template you want to use to generate the chart image. The list contains all available Web GUI chart templates.
4. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

5. Click OK to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

Related tasks:
“Editing portlet shared settings” on page 51

Some portlets include an Edit Shared Settings mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

---

Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults

To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.

Before you begin

To edit the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard, either the ncw_dashboard_editor and the ncw_user roles, or the ncw_admin role must be assigned to your user.

Before a click-action can be used to operate a tool, you must have previously defined the tool.

About this task

In addition to setting portlet preferences, you can set the default preferences for all users (including your own).

To set portlet preferences and defaults for the Event Dashboard:
Procedure

1. Open an Event Dashboard portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options > Personalize.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.
3. To change the title of the portlet, type a new name in the Title field.
4. From the Data Sources list, select the data sources against which to run the filters associated with the monitor boxes.
   You must make sure that the data sources specified in the filter and the data sources selected in the Event Dashboard contain identical fields; if this is not the case, an error message is displayed in the affected monitor boxes instead of event data.
5. To add or remove existing filters, and therefore monitor boxes, proceed as follows:
   - To remove all monitor boxes from the portlet, click Remove All Monitor Boxes.
   - To show all global filters, filters defined for the groups you are a member of, and any user filters that you have defined on the Event Dashboard, click Show Assigned Filters.
   - To remove a single monitor box, click Remove Monitor Box next to the required monitor box.
   - To restore a previously-removed monitor box, or add a new monitor box, click Add Monitor Box and select the monitor boxes you require from the Add Monitor Boxes window. You can select from global filters, filters defined for the groups you are a member of, and any user filters that you have defined.
   You can also add system filters or any group filter.
6. To specify the number of columns in which the monitor boxes are arranged, type a number in the Columns field.
7. To add a new filter, and therefore a new monitor box to the Event Dashboard, click Edit Filters.
   The Filter Builder opens, in which you can specify the filter data and SQL query.
8. To specify the type of information displayed in the monitor boxes, and the format of that information:
   a. Click Edit Preferences.
   b. In the Preferences window, on the Monitor Boxes tab, complete the following fields:
      - Show Number of Alerts
        Displays the number of alerts that match the filter.
      - Show Highest Severity
        Displays the highest severity of the alerts that match the filter.
      - Show Lowest Severity
        Displays the lowest severity of the alerts that match the filter.
Show Highest Severity Border
Displays a border around the monitor box in the color of the highest-severity alert that matches the filter.

Show Metric
Displays the selected filter metric value.

Show Highest Color
Applicable only if you selected the Show Highest Severity option:
Displays the highest-severity alert indicator in the color of the alert, for example, in red if the highest-severity alert is critical.

Show Lowest Color
Applicable only if you selected the Show Lowest Severity option:
Displays the lowest-severity alert indicator in the color of the alert.

Font
Select the font and the font size for the text on the monitor boxes.

Distribution meter
Specify the format for the distribution meter:
- Show Lava Lamp: Displays the distribution meter as a series of horizontal bars.
- Show Histogram: Displays the distribution meter as a bar graph.
- Show None: Switches off the distribution meter.

c. Optional: To specify preferences for Active Event Lists (AELs), complete the information on the other tabs.
d. Click Close.

9. In the Dashboard Layout display area, drag the monitor boxes into the required layout.

10. To edit the filter associated with a monitor box, click Edit Filters next to the filter name of a monitor box.
The Filter Builder opens, and the data and SQL query associated with the filter are loaded.

11. To access the Event Dashboard from a mobile device, copy the URL and send it to users of mobile devices in an e-mail or SMS message. Alternatively, scan the QR Code using the camera and QR Code reader on your mobile device.

12. In the Single Click field, select the required action from the list in response to a single click on the distribution indicator of a monitor box:
- Update Event List (using wires): Sets the filter and view of the event list to match those on the monitor box.
- Open AEL in New Window: Opens a new AEL applet with the filter and default view associated with the clicked monitor box. If you select this option, you can specify what actions are executed when you click or double-click a row in the AEL. This is the default action.
- Open Event Viewer in New Window: Opens a new Event Viewer window with the filter and default view associated with the clicked monitor box.
- Script: Executes a custom JavaScript when you click the monitor box.

13. Optional: If you selected the Show New AEL Window option, specify options for the behavior of the AEL:

Event list single-click action
Select the action to perform when you click an event in the AEL once.
You can select default actions, such as opening the information
window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on
event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

Event list double-click action
Select the action to perform when you double-click an event in the
AEL. You can select default actions, such as opening the information
window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on
event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

14. Optional: If you select the Script option, type the script, using JavaScript, in
the Script field. You can use the following tokens in the script:

$\text{FILTER}$
   The name of the filter associated with the monitor box that is clicked.

$\text{FILTERCATEGORY}$
   The category of the filter associated with the monitor box.

$\text{FILTEROWNER}$
   The owner of the filter (required when $\text{FILTERCATEGORY}$ represents a
   user or group filter).

$\text{VIEW}$
   The name of the view associated with the monitor box that was clicked.

$\text{VIEWCATEGORY}$
   The category of the view associated with the monitor box that was clicked.

$\text{DATASOURCES}$
   The datasource(s) associated with the monitor box that was clicked

$\text{PORTLETNAMESPACE}$
   The portlet namespace of the Event Dashboard portlet.

For sample scripts, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Installation and
Deployment Guide.

15. Optional: If you selected the Open AEL in New Window option in step [12 on
page 178] under AEL Appearance specify the areas of the AEL that you want
to be displayed when the AEL is opened after you click the distribution
indicator of a monitor box.

16. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional
text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or
right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or
the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the
locale of your browser determines the layout.

Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the
value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both
use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text
direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the
appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled
bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the
next time you use the portlet.

17. To save and apply your settings to the portlet, click OK.
18. To restore the default portlet settings, click **Reset to Defaults**.

**Related concepts:**

- "Event Dashboard overview" on page 306
  
  Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

- “Filter Builder overview” on page 252
  
  The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.

- "Event management tools overview” on page 206
  
  From the Tool Creation page, you can create and configure the tools used by clients connected to the AEL. Tools can be either Common Gateway Interface (CGI) tools, SQL tools, command-line tools or script tools. All of these tools are run from configurable menus in the AEL and some of them can include a prompt window or a pop-up menu for users to enter or select information.

**Related tasks:**

- Chapter 9, “Customizing Active Event Lists,” on page 195
  
  You can customize the appearance and behavior of the Active Event List (AEL). You can also create tools for managing events and customize what functions are in the AEL menus.

- “Customizing the monitor boxes on Event Dashboards” on page 312
  
  Use the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard portlet to control how the monitor boxes are arranged, and which monitor boxes are displayed.

- “Creating CGI tools” on page 214
  
  Create a CGI tool that runs a CGI script from the AEL to process and return ObjectServer field information.

- “Creating SQL tools” on page 218
  
  Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

- “Creating command-line tools” on page 221
  
  Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

- “Creating script tools” on page 224
  
  Create script tools to pass contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to separate portlet instances or to dynamically customized page content.

---

**Setting Event Viewer portlet preferences**

To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet, edit the portlet preferences.

**Before you begin**

Before a click-action can be used to operate a tool, you must have previously defined the tool.

**Procedure**

To set Event Viewer preferences:

1. Open an Event Viewer portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
• To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options > Personalize.
• To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.

3. In the General Settings area, set the following preferences:

Portlet Title
Type the label to be displayed at the top of the portlet.

Show System Filters
Select this check box to display the system filters in the Filter drop-down list.

Filter
Select a pre-defined filter from this list to determine the set of events that appear in the Event Viewer. This is especially useful where there are a large number of system filters, and displaying them all in the Event Viewer would affect its performance. This option allows you to customize the system filters that are displayed. Ensure that any filter that is selected has been associated with the data source which is to be used for the Event Viewer.

View
Select a view to apply to the Event Viewer. The view determines the columns that appear in the Event Viewer and overrides any default view defined for the filter.

Datasource
Select the data source that provides event information to the Event Viewer from this list.

Use Customizer
Select this check box to be able to resize the Event Viewer on a page with multiple portlets by dragging the mouse pointer. If you clear this check box, use the Height field to specify an alternative height in pixels.

Single-click action
Select the action to perform when you click an event in the Event Viewer once:

none Nothing happens. This is the default action.

Open Event List (using wires)
Sends a NodeClickedOn event to any wires that have been configured for a page. For example, where an Event Viewer and an AEL portlet are displayed on the same page, the AEL is updated to show the event currently selected in the Event Viewer. You can then select tools to be run on the event data.

Double-click action
Select the action to perform when you double-click an event in the Event Viewer:

none Nothing happens.

Show Information
Opens the information window for a selected event. This is the default action.

Open AEL in New Window
Opens the AEL in a new window.

Height
Set the height of the portlet frame in pixels.
4. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

**Component direction**
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

**Text direction**
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

5. Click **OK** to save and apply the new settings.

6. To restore the default portlet settings, click **Reset to Defaults**.

Related tasks:

- “Setting the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer” on page 245
  You can configure the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer window. For example, you can specify the time interval between automatic refreshes of the event list.
- “Creating CGI tools” on page 214
  Create a CGI tool that runs a CGI script from the AEL to process and return ObjectServer field information.
- “Creating SQL tools” on page 218
  Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).
- “Creating command-line tools” on page 221
  Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.
- “Creating script tools” on page 224
  Create script tools to pass contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to separate portlet instances or to dynamically customized page content.

---

### Setting Gauge portlet preferences

Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

**Before you begin**

To be able to customize gauges, either the ncw_gauges_editor and the ncw_user roles, or the ncw_admin role must be assigned to your user.

To view gauges on a mobile device, you must have the ncw_gauges_viewer role.

Before a click-action can be used to operate a tool, you must have previously defined the tool.
**About this task**

To customize gauges:

**Procedure**

1. Open a Gauges portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click **Edit Options** > **Personalize**.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click **Edit Options** > **Edit shared settings**.
3. Change the content and appearance of the page as required:
   - “Changing the General settings for all gauges” on page 184.
   - “Selecting the data sources and ObjectServers” on page 185.
   - “Generating HTML for mobile devices” on page 185.
   - “Changing the properties of gauges” on page 185.
   - “Adding gauges” on page 187.
   - “Removing gauges” on page 187.
   - “Rearranging gauges” on page 187.
   - “Changing the bi-directional text settings” on page 188.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the gauge properties. The page returns to view mode with the changes applied.
   - Click **Cancel** to abandon all of the changes you have made to the page.

   **Note:** To return the page to its initial settings, as supplied, click **Reset to Defaults**.
Changing the General settings for all gauges

Set the title of the gauge page and the refresh rate for its gauges.

Procedure

Change any combination of the preferences in the General Settings area:

**Title**
Type a title for the Gauges page. The title is displayed on the title bar of the portlet page, not on the tab or in the navigation pane.

**Gauge size**
Type a display size for the gauge. Use a number between 2 and 2560.

**Refresh rate**
Type the time (in seconds) between each automatic refresh of the values on the gauges. Use a number between 10 and 99000. The default value is 10.
Selecting the data sources and ObjectServers

Define the data sources and ObjectServers that provide data for the gauges on the page.

Procedure

Select the data sources and ObjectServers that supply data for the gauges in the Data Sources area:
- To select an entire data source, set its check box.
- To select individual ObjectServers in a data source:
  - Clear the check box for the data source.
  - Set the check boxes for the ObjectServers you want to use.
- You can choose any combination of data sources and ObjectServers.
- Initially a page receives data from the default data source only.
- The value that each gauge shows is the total for that metric for all the selected data sources and ObjectServers.

Generating HTML for mobile devices

Producing an HTML representation of the gauge page that you can either send to mobile devices using e-mail or SMS, or scan using your mobile device.

Procedure

1. Set the HTML for mobile devices check box.
   - The system generates an HTML representation of the Gauges page whenever you click OK to save changes to the preferences or defaults.
   - The URL and QR Code for the HTML page appears in Mobile Device Access.
2. To preview the HTML page, click the URL.
   - You can now copy the URL into an e-mail or SMS for sending to mobile devices. Alternatively, you can scan the QR Code using the camera and QR Code reader on your mobile device. Once the QR Code is recognized, your Web browser launches automatically to display the associated URL.

Changing the properties of gauges

Modifying the properties of any gauge such as its name, appearance, and metric.

Procedure

1. Click the gauge that you want to modify.
2. Change the fields in the properties box as required:
   - Type: Select type of display for the gauge. For example, a speedometer or traffic lights.
     - The Preview area shows the selected gauge.
   - Metric: Select a predefined metric from the list.
     - Note: If you change the metric for an existing gauge, always change the Unit label, Unit label, and Description to match the new metric.
   - Label: Type a label for the gauge. This identifies the gauge on the page.
   - Unit label: Type a label to describe the units for the values that the gauge displays.
Description
Type a description for the gauge. When the Gauges page is viewed in the Web GUI, or the published URL is viewed in a Web browser or a mobile device, the text in this field is used as hover help.

Tip: you can include the current value of the gauge in the hover help. Add the string \{0\} where you want the value to appear. For example:
The number of client connections. Current value: \{0\}

Click action
Select the action that is performed when a user clicks the gauge:

- **none** Nothing happens.
- **script** Execute a script.
- **url** Open a URL.

Script/URL
Type the fully-qualified URL that you want to be opened when you click a gauge, or the JavaScript code that you want to run.

Tip: You can use the URL of a Web GUI application page.

You can use a script to launch Web GUI applications and applications from other parts of Tivoli that are based on Tivoli Integrated Portal. For example, you can write a script to launch the IBM Tivoli Network Manager IP Edition.

Mobile device touch action
Select the action that is performed when a user taps the gauge:

- **none** Nothing happens.
- **as desktop** The mobile touch action works like the desktop click action.
- **script** Execute a script.
- **url** Open a URL.

Mobile device Script/URL
Type the fully-qualified URL that you want to be opened when you tap a gauge, or the JavaScript code that you want to run.

Tip: You can use the URL of a Web GUI application page. For example, you can specify a Lightweight Event List (LEL) or a map page.

You can use a script to launch Web GUI applications and applications from other parts of Tivoli that are based on Tivoli Integrated Portal. For example, you can write a script to launch the IBM Tivoli Network Manager IP Edition.

3. Click *Apply Changes*. 
Adding gauges

Adding a new gauge to the page and choosing its properties such as name and appearance.

**Before you begin**

Decide on the properties of the gauge:

- The type of the gauge.
  
  Example: thermometer

- The name of the metric the gauge displays.
  Examples: connections

- The label for the gauge that appears on the Gauges page.
  Example: Connections

- The units that the gauge displays.
  Example: clients

- A more detailed description of the gauge.
  Example: The number of current client connections.

- The action that the portlet takes, if any, when the user clicks on the gauge.
  For URL actions, determine the fully-qualified URL that the Web GUI is to display.
  For script actions, obtain or write the corresponding JavaScript.

**About this task**

To add the gauge to the page:

**Procedure**

1. Set the properties of the gauge from the information you gathered. See “Changing the properties of gauges” on page 185.
2. Click Add Gauge.

**Removing gauges**

Removing one or more gauges that you no longer require on the page.

**Procedure**

To remove a gauge from the page, click ×.

**Rearranging gauges**

Rearrange the position of the gauges on the page to suit your needs.

**About this task**

Do either of the following actions:

**Procedure**

1. Use the arrows on either side of each gauge to change the order of them on the page.
Changing the bi-directional text settings

Customize the settings for displaying bi-directional text.

Procedure

In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

Setting Inline Frame portlet preferences

To customize the appearance and setup of the Inline Frame portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

About this task

Note: The Inline Frame portlet is deprecated in the Web GUI from V7.3.1. Use the Web widget portlet instead.

To set Inline Frame portlet preferences:

Procedure
1. Open an Inline Frame portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
   • To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options. > Edit shared settings.
3. In the **General Settings** area, set the following portlet properties:

**URL**
Type the URL of the content to be included in the portal page.

**Portlet Title**
Type the title to be displayed for the portlet.

**Use Customizer**
Select this check box to be able to resize the Inline Frame on a page with multiple portlets by dragging the mouse pointer. If you clear this check box, use the **Height** field to specify an alternative height in pixels.

**Height**
Set the height of the portlet frame in pixels.

**iFrame Name**
Type a custom name to be used to identify the frame when the content of the frame is loaded on demand, for example using JavaScript.

4. Click **OK** to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

**Related tasks:**
- “Editing portlet shared settings" on page 51

Some portlets include an **Edit Shared Settings** mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

---

### Setting LEL portlet preferences

To customize the appearance and setup of the LEL portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

**About this task**

**Note:** The Lightweight Event List (LEL) is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

To set LEL portlet preferences:

**Procedure**

1. Open an LEL portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click **Edit Options**. > **Personalize**.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click **Edit Options**. > **Edit shared settings**.
3. In the **General Settings** area, set the following portlet properties:
   - **Filter**
   Select the filter you want to apply to the event list. The default view associated with the filter is automatically applied.
   - **Use Customizer**
   Automatically determines the required height of the portlet frame. You can override the height by clearing this check box and typing a value in the **Height** field.
Height
Set the height of the portlet frame in pixels.

4. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

5. Click OK to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

Related tasks:
“Editing portlet shared settings” on page 51

Some portlets include an Edit Shared Settings mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

---

Setting preferences for the Map portlet

To customize the appearance and setup of the Map portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

About this task

To set Map portlet preferences:

Procedure
1. Open a Map portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options. > Edit shared settings.
3. In the General Settings area, set the following portlet properties:

   Map Name
   From the list of available maps, select the map that you want to display as an applet in the portlet.

   Sound URL
   Type the URL to the sound file that specifies the sound to play when the status of the map is updated during a refresh. The URL must be specified in the following format:
Refresh Rate
Type a time value in seconds that specifies the interval between refresh operations for the map.

Enable hover help for active objects
Select this check box to display hover help for active map objects that are associated with a filter. The hover help displays information from the filter.

Show status bar
Select this check box to display the status bar, which displays a countdown of the time, in seconds until the map is next refreshed.

Use Customizer
Uses the height setting specified in the map on the map page. If you clear this check box, you can explicitly specify the height in the Height field.

Height
If you clear the Use Customizer field, type an alternative height value in pixels.

4. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

Component direction
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

Text direction
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

5. Click OK to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

Related tasks:
"Editing portlet shared settings" on page 51
Some portlets include an Edit Shared Settings mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.
Setting Relationship Definitions portlet preferences

Use the Relationship Definitions portlet to set the Relationship Definitions preferences.

Procedure

To set the Relationship Definitions preferences:
1. Open a Relationship Definitions portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
3. In the Bidi Settings area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:
   - Component direction
     Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.
   - Text direction
     Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The Contextual Input setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

   Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.
4. Click OK to save and apply the new settings.

Setting Table View portlet preferences

To customize the appearance and setup of the Table View portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

About this task

Note: The Table View portlet is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

To set Table View portlet preferences:

Procedure
1. Open a Table View portlet.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
   • To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options. > Edit shared settings.
3. In the General Settings area, set the following portlet properties:
   - Filter
     Select the filter you want to apply to the event list. The default view associated with the filter is automatically applied.
**Maximum rows**
Set the number of event rows you want to display. If the number you enter is smaller than the actual event count, you are notified at the bottom of the table. To display all events, set this value to -1.

**Use Customizer**
Automatically determines the required height of the portlet frame. You can override the height by clearing this check box and typing a value in the **Height** field.

**Height**
Set the height of the portlet frame in pixels.

4. In the **Bidi Settings** area, specify the settings for the display of bi-directional text:

**Component direction**
Select the arrangement of items in the portlet, left-to-right or right-to-left. The default setting uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the layout.

**Text direction**
Select the direction of text on the portlet. The default settings uses the value defined for the page or the console. If the page and console both use the default setting, the locale of your browser determines the text direction. The **Contextual Input** setting displays text you enter in the appropriate direction for your globalization settings.

Any change you make to these settings is effective only if you have enabled bi-directional support in your user preferences. Changes come into effect the next time you use the portlet.

5. Click **OK** to save and apply your settings to the portlet.

**Related tasks:**
"Editing portlet shared settings" on page 51
Some portlets include an **Edit Shared Settings** mode that allows users with “Editor” access level to configure common settings for other users of the portlet. Once shared settings are configured, users with “Privileged User” level of access can change these values for their own personal use of the portlet. Default settings cannot be changed by users with “User” level of access. Follow these steps to set the shared settings for a portlet.

---

**Setting Web widget portlet preferences**

To customize the appearance and set up of the Web widget portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

**Procedure**

To set Web widget portlet preferences:

1. Open a Web widget portlet.

2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click **Edit Options . > Personalize**.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click **Edit Options . > Edit shared settings**.

3. Set the properties of the Web widget:
**Widget title**  
Type a brief descriptive name for the portlet. The title appears in the navigation pane of the Tivoli Integrated Portal console.

**Home URL**  
Type the Web address of the page to display in the portlet. For Web GUI items such as maps, use a URL relative to the context root. For example, for a map named MyMap use `webtop/Map/MyMap`. You can also display Web pages. In this case specify the fully qualified name of the page. For example, `http://www.mycompany.com/welcome.html`.

**Help page**  
Type the URL of a custom HTML help topic to replace the default help topic for the Web widget.

**HTML iFrame name**  
Type a unique iFrame name for this Web widget. This name uniquely identifies the Web widget and allows its content to be updated dynamically. Ensure that each Web widget has a unique value for this property.

**Show a browser control toolbar**  
Set this check box to provide users of the portlet with a Web navigation toolbar. That is a standard set of Web navigation buttons and a Web address entry field.

Users without administrative privileges may see only a subset of these properties, depending on how the administrator configured the portlet.

4. To allow users to personalize their Web widget settings, set the relevant check boxes:
   - **Widget title**
   - **Home page**
   - **Help page**
   - **Browser control bar**
     Initially, all check boxes are clear.

5. Click **Save** to save and apply your settings to the portlet.
Chapter 9. Customizing Active Event Lists

You can customize the appearance and behavior of the Active Event List (AEL). You can also create tools for managing events and customize what functions are in the AEL menus.

Setting the appearance and behavior of the Active Event List

You can configure the appearance and behavior of the AEL window and any monitor boxes associated with it. For example, you can specify the manner in which you are notified of changes in alert status, list refresh time, window layout, and so on.

Before you begin

An administrator must set the Allow preference configuration permission in your user profile in so that you can edit your user preferences.

Related concepts:

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Related tasks:

“Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user” on page 101
Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.

Changing the AEL refresh rate

You can change the time period in seconds after which the AEL is automatically refreshed on a regular basis by the Web GUI server.

Before you begin

A user can view the Refresh tab and change the refresh rate only if the permission for Allow refresh rate configuration has been selected in their user profile.

About this task

Setting a timed refresh forces the event list to reload data pertaining to changed events. Do not set the refresh to a low value (for example, less than 60 seconds) because this has an impact on ObjectServer performance and network traffic.

To change the refresh rate:

Procedure

1. Click Settings > User Preferences for Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI.
2. From the Available users list, select the required user and click Modify.
3. Select Allow refresh rate configuration and type a time in the Refresh rate (seconds): field.
4. Click Save.
Related tasks:
“Refreshing the event data” on page 281
The event list refreshes automatically at regular intervals to show all incoming alerts from the ObjectServer. You can choose to refresh the event list manually between the configured intervals to view all the latest alerts at the current point in time.

Turning data row caching on or off
When the AEL is refreshed, event data in its rows is loaded from the cache if the refresh interval is less than 60 seconds. To have the event list refreshed from the database, turn data row caching off.

About this task
To turn off data row caching:

Procedure
1. Open the following file:
   nCwDataSourceDefinitions.xml
2. Set the enabled attribute of the <eventList> element to false. For example:
   <eventList maxAge="60" enabled="false" cleantime="120" />
3. Save and close the file.
4. Restart the server.

Results
When the AEL is refreshed, data is drawn directly from the ObjectServer instead of the data cache.

Related tasks:
“Restarting the server” on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Changing event severity icons
To make the icons that denote event severity more recognizable to users, replace the default icons with images of your choice.

About this task
The replacement images must be in PNG format. The file names must correspond to the integers that denote event severity in the ObjectServer. The following table describes the default file names for the images.

Table 18. Default file names for event severity icons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>File name</th>
<th>Corresponding event severity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.png</td>
<td>Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.png</td>
<td>Major</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.png</td>
<td>Minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.png</td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.png</td>
<td>Indeterminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.png</td>
<td>Clear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To change the icons for event severity:

**Procedure**
1. Rename the files for the replacement icons so that they correspond to the required event severity.
2. Change to the following directory:
   
   `tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/installedApps/TIPCell/isc.ear/
   OMNIbusWebGUI.war/graphicconversions/severity`
3. Overwrite the existing PNG files with the replacements.

**Results**

After users have logged out, and logged back into the Web console, the icons in the Active Event List are changed.

**Restricting the number of rows displayed in the Active Event List**

You can impose a limit on the number of rows returned to the Active Event List (AEL). When operators open the AEL, they see only the specified number of rows.

**About this task**

To restrict the number of rows, edit the `ael.top-n.value` property in the `webgui-home/etc/server.init` file. If you set this property to a value greater than 0, the AEL queries are modified to include a TOP keyword that restricts the number of rows returned to the AEL to the first `n` query results that match the selection criteria specified by the filter.

For example, if an AEL filter matches 8000 rows in the ObjectServer, and the `ael.top-n.value` value is set to 4000, only the top 4000 alerts are displayed. If an AEL displays events from multiple data sources, the top `n` rows per data source are displayed. For example, if the `ael.top-n.value` value is set to 50, and the AEL is configured to display events from three data sources, a maximum of 150 rows are displayed.

After you edited the `server.init` file, restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.

To restrict the number of events displayed:

**Procedure**
1. In the command-line interface, open the `webgui-home/etc/server.init` file.
2. Uncomment the section Active Event List properties.
3. In this section, set the value of the `ael.top-n.value` property to a value greater than 0.
4. Leave the values of the other properties in the Active Event List properties section at their default values.
   For more information about these properties, see the information in the `server.init` file.
5. Save and close the file.
6. Restart the server.
Results

When operators view an AEL, the number of rows that match the filter criteria is restricted to the value of the `ael.top-n.value` property. If the AEL displays events from multiple data sources, the number is restricted to the value of `ael.top-n.value` per data source. A Top Set to message is also displayed above the distribution status bar in the AEL indicating that a TOP condition is being applied.

**Related tasks:**

- “Restarting the server” on page 1
  
  After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

**Related reference:**

- “Performance tuning” on page 170
  
  To improve the throughput of events from a data source to the Web GUI, or to distribute the load between the ObjectServer and the Web GUI server, you can adjust several configuration settings.

**Enabling notifications and setting notification criteria**

You can set the AEL to inform you about changes in alert status. You can also specify the conditions which must be met before you receive a notification.

**Procedure**

1. Press Shift+P to open the Preferences window.
2. Click **Notifications** and complete the fields as follows:

   **Enabled**
   
   Select this check box to receive notification of new, changed, or deleted alerts when the event list is minimized.

   **When Iconized**
   
   Select this check box to receive notification of new, changed, or deleted alerts on iconized desktop environments. An iconized desktop environment displays an icon when the event list is minimized.

   Use the **When** and **How** options to set the notification method.

   **Always**
   
   Select this check box to always receive notification of new, changed, or deleted alerts.

   **When**
   
   Select each check box to receive notification as follows:

   - **New** You receive a notification when a new alert is added to the event list.
   - **Change** You receive a notification when an existing alert changes in the event list.
   - **Delete** You receive a notification when an existing alert is deleted from the event list.

   **How**
   
   Select each option to indicate how a notification should occur:

   - **Alert Icon** Flashes the minimized event list.
Open Window
Opens the event list on the screen.

Play Sound
Plays a sound on the workstation. In the text box, specify the sound file to play in the following format:

$(SERVER)/sounds/soundfile
Replace soundfile with the name of the sound file. For example: gong.au

Open URL
Opens a URL

URL Target
If you selected Open URL, type the URL that you want to be opened.

Note: When the AEL runs as an applet in a separate browser window, only the Play Sound and Open URL notifications are effective.

3. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   • To use these preferences in the current session only, click Apply.
   • To use these preferences in future sessions, click Save.

4. Click one of the other tabs to make more changes or, to exit the Preferences window, click Close.

Enabling flashing and setting flash speed and brightness
You can specify flashing in the AEL for alerts where the Flash field in the alerts.status table has been set to 1, or converted to Yes. Also, you can adjust the interval between each flash and the brightness of the flash in the window.

About this task
To enable flashing and adjust the speed and brightness of the flashing:

Procedure
1. Press Shift+P to open the Preferences window.
2. Click Flashing and complete the fields as follows:
   Enable Flashing
   Select this check box to enable event list flashing.
   Use the Speed slider to indicate how quickly the event list flashes.
   Use the Brightness slider to indicate the degree of brightness of the flashing.
3. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   • To use these preferences in the current session only, click Apply.
   • To use these preferences in future sessions, click Save.
4. Click one of the other tabs to make more changes or, to exit the Preferences window, click Close.
Modifying the AEL font and window settings

You can set the AEL font type, and specify the color and toolbar preferences for AELs.

About this task

To set the preferences for the font type, color and toolbar:

Procedure

1. Press Shift+P to open the Preferences window.
2. Click Event List and complete the fields under Event Window as follows:
   - **Show Colors**
     Displays each row of the event list with a background color that corresponds to the severity of the event.
   - **Show Distribution Summary Bar**
     Select this check box to display the distribution summary bar in the event list. The distribution summary bar displays the number of alerts that match each severity color.
   - **Show Toolbar**
     Select this check box to make the toolbar available on the event list.
   - **Font Name**
     Select a font for your event list from the list.
   - **Font Size**
     Select a font size for your event list from the list.
3. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   - To use these preferences in the current session only, click Apply.
   - To use these preferences in future sessions, click Save.
4. Click one of the other tabs to make more changes or, to exit the Preferences window, click Close.

Modifying the AEL date and time format

You can specify the date and time format used on the AEL.

About this task

Procedure

1. Press Shift+P to open the Preferences window.
2. Click Event List.
3. Under Date Format, select a format for the date and time:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Short</td>
<td>This is the default setting, and is of the format m/d/yy h:mm:ss a, for example: 12/11/00 2:15:55 PM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long</td>
<td>This is of the format MMMM d, yyyy h:mm:ss a, for example December 11, 2000 2:15:55 PM.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Option | Description
--- | ---
Customize | Create your own format based on available date and time formats. See "Permitted date and time formats" for more information.

4. Specify the operator timezone by selecting an entry from the menu. You can select the location of the operator, the timezone, or the number of hours before or after Greenwich Mean Time.

   **Tip:** Choose the name of a locale-based timezone (for example America/Chicago) rather than one relative to GMT (for example, etc/GMT-6).

5. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   - To use these preferences in the current session only, click **Apply**.
   - To use these preferences in future sessions, click **Save**.

6. Click one of the other tabs to make more changes or, to exit the Preferences window, click **Close**.

**Permitted date and time formats**

The following table describes the date and time formats that you can use for a customized date and time display in step 3 on page 200.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Presentation</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>era designator</td>
<td>Textual</td>
<td>AD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>month in the year</td>
<td>Text and Numeric</td>
<td>July and 07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>day in the month</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hour in am/pm (1 - 12)</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>hour in the day (0 - 23)</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>minute in hour</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>second in minute</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>millisecond</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>day in week</td>
<td>Textual</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>day in year</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>day of week in month</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>2 (2nd Wed in July)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w</td>
<td>week in year</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>week in month</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>am or pm marker</td>
<td>Textual</td>
<td>PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>hour in day (1 - 24)</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>hour in am or pm (0 - 11)</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>time zone</td>
<td>Textual</td>
<td>Pacific Standard Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Date and time formats in the AEL**

Read about the format of the date and time presentation types, including additional information on specific data formats.

When using the customized date format in the AEL, the display presentation is determined by the total letters or numbers.

**Textual**

In a textual presentation with four or more pattern symbols, the full form is used. In a textual presentation with fewer than four symbols, the short or abbreviated form is used (if one exists).

For example, if you want the date to start with the day of the week, you use the symbol E (Day in week). If you enter E fewer than four times, the day is abbreviated. If you enter E four or more times, the day is presented in the full form.

- EEE is displayed as Mon
- EEEE is displayed as Monday

**Numeric**

In a numeric presentation, the minimum number of digits is used. Shorter numbers are zero-padded to this amount.

The Y (year) symbol is a special case. If the count of y is two, the value for the year is truncated to two digits. If the count of y is four, the year is shown in four digits. For example:

- yy is displayed as 03
- yyyy is displayed as 2003

**Textual and numeric**

In a textual and numeric presentation, where three or more pattern letters are used, the textual form is used. Otherwise, a numeric form is used.

For example, if you use the symbol M (month in year) the presentation of month is determined by how many times you enter M. For example, for the month of February:

- M is displayed as 2
- MM is displayed as 02
- MMM is displayed as Feb
- MMMM is displayed as February

**Additional information**

Other points to note about letters and numbers in date formats:

- You can use non-alphabetic characters in date formats, such as colons (:), commas (,), periods (.), the number sign (#) and the at sign (@), without having to contain them in quotes.
- If you include a colon to separate hours and minutes, then the colon is displayed. For example, HH:mm a is displayed as 5:48 PM.
A pattern containing any invalid symbol results in an error during formatting or parsing.

Locale date and time

Each country has its own locale date and time format. The following table shows examples of date and time in the US Locale format.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format Pattern</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EEE, MMM d, 'yy</td>
<td>Wed, July 10, '96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h:mm a</td>
<td>12:08 PM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hh a,zzzz</td>
<td>12 PM, Pacific Daylight Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K:mm a, z</td>
<td>0:00 PM, PST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yyyy.MMNN.dd GGG hh:mm aa</td>
<td>1996.July.10 AD 12:08 PM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Changing how event severity is depicted in the AEL

You can specify how the severity of events is displayed in the AEL: as icons, as text, or as a combination of both icons and text.

About this task

Default icons for event severity are provided. These icons are as follows.

If required, you can change these icons.

- : Denotes critical severity (severity 5)
- : Denotes major severity (severity 4)
- : Denotes minor severity (severity 3)
- : Denotes warning severity (severity 2)
- : Denotes indeterminate severity (severity 1)
- : Denotes clear severity (severity 0)

To change the depiction of event severity:

Procedure

1. Press Shift+P to open the Preferences window.
2. Click Event List.
3. Under Event List Icons, select one of the following options:
   - Show: Displays an icon to denote event severity.
   - Show With Text: Displays an icon and text to denote event severity.
   - Don't Show: Displays text to denote event severity.
4. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   - To use these preferences in the current session only, click Apply.
   - To use these preferences in future sessions, click Save.
5. Click one of the other tabs to make more changes or, to exit the Preferences window, click Close.
Changing which areas of the AEL are displayed

Depending on your preferences, you can set up the AEL so that only the areas that you want to work with are displayed, for example, the menu and title bars. As an administrator, you can control which areas are displayed for all users.

About this task

You can control whether the following areas are displayed or hidden:

- Title bar
- Menu bar
- Tool bar
- Filters and view section of the tool bar
- Summary bar
- Status bar

Tip: To provide the maximum space for displaying alert data, by default, the title bar and the menu bar are hidden.

To change which areas of the AEL are displayed:

Procedure

1. Open an AEL.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   - To edit your portlet preferences, click **Edit Options > Personalize**.
   - To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click **Edit Options > Edit shared settings**.
3. To change the areas of the AEL that are displayed, use the following fields:
   - **Title Bar**
     - Select this check box to display the title bar.
   - **Menu Bar**
     - Select this check box to display the menu bar.
   - **Tool Bar**
     - Select this check box to display the tool bar.
   - **Filters and Views**
     - Select this check box to display the **Edit Filters** button and the list of available filters, and the **Edit Views** button and the list of available views on the tool bar.
   - **Summary Bar**
     - Select this check box to display the summary bar.
   - **Status Bar**
     - Select this check box to display the status bar.
4. Click **OK**.
Changing the font color for an event after it has been acknowledged

You can set the color of the event font to change to after the event has been acknowledged.

Procedure

To set the color of the font for an event that has been acknowledged for all new users:

1. Do one of the following actions:
   - To change the font color for all new users, edit the file
     webgui-home/etc/system/userdefaults.props
   - To change the font color for an existing user, edit the file
     webgui-home/etc/configstore/ncwUserPreferences/username.nova
     Replace username with the user ID of the user.

2. Locate the property ael_user_properties_acknowledge_font_color and change its value to the name of the required color.

3. Save the file.

4. If you have changed the userdefaults.props file, restart the server.
   - If you changed the font color for an existing user, the change takes effect next time they log in.

Related tasks:

"Restarting the server" on page 1

After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Adding sounds to use for notifications

You can add sound files to the Web GUI to use in AEL notifications.

Procedure

Prepare the sound file and place it in the following directory:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/installedApps/TIPCell/lic/ear/
OMNIbusWebGUI.war/sounds
```

Creating event management tools

You can create and administer CGI, SQL, command line and script tools to be used in the AEL. You can also configure prompts that are displayed to users in the Active Event List (AEL) when performing actions with tools.

Before you begin

If you want to create tools that will be run against more than one data source, note the following criteria:

- The tool must be valid against the ObjectServer from which the events originate.
- If you select events from multiple ObjectServers, the tool must be valid against all the ObjectServers. For example, if the tool is configured to run against fields that are not contained in one ObjectServer, the tool cannot be run against the entire selection of events.
• You must have write permission against all the ObjectServers from which the selected events originate. If you select events from multiple ObjectServers, and you do not have write permission in all the ObjectServers, the tool runs against only the ObjectServers that you are permitted to modify.

**Important:** For each tool, you must select at least one data source. From this data source, the Tool Editor obtains the fields against which the tool can be configured. If you select multiple data sources, the Tool Editor displays only the fields common to all the selected data sources. The data sources selected in the Tool Editor are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data source or data sources from which event data is retrieved in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

**Related concepts:**
- "The Web GUI in a load balancing environment" on page 133
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Related tasks:**
- Chapter 8, “Setting portlet preferences,” on page 173
  You can change the settings of the portlets to customize their appearance and setup to your requirements.

### Event management tools overview

From the Tool Creation page, you can create and configure the tools used by clients connected to the AEL. Tools can be either Common Gateway Interface (CGI) tools, SQL tools, command-line tools or script tools. All of these tools are run from configurable menus in the AEL and some of them can include a prompt window or a pop-up menu for users to enter or select information.

**CGI tools**

CGI tools are typically used by clients to process ObjectServer field information and return useful information about the data to the client browser.

For example, the CGI script **nco_ping** provided with Web GUI sends specially marked packets from the local computer to a remote device to determine whether the remote computer is currently available. The script uses the IP address contained in the Node field of the selected alert (or alerts) as its target. The source file for **nco_ping** is located in the following directory:

```bash
webgui-home/etc/cgi-bin
```

**Query string for nco_ping**

The following example shows the URL for the **nco_ping** CGI script run on an event generated from a device with the node name zen1 and data source NCOMS. The GET query string is as follows.

```plaintext
selected_rows.Node=zen1&datasource=NCOMS
```

This data is passed to the CGI script.

```plaintext
protocol://server:port/ibm/console/webtop/cgi-bin/nco_ping.cgi?%24selected_rows.Node=zen1&datasource=NCOMS
```

CGI tools do not have to run CGI scripts. CGI tools can also be used to open a local or remote Web page. Be aware that a remote script or page that contains SmartPage commands cannot be presented correctly within Web GUI. Pages that contain SmartPage commands must be hosted on the local Web GUI server.
CGI scripts can use different kinds of variables, including HTTP variables, ObjectServer fields, and browser cookie values.

**Note:** If any required resources, for example, Perl, are installed in nonstandard locations, ensure that the paths to the resources in any CGI scripts are correct.

**Related tasks:**
[“Setting up CGI and URL tools” on page 210](#)

A CGI is a server-resident program that provides a standard way of adding dynamic content to a Web site by allowing external gateway programs to interface with information servers such as Web servers.

**SQL tools**
SQL tools are a predefined way to run ObjectServer SQL commands on the alerts.status table and the alerts.journal data table from the Active Event List (AEL).

To run an SQL tool, you must be a read-write user authenticated with the ObjectServer against which the tool is run.

The Web GUI provides several default SQL tools. To view the tools, open the **Alerts** menu in the AEL.

In a Dual-Server Desktop environment, SQL tools run simultaneously against the master ObjectServer and the display server from which the AEL data is displayed. The same is true of journal actions.

An example of an SQL tool is **acknowledge**, which contains the following data.

```sql
update alerts.status set Acknowledged=1 where Serial in ($selected_rows.Serial);
Alert acknowledged by %username
```

These instructions acknowledge any selected alert in the name of the user who ran the tool. The first line applies to the data held in the alerts.status table, the second line to the alerts.journal table.

For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Administration Guide*.

**Related tasks:**
[“Creating SQL tools” on page 218](#)

Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

**Command-line tools**
Command-line tools are predefined command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. When invoked from the Active Event List (AEL), the instruction typically instructs the client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

**Attention:** IBM cannot guarantee that command-line tools will not adversely affect your system. IBM does not accept responsibility for the consequences of any actions performed through the execution of a command-line tool.
A command-line tool is useful when all members of a particular user group are known to have specific (usually generic) applications on their systems. Because command-line tools are started client-side rather than server-side, the load on the Web GUI server is reduced.

When a command-line tool is started by a client, the client operating system type is automatically determined, and the appropriate command-line instruction is sent, if one is available for that operating system.

The following example shows a command-line tool instruction:

```plaintext
start cmd /k %WINDIR%\SYSTEM32\PING.EXE {0Node}
```

In this example, if the client is a Windows operating system the instruction opens a command-line and starts the Windows `ping` utility against the `Node` field of the selected alert. The data is then returned to the command-line window on the client system.

**Related tasks:**

“Creating command-line tools” on page 221

Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

**Script tools**

Script tools are a predefined way of passing contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to JavaScript methods. A script tool can be run from within the AEL.

Use script tools for inter-portlet activity through the Tivoli Integrated Portal Actions framework, and to customize dynamic content using JavaScript.

Script tool syntax follows JavaScript rules. The command text might also contain variables that are evaluated when the script tool is executed.

You can create, copy, modify, and delete script tools in the Tool Creation editor. Script tools can be added to menus using the Menu Configuration editor.

When an AEL is opened, all script tools that are referred to by the AEL tools are retrieved from the server.

**Access criteria for tools**

You can define access criteria for any SQL, CGI, URL, script or command-line tool based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event. If the access criteria are satisfied for a given tool, user, and event, the tool is displayed.

By default, no access criteria are defined for any tools. Tools that do not have access criteria defined are displayed for all users for all events. Changes in access criteria take effect when the Active Event List (AEL) is reloaded, without the need to restart the Web GUI server.

If the access criteria for a tool, user, and event are not satisfied, the tool is not displayed. If both group and class access criteria are defined, then both must be satisfied for the tool to be displayed for a given event and user. If multiple events are selected in the AEL, all access criteria must be satisfied for all selected events in order for a tool to be displayed.
Prompt types

When you create or edit a tool, you can include a prompt to which a user must respond, for example by typing in information or selecting a value from a list.

Each prompt has a user-configurable label that is displayed above the prompt window. It informs the user of the expected input, such as the name of the server to be pinged. You can refer to prompts in tools using the $prompt.promptname parameter or the {$prompt.promptname} parameter for CGI and Script tools.

The following example shows a dynamic choice prompt type:

```xml
<methodCall xmlns:prompt="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/prompts/2.2">
    <method methodName="command">
        <prompt:prompt type="DynamicChoice" name="prompt name">
            <prompt:parameters label="prompt label" order="prompt order" errorMessage="error message" localized="true|false">
                <prompt:additionalParams>
                    <prompt:param name="sqlCommand" value="sql string"/>
                </prompt:additionalParams>
            </prompt:parameters>
        </prompt:prompt>
    </method>
</methodCall>
```

Prompt parameters can be modified using the WAAPI client. View the webgui-home/waapi/etc/samples/samplerequest_prompt.xml file for samples.

You can create the following types of prompts:

- **String** This creates a prompt window that accepts one or more characters. If more than one prompt has been defined for a tool, all prompts will be displayed on a single panel. The `order` attribute is responsible for determining in what order prompts are displayed on this panel, from higher values to lower values in a page orientation. To ensure a prompt is always displayed last, set the value of the `order` attribute to 0.

- **Integer** This creates a prompt window that accepts an integer value.

- **Float** This creates a prompt window that accepts a floating point number, which can contain a decimal point.

- **Time** This creates a prompt window that accepts a time.

- **Fixed Choice** This creates a menu that is populated with options that you specify.

- **Lookup** This creates a menu or list that is populated by the values in a specified file. The `file` attribute contains an absolute path to a file in the server, where each line of text is displayed as an item in a list.

- **Password** This creates a prompt window that accepts one or more characters as a password.

- **Dynamic Choice** This creates a pop-up menu or drop-down list that is populated by the results of an ObjectServer query. The `sqlCommand` attribute contains an ObjectServer SQL SELECT statement for two columns from a table. Each row that is returned by the ObjectServer is displayed on the client as an
item in a submenu or list. If a Dynamic Choice tool is run against multiple ObjectServers that have different column definitions, you can select only from the columns or column values that are common to all ObjectServers.

Multiline String
This creates a multiline prompt window that accepts one or more characters.

Tip: You can use the order attribute to enforce a mandatory journal entry as the last prompt to be completed by a user. (This is similar to the forced journal entry functionality in the event list). To do so, create a multiline string prompt, enter a name of Journal entry and an order of 0.

Formatted String
This creates a prompt window that accepts one or more characters, provided they are in the predefined format.

The format attribute contains a regular expression that the user must match in order for the value to be accepted.

Real-Time Dynamic Choice
This creates a scrollable list populated by the results of an ObjectServer query in real-time, which means during tool execution. This prompt is meant to be used to display data from an ObjectServer table that is frequently changeable. As this prompt type is executed in real time, it should be used sparingly to reduce the load on the Web GUI server.

The sqlCommand attribute contains an ObjectServer SQL SELECT statement for two columns from a table. Each row that is returned by the ObjectServer is displayed on the client as an item in a submenu or list. If a Real-Time Dynamic Choice tool is run against multiple ObjectServers that have different column definitions, you can select only from the columns or column values that are common to all ObjectServers.

Related tasks:
"Acknowledging and deacknowledging events" on page 275
You can acknowledge and deacknowledge events in the event list.

Setting up CGI and URL tools
A CGI is a server-resident program that provides a standard way of adding dynamic content to a Web site by allowing external gateway programs to interface with information servers such as Web servers.

Related concepts:
"CGI tools" on page 206
CGI tools are typically used by clients to process ObjectServer field information and return useful information about the data to the client browser.
Creating a CGI script
Create the CGI script you want to make available as a tool for your users.

Procedure
1. Create your CGI script. You can create a CGI script using any programming language.
   **Attention:** Ensure the script is executable.
2. Save your CGI script on the Web GUI server in the `webgui-home/etc/cgi-bin` directory.

Environment variables in CGI script:
The following table is a list of all HTTP variables that can be passed from the Web GUI server to CGI scripts.

*Table 21. HTTP server variables*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTH_TYPE</td>
<td>The name of the authentication scheme used to protect the servlet. For example, BASIC, SSL, or null if the servlet was not protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENT_LENGTH</td>
<td>The length of the request body in bytes made available by the input stream or -1 if the length is not known. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable CONTENT_LENGTH.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTENT_TYPE</td>
<td>The MIME type of the body of the request, or null if the type is not known. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable CONTENT_TYPE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATEWAY_INTERFACE</td>
<td>The revision of the CGI specification being used by the server to communicate with the script. It is &quot;CGI/1.1&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_ACCEPT</td>
<td>Variables with names beginning with &quot;HTTP_&quot; contain values from the request header, if the scheme used is HTTP. HTTP_ACCEPT specifies the content types your browser supports. For example, text/xml.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_ACCEPT_CHARSET</td>
<td>Character preference information. Used to indicate the client's preferred character set if any. For example, utf-8; q=0.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_ACCEPT_ENCODING</td>
<td>Defines the type of encoding that may be carried out on content returned to the client. For example, compress; q=0.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_ACCEPT_LANGUAGE</td>
<td>Used to define which languages you would prefer to receive content in. For example, en; q=0.5. If nothing is returned, no language preference is indicated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_FORWARDED</td>
<td>If the request was forwarded, shows the address and port through of the proxy server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_HOST</td>
<td>Specifies the Internet host and port number of the resource being requested. Required for all HTTP/1.1 requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_PROXY_AUTHORIZATION</td>
<td>Used by a client to identify itself (or its user) to a proxy which requires authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_USER_AGENT</td>
<td>The type and version of the browser the client is using to send the request. For example, Mozilla/1.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATH_INFO</td>
<td>Optionally contains extra path information from the HTTP request that invoked the script, specifying a path to be interpreted by the CGI script. PATH_INFO identifies the resource or sub-resource to be returned by the CGI script, and it is derived from the portion of the URI path following the script name but preceding any query data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATH_TRANSLATED</td>
<td>Maps the script's virtual path to the physical path used to call the script. This is done by taking any PATH_INFO component of the request URI and performing any virtual-to-physical translation appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUERY_STRING</td>
<td>The query string that is contained in the request URL after the path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE_ADDR</td>
<td>Returns the IP address of the client that sent the request. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable REMOTE_ADDR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE_HOST</td>
<td>The fully-qualified name of the client that sent the request, or the IP address of the client if the name cannot be determined. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable REMOTE_HOST.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REMOTE_USER</td>
<td>Returns the login of the user making this request if the user has been authenticated, or null if the user has not been authenticated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REQUEST_METHOD</td>
<td>Returns the name of the HTTP method with which this request was made. For example, GET, POST, or PUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCRIPT_NAME</td>
<td>Returns the part of the URL from the protocol name up to the query string in the first line of the HTTP request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER_NAME</td>
<td>Returns the host name of the server that received the request. For HTTP servlets, it is the same as the value of the CGI variable SERVER_NAME.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER_PORT</td>
<td>Returns the port number on which this request was received. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable SERVER_PORT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER_PROTOCOL</td>
<td>Returns the name and version of the protocol the request uses in the following form: protocol/majorVersion.minorVersion. For example, HTTP/1.1. For HTTP servlets, the value returned is the same as the value of the CGI variable SERVER_PROTOCOL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SERVER_SOFTWARE</td>
<td>Returns the name and version of the servlet container on which the servlet is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTTP_COOKIE</td>
<td>HTTP Cookie String.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WEBTOP_USER</td>
<td>The user name of the user who is logged in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCHOME</td>
<td>The NCHOME environment variable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CGI support:

Use the initialization parameters to control the behavior of CGIServlet.

CGIServlet

CGI scripts run on a Web server and use the Common Gateway Interface (CGI) to perform tasks. The support for CGI in Tivoli Integrated Portal is provided by CGIServlet, extracted from Apache Tomcat. The Tomcat CGI support is largely compatible with the Apache HTTP Server but there are some limitations (such as only one cgi-bin directory). To change the configuration, edit web.xml in the directory where the CGI application is installed.

Servlet initialization parameters

Several initialization parameters are available for configuring the behavior of the CGIServlet.

cgiPathPrefix

The CGI search path will start at the Web application root directory + File.separator + this prefix. Default setting: cgiPathPrefix is Web-INF/cgi.

debug

Determines the level of debugging detail for messages that are logged by the servlet. Default setting: 0.

executable

This is type of the program to be used to run the script. Default setting: perl.

parameterEncoding

Names the parameter encoding to be used with the CGI servlet. Default setting: System.getProperty("file.encoding","UTF-8").

passShellEnvironment

Determines whether shell environment variables, if there are any, shall be passed to the CGI script. Default setting: false.

Registering CGI scripts

After you have installed a CGI script on the server, for security purposes, the script must be registered. CGI scripts cannot be used as tools until they are registered.

Before you begin

Ensure that the CGI script has the appropriate file permissions.

About this task

The registration process authorizes execution, ensures that any SmartPage tags present in the source are processed correctly, and attaches a group to the script in order to minimize the possibility of misuse.

To register a CGI script:

Procedure

1. Save the CGI script (for example, nco_ping) in the webgui-home/etc/cgi-bin directory.
2. Click Administration > Event Management Tools > CGI Registry.
3. Click **Register**.

4. In the Register CGI window, use the following fields and buttons to register the CGI script:

   - **Name**: Type a name for the CGI script. This does not have to be the same as the file name of the CGI script.
     - By default, the following characters may not be used in names: \$ ! £ \^ & * ( ) + = ~ ` # @ ' : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
     - By default, the following characters may not be used as the initial character of names: / \ * ? " < > | & .
     - These invalid characters are defined in the following file: `webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop`

   - **Use Smartpage commands**: Select this check box if the output of the CGI script is HTML data that contains SmartPage commands.

   - **File name**: Type the file name of the script in the text field. It is not necessary to include the path.

   - **Groups for this CGI**: If you want to restrict access to the CGI script, click **Groups** and select the groups to which you want to allow access. The default group is *, where all users have access.

5. Click **Save**.

**Results**

The CGI script is now registered for use in the Web GUI, and is displayed as an entry in the **Available CGIs** registration list of the **CGI Registry**.

**What to do next**

To change an entry in the list, select the entry and click **Modify**. To remove an entry, select the name and click **Unregister**.

**Creating CGI tools**

Create a CGI tool that runs a CGI script from the AEL to process and return ObjectServer field information.

**Before you begin**

Before creating a CGI tool, you must create a CGI script and register the script for use in the Web GUI.

**About this task**

You can use an existing CGI tool as a template.

**Procedure**

1. In the navigation, click **Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation**
2. In the Tool Creation, click **Create Tool**.
3. Select CGI/URL from the Type list.

4. Optional: To copy an existing tool, select it from the list of tools displayed and click Copy Tool.

5. Type a name for the tool in the Name field. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.
   By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
   $ ! £ % & * ( ) + = ~ ` # @ ' ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
   By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial character of tool names:
   / \ * ? " < > | & .
   These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
   /webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop

6. Click Show Data Sources to display a list of available data sources and select the data sources that you require.

7. Complete the following tool configuration fields:
   
   **URL**
   Type the location of the CGI script. By default this field contains the correct path for the cgi-bin directory on the local Web GUI server.
   The $(SERVER) keyword is resolved at runtime to `protocol://host:port/ibm/console/webtop`. Append the path with the file name of the script that you want to associate with the tool.
   To pass field data to a script on a remote server, replace $(SERVER) with an external URL address. For example, `http://www.ibm.com`.
   The $(NGFSERVER) keyword resolves at runtime to `protocol://host:port`.

   **Fields**
   Click Show and select the ObjectServer columns that you want to pass as arguments to the tool from the Available column. If you select more than one data source from the Data Sources list, the Fields list contains only columns that are common to all data sources.
   To pass a full list of all selected rows to a tool, select Serial, select the Execute for each selected row check box, and clear the Window for each selected row check box. At runtime, the Serial field resolves to the $selected_rows.Serial parameter. If you select more than one data source from the Data Sources list, add the $selected_rows.datasource parameter to distinguish between identical serial numbers that originate in different data sources.

   **Method**
   Specify the method for submitting field data to the CGI script:
   - **GET**: Appends the name-value pairs to the URL, and is therefore useful if you want to bookmark the page containing the output.
   - **POST**: Encodes the name-value pairs inside the body of the HTTP request. Note that firewalls can be configured to intercept and destroy this data stream, causing the form to be interpreted as empty.
   The CGI script receives the data via a QUERY_STRING environment variable regardless of the method chosen. This differs from the CGI convention where, if a method of POST is used, the script receives data via stdin.
Open in
Select either the New window or Specific window radio button. If you select Specific window, type a name for the window in the adjacent text field.

Execute for each selected row
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

Window for each selected row
Select this check box to open a separate window for each selected row in the AEL.

8. Define access for tools based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

Group Select the group that you want to access the tool and click ». To give all groups access to the selected tool, click »>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

Class Select the class that you want to access the tool and click ». To give all classes access to the selected tool, click »>.

Tip: Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.
If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

9. Click Save.
The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the Active Event List (AEL).

10. Select either the Open in: New window or Open in: Specific window radio button.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New Window</td>
<td>Displays the output of the tool in a new browser window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific Window</td>
<td>Opens the tool output in a window of your choice. Enter a name for the window in the text field.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example

Example 1: Using values from cookies

CGI scripts can also use values from cookies that originate from the same domain as the Web GUI server.

Attention: Using browser cookie values in CGI scripts is an advanced task. You are responsible for setting browser cookies and using cookie values correctly.
To reference a value from a cookie, use the following syntax:

{%cookie.cookienname}\n
In this syntax, *cookiename* is the name of the cookie. For example, the full syntax of referencing a value from a cookie is:

$\text{(SERVER)}/\text{cgi-bin/scriptname.cgi?parametername=}{%\text{cookie.cookienname}}$

**Example 2: Referencing a value from an ObjectServer field**

To reference a value from an ObjectServer field in a query string, use the following syntax:

{@fieldname}\n
In this syntax, *fieldname* is the name of the ObjectServer field.

**Example 3: Showing a query string**

The following example shows a query string using the Node and Summary fields from the ObjectServer:

protocol://server:port/ibm/console/webtop/cgi-bin/
scriptname.cgi?node={@Node}&abstract={@Summary}\n
**What to do next**

For users to have access to a new tool in the AEL, you must create a menu entry for it. Additionally, before a tool can operate in response to a click-action from a portlet, you must first define the click-action in the portlet preferences.
Creating SQL tools

Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

About this task

Any SQL tool that modifies ObjectServer data must be run by a Web GUI user that also exists in the ObjectServer as a write user.

To create an SQL tool:

Procedure

1. In the navigation, click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation.
2. On the Tool Creation page, click Create Tool.
3. Select SQL from the Type list.
4. Optional: To use an existing tool as a template, select it from the list of tools displayed and click Copy Tool.
5. Click Data Source to select the data sources against which you want to run the SQL instructions. The data source selection also specifies the user groups or classes that are used to define the access criteria.
6. Enter a name for the tool in the Name field. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.
By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
$ ! £ % & * ( ) + = ~ ` # @ : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "

By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial character of tool names:
/ \ * ? " < > | & .

These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop

7. On the SQL table, complete the following fields:

**SQL Commands**
Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the alerts.status table in the ObjectServer.

**Execute for each selected row**
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL.

Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

**Important:** Do not select this checkbox if the SQL instructions explicitly state that the command must run against all rows.

8. Optional: To update the alerts.journal table of the selected data source or data sources, click SQL and complete the following fields:

**Journal Entry**
Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the alerts.journal table in the ObjectServer.

If you leave the Journal Entry field empty, no journal entry is recorded when the tool is run. If you want a blank journal entry to be recorded when the tool is run, enter a space or type another character in the field.

**Tip:** You can use a Multiline String prompt for forced journal entry.

**Execute for each selected row**
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL, and modify all corresponding journal entries. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection, and modify the corresponding journal entry.

9. Define access for tools based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

**Group**
Select the group that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all groups access to the selected tool, click >>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

**Class**
Select the class that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all classes access to the selected tool, click >>.

**Tip:** Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.

If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all
selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

If no group or class is selected, users of any group can execute the tool, and the tool can be executed against events of any class.

10. Click Save.

Results

The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the Active Event List (AEL).

Examples

The following SQL command updates the alerts.status table in the ObjectServer by setting the OwnerGID of the selected rows to the value that is chosen from the $prompt menu. The $prompt menu is a system-managed sub-menu of the groupassign tool that contains all the user groups.

update alerts.status set OwnerGID=$prompt.groupassign
where Serial in ($selected_rows.Serial);

The following SQL command updates the alerts.journal table in the ObjectServer:
Alert assigned to group CONVERSION($prompt.groupassign) by %username.

What to do next

For users to have access to a new tool in the AEL, you must create a menu entry for it. Additionally, before a tool can operate in response to a click-action from a portlet, you must first define the click-action in the portlet preferences.
Related concepts:

“SQL tools” on page 207
SQL tools are a predefined way to run ObjectServer SQL commands on the alerts.status table and the alerts.journal data table from the Active Event List (AEL).

Related tasks:

“Creating command-line tools”
Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

“Adding tools to a menu” on page 238
If you have created a new tool, you need to add the tool as an entry to an AEL menu in order to use the tool. You can also add other existing tools to menus.

“Modifying tools” on page 227
You can modify the settings of existing CGI, SQL, command-line or script tools.

“Setting AEL portlet preferences” on page 173
To customize the appearance and setup of the AEL portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

“Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.

“Setting Event Viewer portlet preferences” on page 180
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet, edit the portlet preferences.

“Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182
Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

Creating command-line tools

Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

About this task

To create a command-line tool:

Procedure
1. In the navigation, click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation
2. On the Tool Creation, click Create Tool.
3. Select Command from the Type list.
4. Optional: To use an existing tool as a template, select it from the list of tools displayed and click Copy Tool.
5. Click Data Source to select the data sources against which you want to run the SQL instructions. The data source selection also specifies the user groups or classes that are used to define the access criteria.
6. Type a name for the tool in the Name field above the Tool Configuration dialog. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.
By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
$ ! £ $ ^ & * ( ) + = ~ ` @ $ ' ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "

By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial character of tool names:
/ \ * ? " < > | & .

These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop

7. Complete the following tool configuration fields:

**Platform**
Select this checkbox to specify which client operating system types can access this tool from the AEL.

**Command**
For each selected client operating system, modify the default entry and type the command to launch the target application. Include the full path to the command.

**Tip:** On the Windows operating system use the following construct to ensure the DOS console closes when the tool completes:

start /b cmd /k
dm iexplore.exe && start /cmd /k iexplore.exe

In addition you can launch multiple applications from one tool by inserting && between each command. For example, to launch two Internet Explorer windows use the following comman: **start /b cmd /k cmd iexplore.exe && start / cmd /k iexplore.exe**

**Execute for each selected row**
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

8. Define access for tools based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

**Group**
Select the group that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all groups access to the selected tool, click >>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

**Class**
Select the class that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all classes access to the selected tool, click >>.

**Tip:** Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.

If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

If no group or class is selected, users of any group can execute the tool, and the tool can be executed against events of any class.

9. Click **Save**.
Results

The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the Active Event List (AEL).

What to do next

For users to have access to a new tool in the AEL, you must create a menu entry for it. Additionally, before a tool can operate in response to a click-action from a portlet, you must first define the click-action in the portlet preferences.

Related concepts:
“Command-line tools” on page 207
Command-line tools are predefined command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. When invoked from the Active Event List (AEL), the instruction typically instructs the client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

Related tasks:
“Creating command-line tools” on page 221
Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

“Creating SQL tools” on page 218
Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

“Creating script tools” on page 224
Create script tools to pass contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to separate portlet instances or to dynamically customized page content.

“Modifying tools” on page 227
You can modify the settings of existing CGI, SQL, command-line or script tools.

“Adding tools to a menu” on page 238
If you have created a new tool, you need to add the tool as an entry to an AEL menu in order to use the tool. You can also add other existing tools to menus.

“Setting AEL portlet preferences” on page 173
To customize the appearance and setup of the AEL portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

“Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.

“Setting Event Viewer portlet preferences” on page 180
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet, edit the portlet preferences.

“Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182
Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

Related reference:
“Script tool examples” on page 225
Script tool syntax follows JavaScript rules, and you can create many different script tools to extract data from events, as illustrated by these examples.
Creating script tools

Create script tools to pass contextual data from selected events in the Active Event List (AEL) to separate portlet instances or to dynamically customized page content.

Before you begin

About this task

Script tool syntax follows JavaScript rules. The command text might also contain variables that are evaluated when the script tool is executed.

To create a script tool:

Procedure

1. In the navigation, click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation.
2. In the Tool Creation page, click Create Tool.
3. Select Script from the Type list.
4. Optional: To use an existing tool as a template, select it from the list of tools displayed and click Copy Tool.
5. Click Data Source to select the data sources against which you want to run the SQL instructions. The data source selection also specifies the user groups or classes that are used to define the access criteria.
6. Type a name for the tool in the Name field above the Tool Configuration dialog. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.

   By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
   \$ ! £ ¥ & * ( ) + = – ‘ ” # @ : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "

   By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial character of tool names:
   \ / \ * ? " < > | & .

   These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
   webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop

7. Complete the following tool configuration fields:

   Script Commands
   Type the script that you want to use to configure the new tool.

   Execute for each selected row
   Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

8. Define access for the tool based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

   Group
   Select the group that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all groups access to the selected tool, click >>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

   Class
   Select the class that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all classes access to the selected tool, click >>.

   Tip: Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an
event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.
If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

If no group or class is selected, users of any group can execute the tool, and the tool can be executed against events of any class.

9. Click **Save**.

**Results**

The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the Active Event List (AEL).

**What to do next**

For users to have access to a new tool in the AEL, you must create a menu entry for it first. Additionally, before a tool can operate in response to a click-action from a portlet, you must first define the click-action in the portlet preferences.

**Related tasks:**

- **“Creating command-line tools” on page 221**
  Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

- **“Setting AEL portlet preferences” on page 173**
  To customize the appearance and setup of the AEL portlet, edit the preferences of the portlet.

- **“Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176**
  To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.

- **“Setting Event Viewer portlet preferences” on page 180**
  To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet, edit the portlet preferences.

- **“Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182**
  Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

**Script tool examples**

Script tool syntax follows JavaScript rules, and you can create many different script tools to extract data from events, as illustrated by these examples.

**Sample: itnmBroadcast Event**

This script tool invokes a JavaScript method from the AEL portlet page and is included in Network Manager IP Edition as default functionality to enable intra-portlet communication.

The script commands are as follows:

```javascript
{$appletparam.iscPortletNamespace}sendPortletEvent({'name': 'http://ibm.com/TIP#BroadcastEvent','client': 'NW','entityId':'{@NmosEntityId}'});
```
The method invoked is uniquely signatured by the use of the \texttt{iscPortletNamespace} applet parameter, which is a unique signature for each instance of the AEL portlet. The \texttt{sendPortletEvent()} method takes a \texttt{itmBroadcastEvent} as a parameter.

In the following example, the \texttt{itmBroadcastEvent} has been configured with the following attributes:

- name: http://ibm.com/TIP#BroadcastEvent
- client: NW
- entityId: {NmosEntityId}

At runtime, \{NmosEntityId\} is resolved into the NmosEntityId field value of the selected event.

**Sample: Event “scratchpad”**

This JavaScript code sample creates a simple “scratchpad” tool and illustrates the potential of script tools.

After you execute the scratchpad tool against a selected event, below the AEL a new area is displayed containing event data, such as a summary of the event, the time of occurrence, the node where the event occurred, and its severity. The event data is added to the page using the Document Object Model (DOM).

The script commands are as follows:

```javascript
var str = 'Event \'{@Serial}\' at Node \'{@Node}\' has Summary \'{@Summary}\', Severity \'{@Severity}\' and last occurred on ' + new Date({@LastOccurrence}*1000);
var scratchpad = document.getElementById("scratchpad_{$appletparam.EntityName}");
if (scratchpad == null)
{
    scratchpad = document.createElement("div");
    scratchpad.setAttribute( "id", "scratchpad_{$appletparam.EntityName}" );
    scratchpad.setAttribute( "style", "overflow:auto;height:200px;border-width:1px;border-style: solid;margin:5px;padding:5px;font-family:Verdana,Arial,Helvetica,sans-serif;font-size:0.7em;" );
    var header= document.createElement("h2");
    header.appendChild( document.createTextNode( "Scratch Pad for entity {$appletparam.EntityName}" ) );
    scratchpad.appendChild( header );
    document.body.appendChild(scratchpad);
}
var div = document.createElement("div");
var dl = document.createElement("dl");
var dt = document.createElement("dt");
var dd = document.createElement("dd");
div.appendChild(dl);
dl.appendChild(dt);
dl.appendChild(dd);
dl.appendChild(dd);
div.appendChild(div);
```

```javascript
var scratchpad.appendChild(div);
```
Related tasks:

"Creating command-line tools” on page 221

Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With
the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a
command prompt and pass field data to an application.

Modifying tools

You can modify the settings of existing CGI, SQL, command-line or script tools.

About this task

To modify a tool:

Procedure

1. In the navigation, click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool
   Creation.
2. In the Tool Creation page, select the tool you want to modify from the list of
tools displayed.
3. Select a tool type from the Type list.
4. For SQL tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:
   SQL Commands
       Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the
       alerts.status table in the ObjectServer.
   Execute for each selected row
       Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected
       rows individually within the AEL.
       Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first
       row in the selection.
       Important: Do not select this checkbox if the SQL instructions explicitly
       state that the command must run against all rows.
   Journal Entry
       Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the
       alerts.journal table in the ObjectServer.
       If you leave the Journal Entry field empty, no journal entry is recorded
       when the tool is run. If you want a blank journal entry to be recorded
       when the tool is run, enter a space or type another character in the
       field.
       Tip: You can use a Multiline String prompt for forced journal entry.
   Execute for each selected row
       Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected
       rows individually within the AEL, and modify all corresponding
       journal entries. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against
       only the first row in the selection, and modify the corresponding
       journal entry.
5. For CGI tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:
   URL
       Type the location of the CGI script. By default this field contains the
       correct path for the cgi-bin directory on the local Web GUI server. The
       $(SERVER) keyword is resolved at runtime to protocol://host:port/
ibm/console/webtop. Append the path with the file name of the script that you want to associate with the tool.

To pass field data to a script on a remote server, replace $(SERVER) with an external URL address. For example http://www.ibm.com.

The $(NGFSERVER) keyword resolves at runtime to protocol://host:port.

**Fields**

Click **Show** and select the ObjectServer columns that you want to pass as arguments to the tool from the **Available** column. If you select more than one data source from the **Data Sources** list, the **Fields** list contains only columns that are common to all data sources.

To pass a full list of all selected rows to a tool, select **Serial**, select the **Execute for each selected row** check box, and clear the **Window for each selected row** check box. At runtime, the **Serial** field resolves to the $selected_rows.Serial parameter. If you select more than one data source from the **Data Sources** list, add the $selected_rows.datasource parameter to distinguish between identical serial numbers that originate in different data sources.

**Method**

Specify the method for submitting field data to the CGI script:

- **GET**: Appends the name-value pairs to the URL, and is therefore useful if you want to bookmark the page containing the output.
- **POST**: Encodes the name-value pairs inside the body of the HTTP request. Note that firewalls can be configured to intercept and destroy this data stream, causing the form to be interpreted as empty.

The CGI script receives the data via a QUERY_STRING environment variable regardless of the method chosen. This differs from the CGI convention where, if a method of POST is used, the script receives data via stdin.

**Open in**

Select either the **New window** or **Specific window** radio button. If you select **Specific window**, type a name for the window in the adjacent text field.

**Execute for each selected row**

Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

**Window for each selected row**

Select this check box to open a separate window for each selected row in the AEL.

6. For command-line tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:

**Platform**

Select this checkbox to specify which client operating system types can access this tool from the AEL.

**Command**

For each selected client operating system, modify the default entry and type the command to launch the target application. Include the full path to the command.

**Tip**: On the Windows operating system use the following construct to ensure the DOS console closes when the tool completes:
start /b cmd /k

In addition you can launch multiple applications from one tool by inserting && between each command. For example, to launch two Internet Explorer windows use the following command: start /b cmd /k cmd iexplore.exe && start / cmd /k iexplore.exe

Execute for each selected row
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

7. For script tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:

   **Script Commands**
   Type the script that you want to use to configure the new tool.

   **Execute for each selected row**
   Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

8. Define access for tools based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

   **Group**
   Select the group that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all groups access to the selected tool, click >>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

   **Class**
   Select the class that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all classes access to the selected tool, click >>.

   **Tip:** Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.

   If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

9. Click **Save**.

**Results**

The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the AEL.
Related tasks:

“Creating command-line tools” on page 221
Create command strings that run a command-line action on a client system. With the command string available as a tool, users can instruct a client system to open a command prompt and pass field data to an application.

“Creating CGI tools” on page 214
Create a CGI tool that runs a CGI script from the AEL to process and return ObjectServer field information.

“Creating SQL tools” on page 218
Create SQL tools that contain SQL instructions for modifying the event data stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status and alerts.journal data tables. The SQL tools can be run from within the Active Event List (AEL).

“Copying tools” on page 231
You can copy any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools to have a copy of the tool, or to modify the configuration of the tool and save it as a new tool. This helps in using an existing tool configuration as a template for new tools.

Renaming tools

You can change the name of any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools.

About this task

If you rename a tool, the names of menu items that link to the tool might also be renamed. If a menu item has the same name as the tool, when you rename the tool the menu item is renamed automatically. If a menu item has a different name than the tool, when you rename the tool the menu item label does not change. In both cases, the link from the menu item to the tool is retained.

To rename a tool

Procedure

1. In the navigation, click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation.
2. In the Tool Creation page, select the tool you want to rename.
3. Enter a new name for the tool in the Name field. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.

   By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
   $ ! £ ¥ & * ( ) + = ~ ` ^ # @ \ ' : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "

   By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial character of tool names:
   / \ * ? " < > | & .

   These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
   webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop

4. Click Save.

   The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the Active Event List (AEL).
Related tasks:
“Renaming menu items” on page 242

You can change the label of a tool that is displayed in the AEL menu. To rename
the tool itself, edit the name of the tool in the Tools Editor.

Copying tools
You can copy any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools to have a
copy of the tool, or to modify the configuration of the tool and save it as a new
tool. This helps in using an existing tool configuration as a template for new tools.

About this task
To copy a tool:

Procedure
1. Click Administration > Event Management > Tool > Tool Creation.
2. In the Tool Creation page, select the tool you want to copy from the list of tools
displayed, and click Copy Tool.
3. In the Name field, type a new name for the tool. The tool name cannot contain
spaces.
   By default, the following characters cannot be used in tool names:
   $ ! £ ¥ ^ & * ( ) + = ¬ ~ @ # % ' ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
   By default, the following characters cannot be used as the initial characters of
tool names:
   / \ * ? " < > | & .
   These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
   .webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop
4. For SQL tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:
   SQL Commands
   Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the
alerts.status table in the ObjectServer.
   Execute for each selected row
   Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected
rows individually within the AEL.
   Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first
row in the selection.
   Important: Do not select this checkbox if the SQL instructions explicitly
state that the command must run against all rows.
   Journal Entry
   Type the SQL commands that you want to use to update the
alerts.journal table in the ObjectServer.
   If you leave the Journal Entry field empty, no journal entry is recorded
when the tool is run. If you want a blank journal entry to be recorded
when the tool is run, enter a space or type another character in the
field.
   Tip: You can use a Multiline String prompt for forced journal entry.
   Execute for each selected row
   Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected
rows individually within the AEL, and modify all corresponding journal entries. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection, and modify the corresponding journal entry.

5. For CGI tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:

- **URL**
  Type the location of the CGI script. By default this field contains the correct path for the cgi-bin directory on the local Web GUI server. The $(SERVER) keyword is resolved at runtime to protocol://host:port/ibm/console/webtop. Append the path with the file name of the script that you want to associate with the tool.

  To pass field data to a script on a remote server, replace $(SERVER) with an external URL address. For example http://www.ibm.com.

  The $(NGFSERVER) keyword resolves at runtime to protocol://host:port.

- **Fields**
  Click Show and select the ObjectServer columns that you want to pass as arguments to the tool from the **Available** column. If you select more than one data source from the **Data Sources** list, the **Fields** list contains only columns that are common to all data sources.

  To pass a full list of all selected rows to a tool, select **Serial**, select the **Execute for each selected row** check box, and clear the **Window for each selected row** check box. At runtime, the **Serial** field resolves to the $selected_rows.Serial parameter. If you select more than one data source from the **Data Sources** list, add the $selected_rows.datasource parameter to distinguish between identical serial numbers that originate in different data sources.

- **Method**
  Specify the method for submitting field data to the CGI script:
  - **GET**: Appends the name-value pairs to the URL, and is therefore useful if you want to bookmark the page containing the output.
  - **POST**: Encodes the name-value pairs inside the body of the HTTP request. Note that firewalls can be configured to intercept and destroy this data stream, causing the form to be interpreted as empty.

  The CGI script receives the data via a QUERY_STRING environment variable regardless of the method chosen. This differs from the CGI convention where, if a method of POST is used, the script receives data via stdin.

- **Open in**
  Select either the **New window** or **Specific window** radio button. If you select **Specific window**, type a name for the window in the adjacent text field.

- **Execute for each selected row**
  Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

- **Window for each selected row**
  Select this check box to open a separate window for each selected row in the AEL.

6. For command-line tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:
Platform
Select this checkbox to specify which client operating system types can access this tool from the AEL.

Command
For each selected client operating system, modify the default entry and type the command to launch the target application. Include the full path to the command.

Tip: On the Windows operating system use the following construct to ensure the DOS console closes when the tool completes:

```
start /b cmd /k
```

In addition you can launch multiple applications from one tool by inserting `&&` between each command. For example, to launch two Internet Explorer windows use the following command: `start /b cmd /k cmd iexplore.exe && start /cmd /k iexplore.exe`

Execute for each selected row
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

7. For script tool types: To modify the tool, use the following fields:

Script Commands
Type the script that you want to use to configure the new tool.

Execute for each selected row
Select this checkbox if you want the tool to run against all selected rows individually within the AEL. Clear the check box if you want the tool to run against only the first row in the selection.

8. Define access for the tool based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event against which the tool is deployed:

Group
Select the group that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all groups access to the selected tool, click >>. Users must be members of a selected group to use the tool. If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays all groups from all selected data sources.

Class
Select the class that you want to access the tool and click >. To give all classes access to the selected tool, click >>.

Tip: Each event in the ObjectServer has an associated Class field. The value of this field is set by the event source. The Class field typically describes what kind of device an event comes from. If the class of an event matches any of the classes you select, the tool is available when the user selects the event in the AEL.

If you selected multiple data sources, this list displays classes from all selected data sources. Each time you select a different data source the list of available classes is updated accordingly. Any previously selected classes are cleared to allow new classes to be selected.

9. Click Save.

Results
The tool appears as an entry in the list of available tools and is now available for use in the AEL.
What to do next

For users to have access to a new tool in the AEL, you must create a menu entry for it first.

Related tasks:

“Modifying tools” on page 227

You can modify the settings of existing CGI, SQL, command-line or script tools.

Deleting tools

You can delete any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools to remove it from the available tools in the AEL.

About this task

Procedure

1. Click Administration > Event Management Tool > Tool Creation. The Tool Creation page is displayed.
2. Select the specific tool you want to delete from the list of tools displayed, and click Delete Tool.
3. Click OK when prompted for confirmation. A message is displayed confirming that the tool has been deleted, and the tool is removed from the list of tools.

Tool runtime parameters

Tools can contain one or more runtime parameters. The values of these parameters are determined when the tool is executed.

@fieldname

fieldname is the name of a field in an ObjectServer alerts.status table. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to the value of the fieldname of the selected row.

$selected_rows.fieldname

fieldname is the name of a field in the alerts.status table in an ObjectServer. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to a comma-separated string of the field values of all the selected rows.

If your environment uses multiple data sources, use the $selected_rows.serial parameter in combination with the $selected_rows.datasource parameter. This combination ensures that no duplicate serials are returned by tools because a unique combination of serial and data source is returned.

$prompt.promptname

promptname is the name of a defined Web GUI prompt. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to the prompt value. If a prompt contains multiple values, the value can be a comma-separated list.

%username

username is resolved to the user name of the user. If the user is not an ObjectServer user, the string #unknownUser is substituted.

%datasource

datasource is resolved to the name of the data source from which events are received.
%cookie.cookiename

*cookiename* is resolved to the value of the cookie named *cookiename*. This value might be an empty string if not available.

$appletparam.parametername

*parametername* is the name of an applet parameter on an AEL, or a portlet parameter in an Event Viewer. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to the value of the applet parameter. This value might be an empty string if not available.

$selected_rows.datasource

Identifies the data source in which the row originates. This parameter does not resolve to an ObjectServer field. Use this parameter for tools that are to be run against events from multiple data sources to distinguish between identical data from different data sources.

CONVERSION(@fieldname)

*fieldname* is the name of a field in an ObjectServer alerts.conversion table. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to the conversion value of the field value for the selected row.

Example: Alert prioritized from CONVERSION(@Severity)

CONVERSION($selected_rows.fieldname)

*fieldname* is the name of a field in an ObjectServer alerts.status table. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to a comma-separated string of the conversion values of the field values for all selected rows.

CONVERSION($prompt.promptname)

*promptname* is the name of a prompt. When the tool is executed, this variable is resolved to the prompt label (as opposed to the prompt value).

Example: Alert assigned to CONVERSION($prompt.userassign)

**Important:** If $selected_rows.fieldname is used (with or without CONVERSION), clear the **Execute for each selected row** check box in the tool settings to avoid performance degradation in the ObjectServer.

**Specifying parameters**

For CGI/URL, Command and Script tools, enclose these parameters (where supported) in braces. For example:

```
start cmd /k %WINDIR%\SYSTEM32\PING.EXE {$prompt.hostname}
```

For conversions, the CONVERSION keyword is enclosed in the braces. Braces are not necessary for parameters in SQL tools (including in the Journal component).

**Parameters supported by each type of tool**

The following table shows the parameters that each type of tool supports. For more information, see the footnotes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>SQL (including Journal)</th>
<th>CGI/URL</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@fieldname</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 9. Customizing AELs 235
### Table 22. Parameters supported by each type of tool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>SQL (including Journal)</th>
<th>CGI/URL</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$selected_rows.fieldname</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$prompt.promptname</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%username</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%datasource</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%cookie.cookiename</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$appletparam.parametername</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$selected_rows.datasource</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONVERSION(@fieldname)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 22. Parameters supported by each type of tool (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>SQL (including Journal)</th>
<th>CGI/URL</th>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Script</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONVERSION($selected_rows.fieldname)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y (This parameter can also be implicitly inserted through the selection of fields during CGI/URL tool creation. At run time, the field resolves to the CONVERSION.$selected_rows.fieldname parameter.)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONVERSION($prompt.promptname)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customizing AEL Menus

You can change the content of the menus of the Active Event List (AEL). You can add tool entries to the menus, create new sub-menus, and modify or delete menu items. A tool can include a prompt window or pop-up menu for the user to enter information, and you can edit these prompts or create new prompts.

The Alerts and Tools menus

The Alerts and Tools menus are configurable menus that can be accessed from the AEL. The Alerts menu contains a number of SQL tools you can use to interact with alert data and manipulate the data. By default, the Tools menu contains CGI tools and local (command-line) tools.

The Alerts menu can be accessed both from the AEL toolbar and by right-clicking an event in the AEL. The Tools menu can be accessed from the AEL toolbar.

You can add your own tools and sub-menus to either the Alerts menu or the Tools menu. To do this you must use the Tools Editor to create the tool you want to add, and then add the tools to the menus using the Menus Editor.

Tools in the Tools menu can be configured with access criteria that apply to users and events. Tools are visible only if the access criteria applied to them are met, or when no criteria are set because no groups or classes have been defined.

If multiple events are selected in the AEL, all access criteria must be satisfied for all selected events for a tool to be displayed.
By default, no access criteria are defined for any tools. Tools that have no access criteria defined are displayed for all users for all events. Changes in access criteria take effect when the AEL is reloaded, without the need to restart the Web GUI server.

The default content of the AEL menu bar cannot be changed. You cannot create new top-level menus.

**Related tasks:**

[“Creating event management tools” on page 205](#)

You can create and administer CGI, SQL, command line and script tools to be used in the AEL. You can also configure prompts that are displayed to users in the Active Event List (AEL) when performing actions with tools.

**Adding tools to a menu**

If you have created a new tool, you need to add the tool as an entry to an AEL menu in order to use the tool. You can also add other existing tools to menus.

**About this task**

To add tools to a menu:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**, and click **Menu Configuration**.
2. From the **Available menus** list, select a menu to which you want to add a tool and click **Modify**. The **Menus Editor** window is displayed.
3. Select **tool** from the **Available items** list to view a list of available tools.
4. Add an existing tool to the selected menu or create a new tool and then add the tool to the selected menu:
   - **a.** Select a tool from the list and click **Add selected item**. The tool is added to the list in the **Current items** pane on the left side of the page.
   - **b.** Select **<new tool>** from the list and click **Add selected item**. The Tool Configuration window opens. Define the new tool using the **Tool Configuration** and **Access Criteria** dialogs and click **Save**. Close the Save Confirmation window to return to the Menus Editor window. The tool is added to the **Current items** list and **Available items** lists.

   **Tip:** If you have several tools in one menu, you can make the menu easier to read by adding a separator. Select **<separator>** from the **Available items** list and click **Add selected item**.
5. Click **Save**. The menu is now updated in the AEL, and is added as an entry in **Available menus**.

**Related tasks:**

[“Creating event management tools” on page 205](#)

You can create and administer CGI, SQL, command line and script tools to be used in the AEL. You can also configure prompts that are displayed to users in the Active Event List (AEL) when performing actions with tools.
Modifying existing tools

You can edit the tools available in the menus.

About this task

To edit a tool menu entry:

Procedure

1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools, and click Menu Configuration.
2. Select the menu that contains the tool you want to modify and click Modify. The Menus Editor window is displayed.
3. Select the tool you want to edit from the Current items list and click the Edit button. The Tool Configuration window is displayed.
4. Edit the tool using the Tool Configuration and Access Criteria dialogs.
5. Click Save and close the Save Confirmation window to return to the Menus Editor window. The tool is saved with the changed settings.

Related tasks:

“Modifying tools” on page 227
You can modify the settings of existing CGI, SQL, command-line or script tools.

Creating submenus

You can create submenus of the Alerts and Tools AEL menus. Each submenu can contain tool entries, separator bars, and other submenus. A submenu can be used in different menus.

About this task

To create a new submenu:

Procedure

1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools, and click Menu Configuration.
2. Click New. The Menu Editor window is displayed, with the Name and Label fields and Current items list blank.
3. Enter the properties for the new submenu using the following fields and buttons:

   Name  Type a name for the new submenu. Do not use spaces or special characters in the name.

   Label  Type a label for the submenu. This is the text that is displayed in the AEL.

   Mnemonic  Select a key entry if you want users to be able to display this menu in the AEL using the keyboard shortcut of Alt and selected character.

   Available items  Select tool to list all available tools you can then add to the menu, or select menu to list all available menus you can add to the menu. Also, you can select <separator> to add a line between menus and tools. For example, if you have several tools in one menu, you can make the menu easier to read by adding a separator.
Select the tool or menu you want to make available in the menu and click Add selected item.

Current items
Lists all the tools and menus added to the menu. Select the tool or menu you want to remove from the menu and click Remove selected item. Use the arrow buttons to the right of this list to change the display order of the tools and menus within the menu.

Rename
Select a tool in the Current items list and click this button to change the name of the tool as it appears in the AEL.

Label
Type a label for the tool. This is the text that appears in the AEL.

Mnemonic
Select a key entry if you want users to be able to display this menu in the AEL using the keyboard shortcut of Alt and selected character.

ShortCut
Type a shortcut character if you want users to be able to display this menu in the AEL using the keyboard shortcut of Ctrl and the character provided here.

Restriction: The rename options are available only for tools.

Edit
Select a tool or menu in the Current items list and click Edit to modify the tool or menu settings. If you have a tool selected, the Tool Configuration window opens. If you have a menu selected, you are asked to save changes and then redirected to the Menus Editor where you can modify the setup of the menu.

4. Click Save and Ok. The new submenu is displayed in the list of available menus.

Related tasks:
"Adding submenus to a menu"
You can customize what submenus are available in the Alerts and Tools AEL menus.

Adding submenus to a menu
You can customize what submenus are available in the Alerts and Tools AEL menus.

About this task
To add a submenu to a menu:

Procedure
1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools, and click Menu Configuration.
2. Select the menu to which you want to add the sub-menu and click Modify.
3. In the Available items list, select menu. A list of available menus is displayed.
4. You can add an existing menu as a sub-menu or create a new menu and add the menu as a sub-menu:
a. Select the menu you want to add and click **Add selected item**. The menu is added to the list in the **Current items** list. Optionally, configure the sub-menu using the **Edit** button.
b. Select `<new menu>` from the list and click **Add selected item**. You are asked whether you want to save the changes to the menu that you are modifying. Click **Cancel** if you do not want to add a new menu, click **Yes** to save changes, or **No** to continue without saving changes. The Menu Editor window is displayed for the new menu that you are adding. Define the new menu.

**Note:** Only menu entries that are logically permitted by the nesting rules are displayed in the list. If the entry you are modifying is a sub-menu itself, the menu or menus above it are not shown.

5. Click **Save** and **Ok**. The new menu is added as a sub-menu to the menu that you chose. The new menu is visible in the list of available menus.

**Related tasks:**

"Creating submenus" on page 239

You can create submenus of the **Alerts** and **Tools** AEL menus. Each submenu can contain tool entries, separator bars, and other submenus. A submenu can be used in different menus.

### Deleting submenus

You can remove any submenu created by users. You cannot delete the **Alerts** or **Tools** menus.

**About this task**

To delete a menu:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**, and click **Menu Configuration**.
2. Select the menu that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

### Removing items from a menu

You can remove submenus, tools, and separators from an existing menu. Removing a tool or submenu from a menu does not delete the tool or submenu.

**About this task**

To remove items from a menu:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**, and click **Menu Configuration**.
2. Select the menu from which you want to remove items.
3. Click **Modify**. The Menus Editor window is displayed.
4. Select the item that you want to remove from the **Current items** list and click **Remove selected item**.
Tip: If you select an entry in the list, an icon displayed above the list to the right indicates whether that item is a tool, a menu, or a separator.

5. Click **Save** to save your changes.

**Related tasks:**

- **“Deleting tools” on page 234**
  You can delete any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools to remove it from the available tools in the AEL.

- **“Deleting submenus” on page 241**
  You can remove any submenu created by users. You cannot delete the **Alerts** or **Tools** menus.

### Changing the order of items in a menu

You can move items up and down within a menu to create a customized order of all items.

**About this task**

To change the order in which items are displayed in a menu:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**, and click **Menu Configuration**.
2. Select the menu that you want to modify.
3. Click **Modify**. The Menus Editor window is displayed.
4. Select the item that you want to move from the **Current items** list.
   - Click **Top** to move the item to the top of the menu.
   - Click **Bottom** to move the item to the bottom of the menu.
   - Click **Up** to move the item one place up in the menu.
   - Click **Down** to move the item one place down in the menu.

   **Tip:** If you select an entry in the list, an icon displayed above the list to the right indicates whether that item is a tool, a menu, or a separator.

5. Click **Save** to save your changes.

### Renaming menu items

You can change the label of a tool that is displayed in the AEL menu. To rename the tool itself, edit the name of the tool in the Tools Editor.

**About this task**

To change the label for a tool menu item:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**, and click **Menu Configuration**.
2. Select the menu that you want to modify.
3. Click **Modify**. The Menus Editor window opens.
4. Select the tool menu item you want to modify from the **Current items** list and click **Rename**. A separate window is displayed.
Tip: If you select a submenu or other item that you cannot rename in this way, the Rename button is grayed out.

5. Edit the following fields:

   Label  Type a label for the tool. This is the text that appears in the AEL.

   Mnemonic
   Select a key entry if you want users to be able to display this menu in the AEL using the keyboard shortcut of Alt and selected character.

   Shortcut
   Type a shortcut character if you want users to be able to display this menu in the AEL using the keyboard shortcut of Ctrl and the character provided here.

Restriction: The rename options are available only for tools.

6. Click Save to save your changes.

Related tasks:
“Renaming tools” on page 230

You can change the name of any of the existing CGI, SQL, script or command-line tools.
Chapter 10. Customizing Event Viewers

You can customize the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer. In addition you can define relationships for use in organizing the event list.

Setting the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer

You can configure the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer window. For example, you can specify the time interval between automatic refreshes of the event list.

Procedure

The following customization features of the AEL also affect the appearance and behavior of the Event Viewer:

- The refresh rate
- The Show Colors feature
- Changing the font color of an acknowledged event
- Changing how event severity is depicted

In addition, the following event list user preferences also affect the capabilities of the Event Viewer that are available to the user:

- Allow filter and view selection
- Allow filter builder access
- Show basic event information
- Show event details
- Show journals

Related tasks:

- "Changing the AEL refresh rate" on page 195
  You can change the time period in seconds after which the AEL is automatically refreshed on a regular basis by the Web GUI server.

- "Modifying the AEL font and window settings" on page 200
  You can set the AEL font type, and specify the color and toolbar preferences for AELs.

- "Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user" on page 101
  Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.

- "Changing the font color for an event after it has been acknowledged" on page 205
  You can set the color of the event font to change to after the event has been acknowledged.

- "Changing how event severity is depicted in the AEL" on page 203
  You can specify how the severity of events is displayed in the AEL: as icons, as text, or as a combination of both icons and text.

- "Setting Event Viewer portlet preferences" on page 180
  To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Viewer portlet, edit the portlet preferences.
Defining event relationships

Use event relationships to organize an Event Viewer. Event relationships group events in the list by the relationships between them.

For example, some events can be considered to be the root causes of problems and some events can be considered to be symptoms of those problems. You can define a hierarchical event relationship in which root cause events are treated as parent events, and are displayed at the top level of the hierarchy, and symptom events are treated as child events and are displayed below root cause events in the hierarchy.

Use the Relationship Definitions portlet to define and manage event relationships. You can create, edit, and delete relationships.

About this task

The relationship definition contains two fields, **Column** and **Key column**, that define the parent-child relationship. You assign fields from the alerts.status table to the **Column** field and **Key column** field. The **Key column** field defines which field of the alerts.status table uniquely identifies parent events. In child events, the **Column** field is set to the value of the **Key column** field of the parent event, to indicate which event is the parent of the child events.

The alerts.status field that you set in the **Column** field is most effective if the field contains unique, numeric values only. It is possible to set a text field, but the performance of the Event Viewer might be impaired. If you set a field that does not contain unique values, duplicate tree structures are displayed in the Event Viewer, to account for the non-uniqueness of the field values.

The Web GUI is supplied with a predefined event relationship. This relationship organizes an Event Viewer by root causes and symptoms for events that are generated by IBM Tivoli Network Manager. Additional configuration is shipped with the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus server components that creates a relationship between root-cause and symptom events that originate from a virtual environment. If the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus deployment is set up to monitor virtual events, you can apply this relationship to the Web GUI by running the WAAPI client on a WAAPI command file.

Procedure

To create or edit an event relationship:

1. In the Relationship Definitions page, click **Create New Relationship** or select an existing relationship and click **Modify Selected Relationship**.
2. Complete the following fields:
   - **Name**  
     Provide an identifier for this relationship that is unique among all the defined relationships. The identifier cannot include spaces.
   - **Display name**  
     Provide a name that users see when selecting a relationship to apply to the Event Viewer.
   - **Description**  
     Provide a description of the relationship.
   - **Data sources**  
     Select the data sources that this relationship uses:
a. Click the arrow next to Data sources to reveal a list of the available data sources.
b. Set the check box for each data source to include in this relationship.

Column
Select the column that defines the relationship.

Key column
Select the column that is the key for the column selected in Column.

3. Save and close the Relationship Definitions page.
4. Use the View Builder to add the relationship to an existing view, or create a new view and add the relationship to that view.
5. Apply the view in which you defined the relationship to the Event Viewer and test that the tree-structure is displayed and contains the expected parent-child event relationship.
6. If you do not want the fields defined in the column and key column of the event relationship to be visible in the Event Viewer, re-edit the view and hide these fields.

Example

The shipped configuration for Network Manager IP Edition uses the following fields of the alerts.status table to define a parent-child relationship between symptom and root-cause events.

NmosSerial
This field is set as the column. If an event is a symptom event, the Serial value of the root-cause event is assigned to the NmosSerial field. If the event is a root-cause event, the NmoSerial field is empty.

Serial
This field is set as the key column, so is the parent of the parent child-relationship.

To show how this configuration works, consider the following example: An event with a Serial value of 35 is identified as a root-cause event. Events with the Serial values 23, 45, and 102, are identified as symptoms of the root-cause. In the Event Viewer, Serial 35 is the root of the tree structure and 23, 45, 102 are the subnodes. The NmosSerial value of events 23, 45, and 102 is 35, to indicate that they are symptoms of the root-cause.

What to do next

If your deployment includes IBM Tivoli Netcool/Impact, you can perform further event enrichment on the events in the relationship.
Chapter 11. Filtering event information

Network events typically create many alerts that are not of immediate importance to the personnel monitoring the system. Use filters and views to control the event information that is displayed to users.

Filters

Filters constrain the rows returned by a data source by applying SQL correlation conditions to the field data in the data source. Filters can be applied to the following event displays in the Web GUI: the Active Event List (AEL), Lightweight Event List (LEL), the Event Viewer, Table View, and monitor boxes on an Event Dashboard. To create and edit filters, you use an HTML utility called the Filter Builder.

Filters can be created by Web GUI administrators who have the ncw_admin role, and by users who have the ncw_user role and the netcool rw role.

**Important:** Each filter requires at least one data source. From this data source, the Filter Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the SQL query. If you select multiple data sources, the Filter Builder displays only the fields that are common to all those data sources. The data sources selected in the Filter Builder are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data sources for event data retrieval in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

When a filter is applied to an event list, only the alerts that meet the criteria are displayed. A view may be assigned to a filter. If you do not assign a view to a filter, a default view is assigned.

The following example shows a filter:

```
Node like '^[a-zA-Z].*' and Severity > 3
```

This statement matches all alerts where the node starts with an alphabetic character and the severity of this data is greater than minor, that is, major or critical events.

Filter categories

Filter categories control user access to filters, and are used for data migrated from IBM Tivoli Netcool/Webtop.

**Global filters**

Global filters are accessible to all users. By default, a user who is not an administrator can create, copy, and edit global filters.

You can modify global filters and copy them to the user profiles of other users. You can also create new global filters and delete them.

**User filters**

User filters are specific to a particular user; only that user and the administrator can access this category of filter. In the Filter Builder, user filters are contained in a list called **My Filters.**
You can access the filters that all users have in their user profiles, and create filters in the profiles of users. In the Available Filters list, these filters are classified as username Filters.

Group filters
Group filters are accessible to all members of a user group. Group filters enable the creation of filters tailored to the needs of specific groups of user, such as network operators. In the Available filters list, these filters are classified as groupname Filters.

System filters
System filters are accessible to administrators only. An administrator can create, edit, and delete a system filter. In the AEL, only administrators can select system filters from the Filters list. However, if the AEL was launched with a system filter already applied, non-administrators can view and select this system filter from the Filters list. A Web GUI installation upgraded or migrated from Netcool/Webtop uses system filters to hold entity data migrated from Netcool/Webtop.

Filter collections
Filter collections are logical groupings of filters. They are also used for migrated data from Netcool/Webtop. A Web GUI installation upgraded or migrated from Netcool/Webtop uses filter collections to hold the data migrated from entity groups.

Only global and system filters can be members of a filter collection. To edit a filter collection, your user must have the ncw_admin role. You use the Web GUI Administration Application Program Interface (WAAPI) client to create or delete filter collections.

Dependent filters
Dependent filters concatenate the SQL statements from multiple filters using the SQL OR operator. Dependent filters do not have their own SQL filter statements; they use only the statements from other filters.

Before you delete a filter, you must make sure that the filter is not used in any dependent filters. Otherwise, the dependent filter may produce incorrect event data.

Transient filters
Transient filters exist for the duration of your current session only.

Related tasks:
- “Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user” on page 101
  Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.
Views

*Views* constrain the columns displayed in an Active Event List (AEL) and the Event Viewer. You can control the order in which columns are displayed, lock columns in the display, and control the sorting of information in the columns. Views in the Web GUI differ from the views that you can configure in Tivoli Integrated Portal. Views in Tivoli Integrated Portal are a defined set of tasks that are displayed in the console navigation pane.

Views can also be applied to the deprecated Lightweight Event List (LEL) and Table View.

When you create a view, you must select at least one data source. The data source is used to control the columns that can be included in the view (the columns represent the fields in the data source). If you select multiple data sources, you can select fields from all data sources.

**View categories**

Views are either accessible to all users, or are assigned to a user profile. Access to views is controlled as follows:

**Global views**

These views are accessible to all users. As a read-write user, or a read-only user, you can copy global views to your user profile, where you can modify the views.

You can modify global views and copy them to the user profiles of other users. You can also create new global views.

**User views**

These views are stored in your user profile; only you and the administrator can access these profiles. User views are contained in a list called My Views.

You can access the views that all users have in their user profiles, and create views in the profiles of users. In the Available Views list, these views are classified as *username Views*. To assign views to multiple users, you can make copies of existing views and assign them to a user group. The views remain associated with the users in the group, not with the group itself.

**System views**

In the View Builder, access to system views, and the ability to create, edit, and delete system views is restricted to administrators. In the AEL, only administrators can select system views from the Views list. If the AEL was launched with a system view already applied, non-administrators can view and select this system view from the Views list. If your Web GUI installation was upgraded or migrated from Netcool/Webtop, system views are present after upgrade or migration. The system views contain entity view data migrated from Netcool/Webtop.
**Setting up filters for event data**

Use the Filter Builder to apply filters to an event list or Event Dashboard portlet. Administrators and read-write users can create and edit filters.

**Related concepts:**

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

“Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

**Filter Builder overview**

The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.

**Important:** Each filter requires at least one data source. From this data source, the Filter Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the SQL query. If you select multiple data sources, the Filter Builder displays only the fields that are common to all those data sources. The data sources selected in the Filter Builder are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data sources for event data retrieval in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

You can use the following modes to create filters; the Filter Builder displays a tab for each mode.

**Basic**
Provides a set of lists and text fields that you use to specify the filter conditions. To build the conditions, select a field from the specified data source or data sources, select a comparator, and type a numeric or string value. The value is the filtering criteria for the field. If you use basic mode to construct your filter, you can view the resulting SQL in the text field on the **Advanced** tab.

**Advanced**
Provides a text field where you can enter ObjectServer SQL syntax.

If you create a filter in advanced mode, it might not be possible to express the SQL syntax in the fields on the **Basic** tab. Once you save a filter created in advanced mode, the **Basic** tab is removed for that filter.

For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Administration Guide*.

**Dependent.**
This tab is displayed only for dependent filters. On this tab, use the **Search** fields to identify the filters that you want to use for the dependencies.

After you have identified the required filters, use the buttons to move the...
filters from the Available filters list to the Selected dependencies list. In a dependent filter, the SQL WHERE statements of each filter are concatenated by using OR statements.

Filter Builder metrics

A metric is an aggregate statistic that can be derived from the events that match a filter to display a useful figure, for example, an average, count, or sum of all field values. When a filter is displayed using a monitor box linked to an AEL, the metric information obtained from the set of events that match the filter is used for this display.

User capabilities

The privileges that each user has determines the operations they can carry out on filters, as the following table shows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User privilege</th>
<th>Capabilities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ncw_user       | A user with the ncw_user privilege can do the following:  
|                | • Add, edit and delete their personal filters. That is the filters that appear on the My Filters list.  
|                | • By default, add and edit global filters.  
|                | The value of the users.global.filter.mode property in webgui-home/etc/server.init determines whether a user can add and edit global filters. When the property is set to 1 a user can add and edit global filters. When it is set to 0 a user cannot add or edit global filters.  
|                | • By default, add and edit group filters.  
|                | The value of the users.group.filter.mode property in webgui-home/etc/server.init determines whether a user can add and edit group filters. When the property is set to 1 a user can add and edit group filters. When it is set to 0 a user cannot add or edit group filters. |
| ncw_admin      | A user with the ncw_admin privilege can add, edit, and delete any filter, including the filters in any user's My Filters list. |

Related concepts:

“Filters” on page 249
Filters constrain the rows returned by a data source by applying SQL correlation conditions to the field data in the data source. Filters can be applied to the following event displays in the Web GUI: the Active Event List (AEL), Lightweight Event List (LEL), the Event Viewer, Table View, and monitor boxes on an Event Dashboard. To create and edit filters, you use an HTML utility called the Filter Builder.

“Filter Builder overview” on page 252
The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.
Creating and editing filters

Use the Filter Builder to create and edit filters for event data.

Related concepts:
“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Creating and editing filters in basic mode

To create event filter conditions using lists that constrain your selection of values from the data source and the available comparators, use the Filter Builder in basic mode.

About this task

To create and edit filters in basic mode:

Procedure

1. Open the Filter Builder.
2. To create a new filter, click New Filter.
3. To edit an existing filter.
   a. Select the list that contains the required filter.
   b. After the list has refreshed, click the filter.
   If you are editing an existing filter, omit step 4.
4. Select the users you want to grant access to the filter and click OK.

   Note: If a new user type needs access to an existing user specific filter, you must first create a copy of the filter, and then reassign the user type.

   • Public: Select global to create a filter accessible to all users. Select system to create a filter accessible to Web GUI administrators only. All Web GUI users can select and copy global filters.

   • Users: Select the users that have access to this filter. For each of the selected users, a copy of the filter appears in the My Filters list.

   The value of the users.reload.mode property in webgui-home/etc/server.init determines which users appear in this section of the dialog. When this property is set to 0, the section contains all system users. When set to 1, the section contains only users that have the ncw_* roles.

5. Specify the general properties for the filter:

   Filter Name
   Type a name for the filter. The filter name cannot contain spaces. In each category of filter, filters must have unique names. However filters in different categories (for example, System and User) can have the same name.

   By default, a filter name cannot contain the following characters:
   $ ! £ ¤ ¥ & * ( ) + = – ~ # @ ' : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
   These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
   webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop.

   Default View
   Select the view to associate with the filter. The default view is applied when you launch an AEL with the filter but do not specify a view.
The default view is also applied when you launch an AEL from an Event Dashboard by clicking the monitor box that is associated with the filter.

**Collection**
For global filters and system filters only: select the filter collection or collections to which you want to add the filter.

**Description**
Type a description that helps identify the purpose of the filter.

**Data Source**
Select the data source or data sources that contain the fields against which you want to run queries. Click **Show Data Sources** to display a list of available data sources.

*Important*: Each filter requires at least one data source. From this data source, the Filter Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the SQL query. If you select multiple data sources, the Filter Builder displays only the fields that are common to all those data sources. The data sources selected in the Filter Builder are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data sources for event data retrieval in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

If you want to add a data source to an existing filter, make sure that the alerts.status table of the new data source contains all the fields that the filter specifies. If you add a data source that does not contain all the specified fields, the filter might return erroneous results.

The default data source corresponds to the default ObjectServer specified in the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` configuration file.

6. Click the **Basic** tab and, in the first row, create a filter condition as follows:
   a. From the **Field** list, select a field from the specified data source.
   b. From the **Comparator** list, select a comparator.
   c. In the **Value field**, type a numeric data type value, or a string data type value. The data types must correspond to those in the ObjectServer field. String data type entries in the **Value** field must be contained in single quotes.
   d. Optional: Use the LIKE and NOT LIKE comparators for regular expression pattern-matching metacharacters against the entry in the **Value** field.

   **Restriction**: Do not use the `getdate` expression in the **Value** field. If you want to apply the `getdate` expression, use advanced mode instead.

7. To add additional filter conditions, click **New Condition**. You can add as many filter conditions as required.

8. Use the radio buttons under **Match** to specify how the filter conditions combine in aggregate:
   - Select **And** to trigger the filter only if all the conditions are met.
   - Select **Or** to trigger the filter if any of the conditions are met.

   See "Sample SQL statements" on page 256 for sample SQL statements that are generated based on the radio button selected.

9. Optional: To preview the literal SQL WHERE clause output, click **Advanced**.

10. Click **Metric** and use the following fields to set the metric value:

    **Label** Type a title for the metric.
Function
Select a function to perform on the field data. The following functions are available:

- **Average**: Calculates the average value of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
- **Count**: Calculates the total number the records that match the filter. The selected field is not used for this calculation.
- **Sum**: Calculates the total of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
- **Minimum**: Returns the lowest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.
- **Maximum**: Returns the highest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.

Field
Select a field from the list that the function is to act on. The list contains all available fields in the alerts.status table of the data source.

11. Click **Save** to save the filter and continue working in the Filter Builder, or click **Save and Close** to save the filter and close the Filter Builder.

Sample SQL statements
In step [8 on page 255](#), when the **And** radio button is selected, the filter rows create the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT * from alerts.status where Node = 'node1' and Severity > 4 and Summary like 'alert on .*'
```

When the **Or** radio button is selected, the filter rows create the following SQL statement:

```
SELECT * from alerts.status where Node = 'node1' or Severity > 4 or Summary like 'alert on .*'
```

Creating and editing filters in advanced mode
Specify event data filtering conditions in ObjectServer SQL syntax.

About this task
For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Administration Guide*.

To create or edit a filter using advanced mode:

**Procedure**
1. Open the Filter Builder.
2. To create a new filter, click **New Filter**.
3. To edit an existing filter:
   a. Select the list that contains the required filter.
   b. After the list has refreshed, click the filter.
   
   If you are editing an existing filter, omit step 4.
4. Select the users you want to grant access to the filter and click **OK**.
   - **Public**: Select **global** to create a filter accessible to all users. Select **system** to create a filter accessible to Web GUI administrators only. All Web GUI users can select and copy global filters.
• Users: Select the users that have access to this filter. For each of the selected users, a copy of the filter appears in the My Filters list.

The value of the `users.reload.mode` property in `webgui-home/etc/server.init` determines which users appear in this section of the dialog. When this property is set to 0, the section contains all system users. When set to 1, the section contains only users that have the ncw_* roles.

5. Use the following fields and buttons to set the general properties for the filter:

**Filter Name**
Type a name for the filter. The filter name cannot contain spaces. In each category of filter, filters must have unique names. However filters in different categories (for example, System and User) can have the same name.

By default, a filter name cannot contain the following characters:
$ ! £ % & * ( ) + = ~ ^ \ _ * ; < > [ ] | / \ , "

These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
`webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop`.

**Default View**
Select the view to associate with the filter. The default view is applied when you launch an AEL with the filter but do not specify a view. The default view is also applied when you launch an AEL from an Event Dashboard by clicking the monitor box that is associated with the filter.

**Collection**
For global filters and system filters only: select the filter collection or collections to which you want to add the filter.

**Description**
Type a description that helps identify the purpose of the filter.

**Data Source**
Select the data source or data sources that contain the fields against which you want to run queries. Click Show Data Sources to display a list of available data sources.

**Important:** Each filter requires at least one data source. From this data source, the Filter Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the SQL query. If you select multiple data sources, the Filter Builder displays only the fields that are common to all those data sources. The data sources selected in the Filter Builder are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data sources for event data retrieval in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

If you want to add a data source to an existing filter, make sure that the alerts.status table of the new data source contains all the fields that the filter specifies. If you add a data source that does not contain all the specified fields, the filter might return erroneous results.

The default data source corresponds to the default ObjectServer specified in the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` configuration file.

6. Click Advanced.

7. In the **SQL Where clause** text field, enter any valid ObjectServer SQL WHERE clause.

For brevity, the SELECT part of the statement is omitted and you supply only
the WHERE clause; the view associated with the filter determines the columns in the alerts.status table that are selected.

8. Click **Metric** and use the following fields to set the metric value:

   **Label**  
   Type a title for the metric.

   **Function**  
   Select a function to perform on the field data. The following functions are available:
   - **Average**: Calculates the average value of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
   - **Count**: Calculates the total number the records that match the filter. The selected field is not used for this calculation.
   - **Sum**: Calculates the total of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
   - **Minimum**: Returns the lowest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.
   - **Maximum**: Returns the highest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.

   **Field**  
   Select a field from the list that the function is to act on. The list contains all available fields in the alerts.status table of the data source.

9. Click **Save** to save the filter and continue working in the Filter Builder, or click **Save and Close** to save the filter and close the Filter Builder.

### Creating and editing dependent filters

To aggregate the SQL WHERE clauses of multiple filters by using the OR operator, create a dependent filter.

**About this task**

**Tip**: All the filters that you use in a dependent filter must contains an SQL WHERE statement.

To create or edit a dependent filter:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Filter Builder.
2. Create or edit a filter:
   - To create a new filter, click **New Filter**.
   - To edit an existing filter select the list that contains the required filter, and then select the filter from the refreshed list. You can omit step 3.
3. Select the users you want to grant access to the filter and click **OK**.
   - **Public**: Select **global** to create a filter accessible to all users. Select **system** to create a filter accessible to Web GUI administrators only. All Web GUI users can select and copy global filters.
   - **Users**: Select the users that have access to this filter. For each of the selected users, a copy of the filter appears in the **My Filters** list.

   The value of the `users.reload.mode` property in `webgui-home/etc/server.init` determines which users appear in this section of the dialog. When this property is set to 0, the section contains all system users. When set to 1, the section contains only users that have the ncw_* roles.

4. Use the following fields to set the general properties for the filter:
Filter Name
Type a name for the filter. The filter name cannot contain spaces. In each category of filter, filters must have unique names. However filters in different categories (for example, System and User) can have the same name.

By default, a filter name cannot contain the following characters:
$ ! £ % ^ & * ( ) + = ~ ` # @ / : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "

These invalid characters are defined in the following file:
webgui-home/etc/legalChar.prop.

Default View
Select the view to associate with the filter. The default view is applied when you launch an AEL with the filter but do not specify a view. The default view is also applied when you launch an AEL from an Event Dashboard by clicking the monitor box that is associated with the filter.

Collection
For global filters and system filters only: select the filter collection or collections to which you want to add the filter.

Description
Type a description that helps identify the purpose of the filter.

Data Source
Select the data source or data sources that contain the fields against which you want to run queries. Click Show Data Sources to display a list of available data sources.

Important: Each filter requires at least one data source. From this data source, the Filter Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the SQL query. If you select multiple data sources, the Filter Builder displays only the fields that are common to all those data sources. The data sources selected in the Filter Builder are not used in the AEL, Map Editor, or Event Dashboard to retrieve event data. You select the data sources for event data retrieval in the portlet preferences for the AEL, Map Editor, and Event Dashboard.

If you want to add a data source to an existing filter, make sure that the alerts.status table of the new data source contains all the fields that the filter specifies. If you add a data source that does not contain all the specified fields, the filter might return erroneous results.

The default data source corresponds to the default ObjectServer specified in the ncowDataSourceDefinitions.xml configuration file.

5. On the Dependent tab, use the Search fields to identify the filters that you want to use for the dependencies.

Tip: To search through large numbers of filters, select the filter category, and type the filter name in the Search field. If a matching filter is found in the selected filter category, the filter is selected in the Available filters list.

6. Add filters from the Available filters list to the Selected dependencies list as required.

7. To set a metric for the filter, click Metric and use the following fields to specify the metric value:
Label Type a title for the metric.
Function
Select a function to perform on the field data. The following functions are available:

- **Average**: Calculates the average value of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
- **Count**: Calculates the total number of records that match the filter. The selected field is not used for this calculation.
- **Sum**: Calculates the total of the selected field for all records that match the filter.
- **Minimum**: Returns the lowest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.
- **Maximum**: Returns the highest value of the selected field in records that match the filter.

Field
Select a field from the list that the function is to act on. The list contains all available fields in the alerts.status table of the data source.

8. Click **Save** to save the filter and continue working in the Filter Builder, or click **Save and Close** to save the filter and close the Filter Builder.

Editing filter collections
You can add filters to filter collections and remove filters.

Before you begin
To edit filter collections, your user must have the ncw_admin role.

About this task
You can add only global and system filters to a filter collection.

You can use the Filter Builder only to add filters to collections or remove filters from collections. To create or delete filter collections, or to modify collections (for example by changing the name of a collection), use the WAAPi client. There are sample WAAPi commands for filter collections in the following file:

```
webgui-home/waapi/etc/samples/samplerequest_filtercollection.xml
```

Procedure
To edit filter collections:

- To add a filter to a collection:
  1. Open the Filter Builder.
  2. Select **Category** radio button.
  3. Select the category that contains the required filter, and then select the filter. The properties of the selected filter are loaded.
  4. In the **Collections** list of the filter properties, select the filter collection or collections to which you want to add the filter.
  5. Click **Save and Close** to save the assignment of the filter to the collection or collections, and close the Filter Builder.

- To remove a filter from a collection:
  1. Open the Filter Builder.
  2. To identify which filters are assigned to a collection, select the **Collection** radio button and then select the required collection.
The list of filters assigned to the collection is sorted into global filters and system filters.

3. Select the filter that you want to remove from the collection.

The properties of the selected filter are loaded. In the Collections list, the collections to which the filter is assigned are highlighted.

4. Press CTRL and click the filter collection from which you want to remove the filter.

5. Click Save and Close to save the assignment of the filter to the collection or collections, and close the Filter Builder.

**Filter Builder comparison operators**

When you use the Filter Builder in basic mode, the Comparator field contains these comparison operators.

The operators are described in the following table.

*Table 24. Comparison operators in the basic mode of the Filter Builder*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>Tests for equality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>Tests for inequality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>Tests for greater than (&gt;), less than (&lt;), greater than or equal to (&gt;=) or less than or equal to (&lt;=). These operators perform case-sensitive string comparisons. In standard ASCII case-sensitive comparisons, upper case letters precede lower case letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[not] like</td>
<td>The like operator performs string comparisons. The string following the like operator, which can be the result of a regular expression, is the pattern to which the column expression is compared. A regular expression can include regular expression pattern-matching metacharacters. The not keyword inverts the result of the comparison.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pattern-matching meta characters**

Regular expressions are made up of normal characters and metacharacters. Normal characters include upper and lower case letters and numbers.

Regular expression pattern-matching can be performed with either a single character or a pattern of one or more characters in parentheses, called a character pattern. Metacharacters have special meanings, as described in the following table.

*Table 25. Pattern-matching metacharacters*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern-matching metacharacter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches zero or more instances of the preceding character or character pattern.</td>
<td>The pattern goo* matches my godness, my goodness, and my goodnes, but not my gdnnes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern-matching metacharacter</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches one or more instances of the preceding character or character pattern.</td>
<td>The pattern goo+ matches my goodness and my goodness, but not my godness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches zero or one instance of the preceding character or character pattern.</td>
<td>The pattern goo? matches my goodness and my goodness, but not my goodness or my gdnness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches the end of the string.</td>
<td>The pattern end$ matches the end, but not the ending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches the beginning of the string.</td>
<td>The pattern ^severity matches severity level 5, but not The severity is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches any single character.</td>
<td>The pattern b.at matches baat, bBat, and b4at, but not bat or bB4at.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[abcd]</td>
<td>This metacharacter matches any characters in the square brackets or in the range of characters separated by a hyphen (-), such as [0-9].</td>
<td>^[A-Za-z]+$ matches any string that contains only upper or lower case letter characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^abcd]</td>
<td>Matches any character except those in the square brackets or in the range of characters separated by a hyphen (-), such as [0-9].</td>
<td>^[0-9]$ matches any string that does not contain any numeric characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>()</td>
<td>This metacharacter indicates that the characters in the parenthesis should be treated as a character pattern.</td>
<td>A(boo)+Z matches AbooZ, AboobooZ, and AboobobobooZ, but not AboZ or AboooZ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This metacharacter matches one of the characters or character patterns on either side of the vertical bar.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 25. Pattern-matching metacharacters (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pattern-matching metacharacter</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>The backslash escape character indicates that the metacharacter following should be treated as a regular character. The metacharacters in this table require a backslash before them if they appear in a regular expression.</td>
<td>To match an opening square bracket, followed by any digits or spaces, followed by a closed bracket, use the following regular expression: <code>\[[0-9 ]+\]</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Copying filters

Users who are not administrators can create copies of global filters, group filters, and filters in the **My Filters** category; each copy remains in its original category. Administrators can copy filters from any category to any other, including filters belonging to individual users.

### About this task

You can deploy filters directly to individual read-write users, or copy filters to and from the public **Global Filters** category, any group category or the **My Filters** category. In addition, filters can be allocated to user groups.

To copy a filter:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Filter Builder.
2. Choose the category that contains the filter from the **Available Filters** list.
3. From the filter list, select the filter you want to copy. The page updates with the filter properties.
4. Click **Copy Filter**.
5. Select the users who can access the copy of the filter:

   **Public** Select **global** to create a filter accessible to all users. Select **system** to create a filter accessible to Web GUI administrators only. All Web GUI users can select and copy global filters.

   **Users** Select the users that have access to this filter. For each of the selected users, a copy of the filter appears in the **My Filters** list.

   The value of the **users.reload.mode** property in `webgui-home/etc/server.init` determines which users appear in this section of the dialog. When this property is set to 0, the section contains all system users. When set to 1, the section contains only users that have the `ncw_*` roles.

   **Groups** Select the groups that have access to this filter. For each of the selected groups, a copy of the filter appears in the **groupname Filters** list.

   The value of the **groups.reload.mode** system property in `webgui-home/etc/server.init` determines which groups appear in this
section of the dialog. When the property is set to 0, the section contains all groups. When the property is set to 1, the section contains only groups that have the ncw_* roles.

6. Click OK. The page updates and you are presented with a copy of the chosen filter.

7. Make any modifications necessary to the filter configuration, and click Save. Each user, group, and public category selected in step 5 on page 263 receives a copy of the filter.

Example

For example, to copy a filter from the administrator's personal filter category to the publicly available global category:

1. Choose My Filters from the Available Filters list.
2. From the filter list, select the filter you want to copy. The page updates with the filter properties.
3. Click Copy Filter. The next page contains a grouped list of the possible filter recipients.
4. Select the global check box and click OK. The page updates and you are presented with a copy of the chosen filter.
5. Make any modifications necessary to the filter configuration, and click Save. The filter is saved to the global group. Users can now copy the filter from this group to their personal My Filters group.

Deleting filters

Delete filters that are no longer required.

Before you begin

Remove the filter that you want to delete from any dependent filters. If you delete a filter that is still specified in a dependent filter, the dependent filter may return incorrect or misleading event information.

About this task

As a read-write user, you can delete only filters in the My Filters list. These filters are assigned to your user.

You can delete filters assigned to your user, filters that are assigned to other users, filters assigned to groups, and global and system filters.

Procedure

1. Open the Filter Builder.
2. From the Available Filters list, select the category that contains the filter you want to delete.
3. Select the filter and click Delete Filters.
4. A confirmation dialog appears. Click OK to delete the filter.
Setting up views for event lists

Use the View Builder, which is an HTML utility, to build views for applying to an Active Event List (AEL). Administrators and read-write users can create and edit views.

Procedure

Open the View Builder from the following locations:

AEL  Click Edit > Views.

Navigation  Click Administration > Event Management Tools > Views.

Related concepts:
“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Creating views

Create views that are dynamically applied to Active Event List data. The views determine what information is displayed from the available event data.

About this task

To create a view:

Procedure

1. Open the View Builder.
2. Click New View.
3. Select the users you want to grant access to the view being created and click OK.
   - **Public**  To make the view accessible by all users, select global. To add a system view, select system. All Web GUI users can select and copy global views.
   - **Users**  Select the users whom you want to grant access to this view. The view is copied to the My Views categories of all selected users.
     The list of users who can be granted access to the view is based on the setting of the users.reload.mode property in the webgui-home/etc/server.init file. If set to 0, all users are available. If set to 1, only users with either ncw_user or ncw_admin roles are available.
4. Use the following fields and buttons to set the general properties for the view:
   - **Name**  Type a name for the view. The view name cannot contain spaces.
     By default, a view name cannot contain the following characters: $ ! £ % ^ & * ( ) + = ~ # @ ' : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
     By default, the initial character of a view name cannot be any of the following characters: / \ * ? " < > | & .
     These invalid characters are defined in the following file: webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop
Data Source
Select the data source or data sources that contain the fields that you want to be displayed in the view. Click **Show Data Sources** to display a list of available data sources.

**Important:** For each view you must select at least one data source. From this data source, the View Builder obtains the fields that you can use in the view. If you select multiple data sources, the View Builder displays a union of all the fields contained in all data sources. The data sources selected in the View Builder are not used in the AEL to retrieve event data. You select the data source or data sources from which event data is retrieved in the portlet preferences for the AEL. If a view specifies fields that do not exist in a data source, when the view and the data source are applied to an AEL, the columns that represent the non-existent fields are blank.

If you want to add a data source to an existing view, make sure that the alerts.status table of the new data source contains all the fields that the views specifies.

The default data source corresponds to the default ObjectServer specified in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml configuration file.

5. Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

You can now configure the view properties, or click **Save and Close** to save the view and close the View Builder.

Related tasks:

- "Adding and removing columns" on page 267
- "Configuring column titles and width" on page 267
- "Changing the column order" on page 268
- "Changing the sorting precedence" on page 270
- "Changing the sort order in a column" on page 271

**Adding and removing columns**

Set what event information is displayed from the available event data. The selected event data is added in columns to the AEL.

**About this task**

To add new event data to, or remove event data from the view:

**Procedure**

1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the **Available Views** list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the **Display Columns** tab.

4. Use the following fields and buttons to add or remove event data from the view:

   **Available fields**
   Lists all available event data fields. The fields available are derived from the alerts.status table in the ObjectServer. If you selected multiple ObjectServers from the **Data Source** list, all fields from all ObjectServers are displayed. Select the field of the event data you want to appear as a new column in the event list. Click **Add selected field** to add the selected event data field to the event list as a column. Click **Add all fields** to add all fields to the event list as columns.

   **Event list view**
   Lists all the fields selected and displayed as columns in the event list. Select the fields you want to remove from the event list. Click **Remove selected fields** to remove the selected event data field from the event list columns. Click **Remove all fields** to remove all fields from the event list columns. Use the arrow buttons to the right of this list to change the display order of the columns in the event list.

   **Lock column**
   Locks the selected column at the far left of the event list in the view, so that the column is always displayed when you scroll horizontally. Use the arrow buttons to the right of the list to change the display order of the locked columns in the event list. You cannot change the display order to mix locked columns and unlocked columns.

5. Click **Save** to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click **Save and Close** to save the view and close the View Builder.

   If you click **Save**, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.

**Configuring column titles and width**
Customize the columns that display event data.

**About this task**
To configure a column used in the view:

**Procedure**
1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the **Available Views** list.
3. Click the **Display Columns** tab.
4. In the **Event list view** list, select a field.
   The Column title field updates with the corresponding column title for the selected field.
5. In the **Column title** field, type a new title for the column or keep the default.
6. Use the **Justify title** drop-down menu to the right of the **Column title** field to set the position of the title text in the column heading. This option is not available in the Event Viewer.
7. Use the **Justify data** drop-down menu to the right of the **Column width** field to set the position of the event data in the columns.
8. To change the width of a column, type a numeric value for the column width in the Column width field.

9. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.

   If you click Save, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.

Results

After a field is moved between the Available fields list and the Event list view list, the field retains any configurations you apply.

Changing the column order

Set the horizontal left-to-right order of the event data columns in the view.

About this task

To change the order of columns within the view:

Procedure

1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the Available views list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the Display Columns tab.
4. In the Event list view list, select a field.
5. Use the arrow buttons to the right of the list to change the display order of the columns in the view as follows:

   Table 26. View editor column order buttons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Top]</td>
<td>Click Top to move the field to the top of the list. In the view, the field is displayed as the column furthest to the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Up]</td>
<td>Click Up to move the selected field up one position in the list. In the view, the field is displayed as the column to the left of the one listed below it in the Event List View list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Down]</td>
<td>Click Down to move the selected field down one position in the list. In the view, the field is displayed as the column to the right of the one listed above it in the Event List View list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Bottom]</td>
<td>Click Bottom to move the selected field to the bottom of the list. In the view, the field is displayed as the column furthest to the right in the view.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Locked columns appear at the top of the Event list view list. Unlocked columns always appear displayed beneath locked columns. You cannot change the display order to mix locked columns and unlocked columns.

6. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.

   If you click Save, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.
Related tasks:

“Locking columns”
Lock columns that are important to you, so that the columns are always displayed when you scroll an Active Event List (AEL) horizontally.

Locking columns
Lock columns that are important to you, so that the columns are always displayed when you scroll an Active Event List (AEL) horizontally.

About this task
Locked columns are displayed at the left side of the view.

To lock columns:

Procedure
1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the Available views list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the Display Columns tab.
4. In the Event list view area, select the field for the required column and set the Lock column check box. The field moves to the top of the list and the name changes to field_name [locked].
5. Lock all of the required columns.
6. Optional: If you have more than one locked column, change the order in which the columns are displayed in the AEL. The top locked column is displayed as the leftmost column of the view, and the bottom locked column is displayed to the left of the first unlocked column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Button" /></td>
<td>Moves the selected column to the top of the list of locked columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Button" /></td>
<td>Moves the selected column up the list of locked columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Button" /></td>
<td>Moves the selected column down the list of locked columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Button" /></td>
<td>Moves the selected column to the bottom of the list of locked columns.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.

If you click Save, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.
Changing the sorting precedence

Set the precedence of sorting principles.

About this task

On the Sort Columns tab, the field at the top of the Sorted By list has the highest precedence when sorting. If you add a second field to the list, and the first field contains a number of identical entries, the second field is used to sort within those entries. To change the sort order of columns in the view:

Procedure

1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the Available views list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the Sort Columns tab.
4. Use the following fields and buttons to add or remove fields to be used in setting the sorting precedence:

   **Available sort fields**
   - Lists all available event data fields that can be used to arrange which data has a priority when the events are displayed in the event list. The fields available are derived from the alerts.status table in the ObjectServer. Select the field of the event data you want to display first in the event list. Click Add selected field to add the selected event data field to the event list as a priority. Click Add all fields to add all fields to the event list. Then you can set the sorting precedence in the Sorted by list.

   **Sorted by**
   - Lists all the fields selected to be part of the sorting hierarchy. The field at the top of the list has the highest precedence when sorting. If you add a second field to the list, and the first field contains a number of identical entries, the second field is used to sort within those entries. Click Remove selected fields to remove the selected event data field from the sorting hierarchy. Click Remove all fields to remove all fields from the sorting hierarchy. Use the arrow buttons to the right of this list to change the sorting hierarchy. The fields at the top of the list have a higher priority when event data is displayed in the event list.

   With an entry in the Sorted by list highlighted, use the direction buttons to the right of the list as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>![Top]</td>
<td>Click Top to move the field to the top of the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Up]</td>
<td>Click Up to move the selected field up one position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Down]</td>
<td>Click Down to move the selected field down one position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>![Bottom]</td>
<td>Click Bottom to move the selected field to the bottom of the list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.
Changing the sort order in a column
Set the sorting order of the event data within a column to ascending or descending.

About this task
Each entry in the Sorted by list on the Sort Columns tab has a suffix that indicates the sort order of data within that field. By default, this entry is [desc], meaning that the field is sorted in descending alphabetical or alphanumerical order. The suffix [asc] indicates that the field is sorted in ascending alphabetical, or alphanumerical order.

To change the direction of sorting within a field:

Procedure
1. Open the View Builder.
2. Select a view from the Available views list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the Sort Columns tab.
4. Select a field in the Sorted by list within the Sort Columns area.
5. Set the sort direction by selecting Ascending or Descending from the Sort list.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for other columns that need a different sort order.
7. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.
   If you click Save, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.

Copying global views
As a read write user or an administrator, you can copy global views and system views to the My Views group.

About this task
To copy views from the Global view list to the My Views group:

Procedure
1. Open the View Builder.
2. From the Available Views list, select either Global Views or System Views.
3. From the view list, select the view you want to copy.
   The page updates with the view properties.
4. Click Copy View.
5. From the Users list, select your user name.
6. Click OK.
   The copy of the view is displayed. By default, the view name is set to “CopyOfviewname.”
7. Edit the view as required.
8. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.

   If you click Save, wait for your changes to be applied to the event list before continuing to customize the view.

**Results**

The view is saved in your user profile. In the Active Event List (AEL), when you select the view from the Views list, the view is applied to the AEL.
Chapter 12. Monitoring events in the Web GUI

You can monitor and manage Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus by using the Web GUI.

Monitoring events on mobile devices

You can view events on mobile devices, or in a Web browser, by either scanning
the QR Code on the Event Dashboard or using the URL sent by the Web GUI
administrator.

To view any of the following displays on your mobile device or Web browser,
either scan the associated QR Code on the Event Dashboard or use the URL sent
previously by the Web GUI administrator. For more information, see "Displaying
summary event data on mobile devices" on page 296 or "Publishing Gauges pages
to mobile devices" on page 297.

The Event Dashboard

To display an event list on your mobile device, or in a Web browser, tap the
associated monitor box.

The Event List

A maximum of 100 events are displayed at any one time. To display any additional
events, scroll down to the bottom of the event list and tap Show more events ....
Each time you tap Show more events ... an additional 100 events are displayed.

To display full information for an event, tap the event, and then tap the Fields,
Details, or Journal tabs.

Note: Telephone numbers containing a maximum 15 digits and prefixed with a
plus sign (+) are recognized telephone numbers, and can be dialled.

To filter by a particular severity, tap the required severity on the severity filter tabs.
For example, to see only those events with a severity level of minor, tap the
associated tab on the severity filter tabs. The event list refreshes to display only
alerts with a severity level of minor. To remove severity filtering and restore the
event list to its original view of all events, tap the All tab on the severity filter
tabs.

The Gauges page

The Gauges page provides a high-level overview of Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus data.

Tapping a gauge may provide further information about the metric. For example,
the Web GUI may display a Lightweight Event List (LEL) for the events that the
metric measures.
Monitoring events in the AEL

Use the Active Event List (AEL) to interactively monitor and manage events.

Related concepts:

“Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

Related tasks:

Chapter 4, “Administering users, roles, and groups,” on page 95
You can create different kinds of Web GUI users, assign them roles and add them to groups to determine their ability to perform tasks. You can also modify the preferences of a Web GUI user.

Event management in Active Event Lists

The Active Event List (AEL) is an interactive table that displays network alert data from an ObjectServer. Use the AEL to monitor alert data and manage information relating to faults in your network.

Interactive alert management is characterized by two-way communication with the ObjectServer. Alerts are viewed by operators, and are then addressed. When connected to the Web GUI, all interactive alert management activities take place from within the AEL window. From here you can monitor, prioritize, and address network alerts.

To use SQL tools in an AEL, you must be ObjectServer-validated with appropriate privileges on the corresponding ObjectServer.

An alert is created when the ObjectServer receives an event, alarm, message, or data item. Each alert is made up of several fields from a particular row in the ObjectServer alerts.status table.

The manner in which alert data is displayed in the AEL is controlled by predefined filters and views. You can use filters to choose which rows from the ObjectServer alerts.status table to display, and you can use views to choose which fields within a row to display.

Read-write users have access to Filter Builder and View Builder components. These tools can be used to apply defined filters and views to the AEL, either other predefined filters and views, or user-defined filters and views. Administrators can provide all read-write clients with publicly-accessible filters and views for them to use if they require.

After alert information is presented within the AEL display area, you can conduct various administrative actions on the table entries. Network event information can be examined, and alerts acknowledged and assigned to the appropriate network management personnel. In addition, journals attached to alerts can be modified to record these actions, and administrative tools within the AEL can be run based on alert data.
Accessing Active Event Lists

You can access AELs in several ways to monitor and manage event data.

About this task

To access an AEL:

Procedure

- Open the AEL in the navigation. To open the default AEL portlet, click Availability > Events > Active Event List.
- Open the AEL from an Event Dashboard portlet by clicking the distribution indicator of a monitor box. To open the default Event Dashboard portlet, click Availability > Events > Event Dashboard. AEL opening must be specified as a single-click action in the Event Dashboard portlet preferences.
- Open the AEL from a linked active object in a map.
- Click a hyperlink containing a correctly-constructed AEL query string.

Related tasks:

- “Visualizing event information on maps” on page 317
  You can use maps to graphically represent the status of a network.
- “Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176
  To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.

Related reference:

- Appendix G, “URLs for opening Web GUI pages,” on page 417
  Use the URL to open Web GUI portlets and applets from a map, from a link on an HTML page, or through a link generated by script tool or a CGI tool.
- “insert:AEL command” on page 380
  The insert:AEL command inserts an AEL applet into a Web page.

Acknowledging and deacknowledging events

You can acknowledge and deacknowledge events in the event list.

About this task

Note: You can acknowledge and deacknowledge only the events that are assigned to you, your group, or the nobody user.

To acknowledge an alert:

Procedure

1. Open an AEL and select the events you want to acknowledge.
2. Select Alerts > Acknowledge or use Ctrl+A.

   Note: If configured by your administrator, you are required to enter a journal entry whenever you acknowledge an event.

Results

You can also deacknowledge a previously acknowledged event:

1. Open an AEL and select an event that has already been acknowledged.
2. Select Alerts > Deacknowledge or use Ctrl+D.

Related concepts:
“Prompt types” on page 209

When you create or edit a tool, you can include a prompt to which a user must respond, for example by typing in information or selecting a value from a list.

Assigning ownership to events

When an event arrives from a probe, the event is owned by the nobody user unless ownership of the event has been assigned to a specific user. Web GUI users with appropriate privileges can take ownership of events throughout the problem lifecycle, or assign events to a specific user or group.

About this task

The OwnerUID and OwnerGID columns provide this capability to work as an individual or as a member of a team. The OwnerUID column holds the user ID of the owner of the event, and the OwnerGID column holds the group ID.

As soon as an event is owned by a user, only that user or a user with higher privileges can modify the event. If an event is assigned to a group, the OwnerUID is reassigned to the nobody user. After an event is assigned to a group, only a member of that group or a user with higher privileges can modify the event.

Note: The users or groups to which you can assign events depends on your security permissions. If you are a normal user, you can assign only the events assigned to you, your group, or the nobody user.

To assign ownership of events:

Procedure
1. From the event list, select one or more events.
2. Assign the events to another user, another group, or yourself, as follows:
   • To assign selected events to a particular user, click Alerts > User Assign, and then select a user from the submenu.

   Note: If there are a large number of names to choose from, the menu structure may include submenus that contain names within alphabetical ranges (for example, A to G, H to M, and so on). If the name you want is grouped in a submenu (for example, A to G), open the submenu, then select the user’s name.

   • To assign selected events to another group, click Alerts > Group Assign, and then select a group from the submenu (for example, Network Support).

   Note: When an event is assigned to a group, the OwnerUID does not change, meaning that it is not reassigned to the nobody user.

   • To assign selected events to yourself, click Alerts > Take ownership. You take ownership of an event when it has been assigned to you for action, or if you are in a position to resolve it.
Changing the event information displayed

You can set what event information is displayed from the available event data by editing the event list view, or by selecting and applying a different view. You can also edit the filter criteria used by the current event list, or select a different filter to apply to the event list.

About this task

From the event list, perform any of the following actions:

Procedure

- To edit the current view within the current event list and change the columns displayed from the available data, click **Edit > Views**. The View Builder opens, which you can use to edit the view.
- To select a different view to apply to the event list, click the drop-down list of views on the toolbar and select an item from the list. After being selected, the event list columns update according to the view settings.
- To edit the current filter, click **Edit > Filters**. The Filter Builder opens, which you can use to edit the filter.
- To select a different filter to apply to the event list, select a filter from the Filter list. After being selected, the event list rows update with the filter settings.

Related tasks:

- **“Setting up filters for event data” on page 252**
  Use the Filter Builder to apply filters to an event list or Event Dashboard portlet. Administrators and read-write users can create and edit filters.
- **“Setting up views for event lists” on page 265**
  Use the View Builder, which is an HTML utility, to build views for applying to an Active Event List (AEL). Administrators and read-write users can create and edit views.

Copying data from the event list

You can copy event data from the event list to the clipboard for use in other applications.

About this task

To copy event data:

Procedure

1. From the event list, select an event field.
2. Click **Edit > Copy** or press Ctrl+C.
3. Paste this information into another application as required.

Results

**Tip:** You can also copy alert information from the Event Information window.
Deleting events
You can remove events from the event list.

About this task
To delete one or more events in the event list, select the events and click Alerts > Delete.

Note: Any user with access to SQL tools can access the Delete tool. However, your administrator can restrict the use of the Delete function by assigning you to a group that has no access.

Related concepts:
“Access criteria for tools” on page 208
You can define access criteria for any SQL, CGI, URL, script or command-line tool based on the groups that a user belongs to and the class of an event. If the access criteria are satisfied for a given tool, user, and event, the tool is displayed.

Displaying event information in full
From the event list, you can view full details of any selected events. Event information that is stored in the alerts.status, alerts.details, and alerts.journal database tables is shown.

About this task
Access to the information in the tabs is determined on an individual user basis. For a non-administrative user to be able to access the information in the Fields tab, the permissions for Show basic event information must be selected in their user profile.

For a non-administrative user to be able to view the Detail tab, the permissions for both the Show basic event information and Show event details must be selected in their user profile.

For a non-administrative user to be able to view the Journal tab, the permissions for both the Show basic event information and Show journals must be selected in their user profile.

Procedure
1. From the event list, perform one of the following actions:
   • To view information for a single event, double-click the event, or select the event and then click Alerts > Information.
   • To view information for multiple events, select the events and then click Alerts > Information.

   The Event Information window opens.

2. Use this window as follows:
   Fields Click this tab to view a list of all the columns and their corresponding
values for a selected event. This information is stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status table. You can click any column in the list to see the complete text for its value in the field below the list of columns.

**Details**
Click this tab to view alert details that are stored in the ObjectServer alerts.details table.

**Journal**
Click this tab to view the journal entries for the event, as stored in the ObjectServer alerts.journal table.
You can enter additional journal entries by clicking **Add To Journal** to open the full Journal window for the event. On completion, close this window to return to the Event Information window.

**Previous**
If you selected multiple events from the event list, click this button to display detailed information for the previous event in your selection. This action can fail if events have been deleted elsewhere in the system.

**Next**
If you selected multiple events from the event list, click this button to display detailed information for the next event in your selection. This action can fail if events have been deleted elsewhere in the system.

**Close**
Click this button to close this window.

**Results**

**Related tasks:**
- "Modifying the preferences of a Web GUI user" on page 101
  Edit the user profile settings and event list options for Web GUI users.
- "Maintaining a journal for an event" on page 280
  You can add and save your own event history information. You can maintain a journal for any event in the event list.

**Freezing the event data**
You can freeze any open event list so that updates from the ObjectServer are not displayed.

**About this task**
Freezing the alerts enables you to take a snapshot of the alert status before it is changed by further updates from the ObjectServer. Although alert freezing does not prevent you from making changes using the tools in the **Alerts** menu, the updates conferred are not displayed until the display is unfrozen.

To freeze the contents of an AEL, click **View > Freeze** or press Ctrl-Z. A check is displayed against the **Freeze** menu item to indicate that the option has been selected.

To restart automatic updates from the ObjectServer, click **View > Freeze** or press Ctrl-Z.

You can also freeze all open event lists and take snapshots of any AELs you have open on your browser.
To freeze the contents of all AELs open in your browser, click View > Freeze All or press Ctrl+Shift+Z. A check is displayed against the Freeze All menu item to indicate that the option has been selected.

To restart automatic updates from the ObjectServer, click View > Freeze All or press Ctrl+Shift+Z.

**Maintaining a journal for an event**

You can add and save your own event history information. You can maintain a journal for any event in the event list.

**About this task**

**Procedure**

1. From the event list, select the event, and then click Alerts > Journal. The Journal window opens.

   **Tip:** You can also access the Journal window while within the Event Information window for a selected event. From the Journal tab, click the Add to Journal button.

2. Complete this window as follows:

   **Journal information list boxes**

   The upper list box is read-only and displays the existing journal history text. For each entry, the name of the user who entered the information, and the date and time when they entered this information, are shown. You can use the Alerts menu while within this window by right-clicking within this list box.

   Use the lower list box to add a text entry to the journal. There is a limit of 4096 characters for each journal entry. When you have completed the text entry, click Apply to save the text within the upper list box. The new text is saved as the last entry, and your user name, and the date and time, are automatically added.

   **Note:** To be able to add text entries to the journal, you must be an ObjectServer user, you must have the Web GUI read-write user role (netcool_rw) assigned, and you must have the Edit journals (read write role) check box selected on the User Preferences for Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI page.

   **Apply to All Selected**

   Select this check box if you want to add the newly-entered text to all events that are selected in the event list, and not just to the event whose serial number is displayed at the top of the window. To save the text entry to the journal for each selected event, click Apply.

   **OK**

   Click this button to save the newly-entered text and close the window.

   **Previous**

   If you selected multiple events in the event list, click this button to move to the journal entry for the previous event in your selection.

   **Next**

   If you selected multiple events in the event list, click this button to move to the journal entry for the next event in your selection.

   **Apply**

   Click this button to save newly-entered text to the journal. The Journal
window remains open for further entries. This button is useful if you have selected multiple events and want to add different journal entries for them.

**Close** Click this button to close this window. You are prompted to save any unsaved changes before the window closes.

### Prioritizing events

You can prioritize events in the AEL by changing the event severity. Each event in the event list has an associated severity, which is indicated by the color of the severity in the display.

#### About this task

The following severity states are used to categorize events:

- Critical
- Major
- Minor
- Warning
- Intermediate
- Clear

You can change the severity of events only if you have permission to do so, and you can change only the severity of events assigned to you, your group, or the nobody user.

To change the priority of an event:

#### Procedure

1. Open an AEL.
2. Select the events for which you want to change priority.
3. Click Alerts > **Prioritize** and select a priority setting from the submenu.

   The status line displays the number of events that have had their severity set, and the number of events whose severity could not be set because they are not assigned to you.

#### Refreshing the event data

The event list refreshes automatically at regular intervals to show all incoming alerts from the ObjectServer. You can choose to refresh the event list manually between the configured intervals to view all the latest alerts at the current point in time.

#### About this task

To refresh the AEL manually between automatic refresh updates, click **View** > **Refresh**, or use Ctrl-R.

**Note:** In order to enable manual refreshing of the AEL, you must turn off row data caching.
Related tasks:

“Changing the AEL refresh rate” on page 195
You can change the time period in seconds after which the AEL is automatically refreshed on a regular basis by the Web GUI server.

“Turning data row caching on or off” on page 196
When the AEL is refreshed, event data in its rows is loaded from the cache if the refresh interval is less than 60 seconds. To have the event list refreshed from the database, turn data row caching off.

Running predictive eventing tools in the Web GUI
You can use the Active Event List (AEL) to monitor predictive events generated within IBM Tivoli Monitoring if your installation has been set up to support predictive eventing.

Before you begin
Before you can run predictive eventing tools, the following prerequisites must be met:

- IBM Tivoli Monitoring V6.2.2 must be installed and configured for predictive eventing
- Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus must be configured for predictive eventing.
- The Web GUI setup for predictive eventing must be configured.
- If you want to launch from the AEL directly into Tivoli Enterprise Portal without having to log in, single sign-on must be configured.

For more information about configuring single sign-on and configuring the setup for predictive eventing, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

About this task
A default filter and view are provided for use with predictive events:

- The default filter contains the following SQL WHERE clause: `where Class = 89300`.
- The default view contains the following fields, which are displayed in the following order, from left to right: Node, TrendDirection, Summary, FirstOccurrence, LastOccurrence, Count, PredictionTime. The sorting order of the view is as follows:
  - The Severity column is sorted in descending order
  - The LastOccurrence column is sorted in ascending order
  - The PredictionTime column is sorted in ascending order

In an AEL, you can restrict the events displayed to predictive events by selecting PredictiveEvents from the Filters list. To display the predictive eventing fields, select PredictiveEventsView from the Views list. Alternatively, you can sort the AEL by using either the Summary column or the Class column. The summary text for predictive events is always prefixed with Prediction from. The default entry in the Class column for a predictive event is always Predictive Event, although this value can be changed by an administrator.

Restriction: You can run predictive eventing tools against only one event at a time.

To run the predictive eventing tools in the AEL:
Procedure

- For all events: To display predictive events that meet a certain level of confidence:
  1. Right click any event and click Alerts > Show Prediction Confidence.
  2. In the Internal Command Parameters window, select an operator and type a value between 0 and 100. The confidence level is expressed as a percentage.
     The default operator and confidence level are >80.

     A new AEL window opens displaying predictive events that match the specified confidence threshold.

- For predictive events only: To display critical threshold events, right-click a predictive event and click Alerts > Show Predictive Events Threshold.

     A new AEL window opens displaying all critical threshold events.

- For predictive events only: To display extended predictive attributes, right-click a predictive event and click Alerts > Show Extended Attributes.

     A new window opens displaying the following extended attributes of the predictive event in table form, for example:
     - Confidence
     - Number of samples
     - Strength

- For predictive events only: To show the details of a predictive event in the default workspace of Tivoli Enterprise Portal:
  1. Right click a predictive event and click Alerts > Show Details in TEP
  2. Optional: If single sign-on has not be configured, log into Tivoli Enterprise Portal

Monitoring TADDM events in the Web GUI

TADDM events are generated within IBM Tivoli Application Dependency Discovery Manager when a configuration change is detected in your IT environment. You can monitor TADDM events from the Web GUI if your system is configured to support this feature.

About this task

A TADDM filter is available in your Active Event List for filtering TADDM events; to use this filter, select TADDM from the Filters list. You can also identify TADDM events in the Active Event List by sorting on the Class column, if this column is available in your current view. By default, the entry is Tivoli Application Dependency Discovery Manager, although this can be changed by your system administrator.

TADDM events have an Indeterminate severity level by default.

From the Active Event List, you can launch across to the TADDM Java console or Web client to view further details about the configuration items for which alerts have been raised:

Procedure

- To view all the attribute details for a configuration item from within the TADDM Java console, right-click a TADDM event in the Active Event List, and then click TADDM > Config Item Details (console) from the pop-up menu.
To view all the attribute details for a configuration item from within the TADDM Web client, right-click a TADDM event in the Active Event List, and then click TADDM > Config Item Details (web) from the pop-up menu.

To view a change history report for a configuration item from within the TADDM Java console, right-click a TADDM event in the Active Event List, and then click TADDM > Change History (console) from the pop-up menu.

To view a change history report for a configuration item from within the TADDM Web client, right-click a TADDM event in the Active Event List, and then click TADDM > Change History (web) from the pop-up menu.

You can double-click an event to view its complete set of details in the Event Information window.

Searching for event list data

You can search for event list data in a number of ways. You can enter specific text to search for, use a filtering facility to quickly find matching occurrences of data, and filter event list data by severity.

Filtering events by severity

You can filter the event list data to display only those events that match a particular severity.

About this task

To filter by a particular severity, click the required severity color on the event list distribution status bar.

For example, to see only those events with a severity level of minor, click the yellow button on the distribution status bar. The event list refreshes to display only alerts with a severity level of minor.

To remove severity filtering and restore the event list to its original view of all events, click the All Events button on the distribution status bar.

Quickly filtering events

You can use the quick filtering facility as a fast way of displaying events in the event list that match a selected criteria. You can filter for event data and display events that correspond to the value of a specific cell. For example, you can quickly display only those events that occurred at the same time as the selected event, or before the selected event.

About this task

To use the quick filter:

Procedure

1. From the event list, select a cell that contains a value on which to base the quick filter.
2. Click Alerts > Quick Filter, and then select one of the following options from the submenu:
   - Equals shows all rows with the same field value as the selected cell.
   - Not Equals shows all rows with a different field value from the selected cell.
   - Greater Than shows all rows with a greater field value than selected cell.
Greater Than or Equals shows all rows with a field value greater than or equal to the selected cell.

Less Than shows all rows with a lesser field value than selected cell.

Less Than or Equals shows all rows with a field value less than or equal to the selected cell.

Like shows all rows that contain the same string as the selected cell.

Not Like shows all rows that do not contain the same string as the selected cell.

The event list refreshes to display only those alerts that match the specified filter criteria.

3. To remove quick filtering and restore the event list to its original view of all events, click Alerts > Quick Filter > Off. Alternatively, click the All Events button on the distribution status bar.

Searching for text in the event list
You can search the event list for event data that matches a specific value that you enter. You can search for data within a specific column and specify options to narrow down the search.

About this task

Procedure
1. From the event list, click View > Find. The Find window opens.
2. Complete this window as follows:

   Column
   Select the column to search.

   Value
   Type the search value that you want to match. You can enter an exact value to search for or a regular expression.

   Options
   Specify the type of match required by selecting one of the following:
   • Exact Match to find rows where the data in the selected column exactly matches the specified search value.
   • Regular Expression to find rows where the data in the selected column matches the specified regular expression.
   • Sub String to find rows where the data in the selected column contains the specified value somewhere within it.

   Find
   Click this button to find the first matching occurrence. If a matching row is found in the event list, any currently-selected rows are deselected, and the matching row is selected. The Find window remains open so that you can view any additional matching occurrences.

   Next
   Click this button to show the next match, and subsequent matches, in the event list.

   Close
   Click this button to close this window.
Selecting and deselecting events

To work with one or more event in the AEL, you must first select the events. You can then use the options in the Alerts menu to manipulate the events. You can also deselect one or more events from a list of selected events.

About this task

Note: You can right-click an event to access an Alerts pop-up menu. The Alerts menu is configured by your system administrator.

To select one or more events:

Procedure

1. Open an AEL.
2. Select single or multiple events in the following ways:
   - To select one event and deselect all other events, click the event row.
   - To select multiple, nonsequential events, hold down the Ctrl key and click each event.
   - To select multiple, sequential events, click an event row to be the first selected. Then hold down the Shift key and then click the last event row to select all in between on the list.
   - To select all events, click Edit > Select all or use Ctrl+S.
   - To select all events that match the value in a particular field (smart matching) hold down the Shift key (Ctrl+Alt on Windows) and click the right mouse button over the field you want to match.

Results

You can also deselect one or more events:

1. Open an AEL.
2. Deselect single or multiple events in the following ways:
   - To deselect all events in the event list, click Edit > Deselect all or use Ctrl+E.
   - To deselect an event in a selection of multiple rows, hold down the Ctrl key and click the event.

Sorting columns

To organize the data displayed in the Active Event List (AEL), use the sorting functions.

About this task

Sorted columns are denoted by an upwards-pointing arrow or downwards-pointing arrow in the column header, depending on whether the column is sorted in ascending or descending order.

The data is sorted only by the fields contained in the alerts.status table; conversions are not sorted.

To sort columns:
Procedure

1. Open an AEL. If you open the AEL with a view in which a sorting order is specified, the sorting order is applied, but not indicated on the column headers.
2. Sort single columns as follows:
   a. To sort a column, click the column header once. The rows are sorted in ascending order.
   b. To sort in descending order, click the column header again.
   c. To unsort the column, click the column header a third time.
3. Sort multiple columns as follows:
   a. To sort multiple columns, press Ctrl and click the required column headers. The sorting importance of the columns is indicated in square brackets ([ ]) in the column header.
   b. To alternate the sorting of individual columns within the selection between ascending and descending order, keep Ctrl pressed and click the column headers.
   c. To unsort the columns, release Ctrl and click any header from among the sorted columns. The previously-sorted columns are unsorted; the column that you clicked is sorted in ascending order.
   d. To unsort the column that you clicked in step 3c, click the column another two times.

What to do next

If you opened the AEL with a view, after all columns are unsorted, the sorting order specified in the view is reapplied.

Related tasks:
- "Creating views" on page 265
  Create views that are dynamically applied to Active Event List data. The views determine what information is displayed from the available event data.
- "Changing the sort order in a column" on page 271
  Set the sorting order of the event data within a column to ascending or descending.

Using tools to manage events

Use the tools in the event list to run SQL commands against events from one or more data sources, or to run external commands, for example, a local application batch file or script. Default tools include the Ping tool, Telnet tool, and Tracepath tool.

Before you begin

If you want to run a tool against events from more than one data source, note the following criteria:

- The tool must be valid against the ObjectServer from which the events originate. If you select events from multiple ObjectServers, the tool must be valid against all the ObjectServers. For example, if the tool is configured to run against fields that are not contained in one ObjectServer, the tool cannot be run against the entire selection of events.
- You must have write permission against all the ObjectServers from which the selected events originate. If you select events from multiple ObjectServers, and you do not have write permission in all the ObjectServers, the tool runs against only the ObjectServers that you are permitted to modify.
· If you run a tool containing a prompt against events from multiple ObjectServers, the prompt permits you to select only fields or field values that are common to all ObjectServers.

**About this task**

To run a tool:

**Procedure**

1. Select one or more events in the AEL and right-click the selection.
2. Run a tool against the selected event or events by selecting the appropriate tool in the **Tools** menu.

---

### Managing events in the Event Viewer

You can use the Event Viewer to monitor and manage events.

**Accessing the Event Viewer**

Accessing Event Viewers.

**Procedure**

To access a Event Viewer do any of the following, as appropriate:

· Open the Event Viewer in the navigation by clicking **Availability > Events > Event Viewer**.
· Open a custom page that contains an Event Viewer.

**Displaying full event information in the Event Viewer**

From the Event Viewer list, you can view full details of any selected event.

**Procedure**

1. To display full information for an event do one of the following:
   · Double click the entry for the event.
   · Right click on the entry for the event and choose **Information** from the pop-up menu.

   Event information appears in a separate window that has the following tabs:

   **Fields**  This tab contains the event details from the alerts.status table in the ObjectServer. This tab contains all the fields associated with the event and their values, not just those selected by the view. Clicking the **Field** column header sorts the rows in either ascending or descending order.

   **Details**  This tab contains details of the event from the alerts.details table in the ObjectServer. Clicking the **Field** column header sorts the rows in either ascending or descending order.

   **Journal**  This tab contains journal entries for the event from the alerts.journal table in the ObjectServer. When you have finished reading the journal details, click **Close**.

2. Click **Close** to close the event information window.
Changing the event information displayed

You can set what event information is displayed from the available event data by editing the event list view, or by selecting and applying a different view. You can also edit the filter criteria used by the current event list, or select a different filter to apply to the event list.

Procedure

From the event list, carry out any of the following actions:

- To select a different view, edit the Event Viewer and choose a different view. On saving the preferences, the event list columns update according to the settings of the view.
- To select a different filter, click the drop-down list of filters on the toolbar and select an item from the list. After being selected, the event list rows update according to the filter settings.

Tip: To locate a filter more quickly, you can type its name, or the first few characters of the name, in the filter drop-down box. This is useful when there are large number of filters and the one you require is towards the end of the list.

Copying data

You can copy data from the event list or the event details window to the clipboard for use in other applications.

Procedure

To copy data:
1. Select a row in the event list or the event details window.
2. Right-click on the selected item and choose Copy from the pop-up menu.
3. If a confirmation dialog is displayed, click OK to complete the copying of the data.
4. Paste this information into another application as required.

Refreshing the event data

The event list refreshes automatically at regular intervals to show all incoming alerts from the ObjectServer. You can choose to refresh the event list manually between the configured intervals to view all the latest alerts at the current point in time.

About this task

To refresh the Event Viewer between automatic updates, click Refresh. The time it takes for the event list to reload depends on the number of events received from the ObjectServer. During the refresh, a progress indicator is displayed in the events area.
Freezing the event data
You can freeze any open event list so that updates from the ObjectServer are not displayed.

About this task
Freezing the alerts enables you to take a snapshot of the alert status before it is changed by further updates from the ObjectServer.

To freeze the contents of a Event Viewer, do any other the following:

• Click

To restart automatic updates from the ObjectServer, repeat any of these actions.

Note: While the content of a Event Viewer is frozen you can still use the Refresh button ( ) to carry out a one-off update of the event list.

Searching for event list data
You can enter text to search for and filter the list by severity; that is, display only events that have a specific severity.

Filtering events by severity
Filter the event list to display only the events that have a specific severity.

About this task
To filter by a specific severity, click the required severity icon in the summary bar of the event list.

For example, to see only minor severity events, click the yellow icon in the summary bar. The event list refreshes to display only the events with that severity.

To remove severity filtering, click the severity icon again to restore the event list to its original view.

You can select multiple severities if required. For example to view all major and critical events, click the orange and red icons. To return to the full display, click the icons once more.

Sorting columns
To organize the data displayed in the Event Viewer, use the sorting functions.

About this task
Initially, the order of the rows in the Event Viewer event area are determined by the view that is applied. You can change the order of the rows by using the columns to sort the data.

Note: When data is sorted by a field that has conversions in the data source, the sorting is done by the conversion value of the field (that is, the display value) and not the underlying integer field value. Examples of such fields are Acknowledged, Class, and OwnerUID.
Procedure

To sort the rows using a single column:
• Click the column header to sort the rows in ascending order of that column.
• Click the column header twice to sort the rows in descending order of that column.

Event groupings

When the administrator has defined the necessary facilities you can group the events on an event list.

Grouping events in the Event Viewer

You can apply a view that groups the events on a list.

Procedure

To select a view that includes the definition of event groupings:
1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools > Views to open the View Builder and modify the view to include event grouping.
2. Select a view from the Available views list. The page updates with the view properties.
3. Click the Group Columns tab.
4. In the Available fields list, select the name of the field that acts as the primary way to group events in the Event Viewer. The field name moves to the Grouped by list.
5. If required, add further levels of grouping in the same manner. There is a maximum number of levels that you can define. This can be set by an administrator and the default maximum number is 3.
6. Click Save to save the view and continue customizing the view, or click Save and Close to save the view and close the View Builder.

Add the view to the Event Viewer:
7. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options > Personalize.
   • To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.
8. From the View drop down list, select the event grouping option to apply to the Event Viewer.
9. Click OK.

Results

A grouping panel appears next to the events area on the Event Viewer window showing the events grouped by the selected view.
Appearance of the Event Viewer

Grouping is a way of organizing events according to the value of up to three columns in the ObjectServer database. When you have selected a view that contains event grouping, a grouping panel appears next to the events area on the Event Viewer window. This panel lists the values of the top-level group (for example, a list of locations). For each group, the panel shows the number of events in the group and the icon for the highest severity event in the group.

Using a list that contains groupings

The organization of an event list that includes groupings changes the appearance of the list, providing you with extra visual and interactive capabilities.

Using a multi-level list

The Web GUI administrator can define up to three levels of grouping for the Event Viewer. For example, at the top level events can be grouped by their location. Then the events can be further grouped by their severity in each location. This produces a multi-level list.

Procedure

To use the grouping panel in a multi-level list:

- There is a plus sign (+) next to each top-level group. Click the plus sign to reveal the groups on the second level. As at the top level, these groups show you the number of events they contains and the highest severity in the group. Also, the plus sign changes to a minus sign (−).
  
  If the second-level groups have plus signs next to their names, there is a further level of grouping. Use the plus sign in the same way to reveal the third-level groups, the number of events each contains, and the highest severity in each group.

- To collapse any group, click the minus sign next to its name.
- To return to the top-level list of groups, click All.
- You can use all other functions of the Event Viewer, such as viewing event details, in the normal way.

Viewing events in a group

To view the events in a group, click its name in the grouping panel. The contents of the events area now shows only the events in the selected group.

Viewing the properties of a group

To view the properties of any group in the tree of groups, hover the mouse pointer over the group displayed in the list.

Event relationships

If relationships between events are defined, you can organize the event list in an Event Viewer based on those relationships.

Related tasks:

“Defining event relationships” on page 246

Use event relationships to organize an Event Viewer. Event relationships group events in the list by the relationships between them.
Organizing an event list by relationships
You can apply a view that defines a relationship to reorganize an event list

Procedure
To select a view that contains an event relationship to reorganize the event list.

Edit the portlet preferences:
1. Click Edit Options > Personalize.
2. Select a view that includes a relationship in View.
3. Click OK.

Related tasks:
“Setting up views for event lists” on page 265
Use the View Builder, which is an HTML utility, to build views for applying to an Active Event List (AEL). Administrators and read-write users can create and edit views.

Using a list organized by relationships
The organization of an event list by relationships changes the appearance of the list, providing you with extra visual and interactive capabilities.

About this task
When relationships are applied, the event area of a list has a tree-like appearance, with events shown in a hierarchical fashion. At the top level, there are the main events determined by the relationship. For example, if the relationship is root cause and symptoms, this top level contains all the root cause events. Events beneath those top-level events are the subsidiary ones. Continuing the root cause example, these subsidiary events are the symptoms, with one or more associated with each root cause.

Procedure
To use an event list organized by relationships:

- There is a plus sign (+) next to each top-level event indicating that it has subsidiary events. Click the plus sign to reveal the subsidiary events; the plus sign changes to a minus sign (–). To close the list of subsidiary events, click the minus sign.
- You can use all other functions of the Event Viewer, such as viewing event details, in the normal way.

Monitoring events in the LEL
You can use the Lightweight Event List (LEL) to monitor and manage alerts.

About this task
Note: The Lightweight Event List (LEL) is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

The JavaScript LEL provides users with a similar list of events as the AEL. However, the LEL does not possess a SmartPage tag and therefore cannot be embedded into a Web page. While you can access all the event information stored in the alerts.status, alerts.details, and alerts.journal database tables, the LEL does
not provide you with the additional AEL functionality accessed through the AEL menus. In addition, the LEL displays alerts from the default data source only.

You can use any of the following methods to access an LEL:

**Procedure**

- Open the LEL from the navigation. To open the default LEL, click **Availability > Events > Lightweight Event List (LEL)**.
- Launch an LEL from a linked active object in a map.
- Click a hyperlink containing a correctly-constructed LEL query-string.

**Viewing events in the Lightweight Event List**

Use the functions of the Lightweight Event List (LEL) to control what events are displayed and how the event information is displayed.

**About this task**

**Note:** The Lightweight Event List (LEL) is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

The number of alert rows in each page is determined by the `lel.pagesize.default` property in the `server.init` file. The default is 500.

To view event data in the LEL:

**Procedure**

1. Open an LEL.
2. Use the Lightweight Event List (LEL) window as follows:
   - **Refresh event data**
     Manually refreshes the LEL display area.
     The LEL is refreshed automatically at predefined intervals to show all incoming alerts from the ObjectServer.
   - **Freeze updates to this window**
     Freezes the contents of the LEL display area so no further updates take place.
   - **Select/deselect all rows**
     Selects or deselects all rows in the LEL display area.
   - **Page Slider Buttons**
     Use the page slider to step backwards or forwards through the alert table pages, skip to the first or last alerts, and move to a specific page displaying a block of alerts (the screen page range is constrained to blocks of five).
Displaying full event information in the Lightweight Event List

From the Lightweight Event List (LEL) list, you can view full details of any selected event. All information stored in the following database tables is shown: alerts.status, alerts.details, and alerts.journal.

About this task

Note: The Lightweight Event List (LEL) is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

To display full information about one or more events:

Procedure

1. From the LEL, double-click an event row. The Event Information window opens and the Fields tab is displayed by default.
2. Use this window as follows:
   - **Fields** Click this tab to view a list of all the columns and their corresponding values for a selected event. This information is stored in the ObjectServer alerts.status table.
   - **Details** Click this tab to view alert details that are stored in the ObjectServer alerts.details table.
   - **Journal** Click this tab to view the journal entries for the event, as stored in the ObjectServer alerts.journal table.
   - **Previous** If you selected multiple events from the event list, click this button to display detailed information for the previous event in your selection. This action can fail if events have been deleted elsewhere in the system.
   - **Next** If you selected multiple events from the event list, click this button to display detailed information for the next event in your selection. This action can fail if events have been deleted elsewhere in the system.
   - **Close** Click this button to close this window.

Monitoring events in the Table View

You can view alert data in a tabular format in the Table View. The tables are static, and they present all available events from the default data source. The Table View can be embedded in a Web page using a SmartPage tag.

About this task

Note: The Table View portlet is deprecated from V7.4.0 of the Web GUI. Use the Event Viewer instead.

You can use any of the following methods to view events in a static table format:

Procedure

- Open a page containing a Table View. To open the default Table View, click **Availability > Events > Table View**.
- Open the Table View from a linked active object in a map.
• Click a hyperlink that contains a Table View query string

Related reference:

Appendix D, “SmartPage commands and templates,” on page 379
You can use SmartPage commands to populate Web pages that are served by the Web GUI. You can also use variables in SmartPage commands to dynamically populate predefined template files.

“insert:TABLEVIEW command” on page 387
The insert:TABLEVIEW command inserts a Table View into a Web page.

Appendix G, “URLs for opening Web GUI pages,” on page 417
Use the URL to open Web GUI portlets and applets from a map, from a link on an HTML page, or through a link generated by script tool or a CGI tool.

---

Visualizing high-level event information

In environments that deal with very high numbers of alerts, use the event visualization components to give you an overview of the available data.

About this task

While the Active Event List, Lightweight Event List, and the Table View give detailed and interactive representations of alert status within a network, use the following event visualization components for a comparative and high-level view of the alerts:

Charts Use charts to represent event information against scales that indicate the values of the information.

Event Dashboards Use Event Dashboards to represent multiple SQL queries against the alerts tables of the ObjectServer.

Gauges Use gauges to display the values of metrics.

Maps Use maps to obtain an interactive representation of a network.

---

Displaying event data on mobile devices

The Web GUI includes versions of the Event Dashboard and the Gauges page that can be displayed on mobile devices. Ensure that the selected mobile device is supported.

Displaying summary event data on mobile devices

You can make the summary event data displayed on the Event Dashboard available to Web GUI users on mobile devices, or in a Web browser.

About this task

To publish the summary event data displayed on the Event Dashboard to a mobile device:

Procedure

1. Open the Event Dashboard page that you want to publish.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options. > Personalize.
• To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.

3. Optional: Change any other properties of the Event Dashboard page as required.

4. Copy the URL and send it to users of mobile devices in an e-mail or SMS message. You can also send the URL to any other user of a browser who needs access to the page. Alternatively, scan the QR Code using the camera and QR Code reader on your mobile device. Once the QR Code is recognized, your Web browser launches automatically to display the associated URL.

**Tip:** Ensure that each recipient bookmarks the URL so that they can return to the page at any time.

**Publishing Gauges pages to mobile devices**

You can make the gauges displayed on a Gauges page available to Web GUI users on mobile devices, or in a Web browser.

**About this task**

To publish a Gauges page to a mobile device, generate an HTML file of the page, and then either send its URL to a mobile device or scan the QR Code using your mobile device:

**Procedure**

1. Open the gauge page that you want to publish.
2. Edit your portlet preferences, or, as an administrator, edit the portlet defaults:
   • To edit your portlet preferences, click Edit Options > Personalize.
   • To edit the portlet defaults of all users, click Edit Options > Edit shared settings.
3. Select the HTML for mobile devices check box if it is cleared.
4. Optional: Change any other properties of the page or the gauges as required.
5. Click OK.
   The Web GUI generates the HTML page and displays its URL and associated QR Code.
6. Open the portlet preferences or portlet defaults again.
7. Optional: To preview the page, click the URL.
8. Copy the URL and send it to users of mobile devices in an e-mail or SMS message. You can also send the URL to any other user of a browser who needs access to the page. Alternatively, scan the QR Code using the camera and QR Code reader on your mobile device. Once the QR Code is recognized, your Web browser launches automatically to display the associated URL.
   • Before they can view the page, each recipient needs to log in to the Web GUI as a user with the ncw_gauges_viewer role.
   • Ensure that each recipient bookmarks the URL so that they can return to the page at any time.
   • Repeat this step each time you change any properties of the Gauges page or its gauges.
Related tasks:
“Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182
Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

Visualizing event information on gauges
You can graphically represent the values of various metrics on gauges.

Procedure
To open the supplied pages of gauges click Availability > Events > Key Performance Indicators (KPIs).

Gauges and metrics
The Gauges page displays the values of selected metrics as a set of gauges. Each gauge has a number of properties.
• The metric that the gauge displays
• The appearance of the gauge
• Text labels
• Thresholds
• The actions taken when you click a gauge

In addition, the Web GUI is supplied with two pages of gauges.

Metric
A metric is a type of measurement that is used to determine a quantifiable value from tables or properties in the ObjectServer. Examples of metrics are:
• The current number of client connections to a server
• The number of unresolved network events
• The number of escalated network events

The Web GUI has a number of pre-defined metrics that cover many of the commonly-used scenarios in network monitoring. However a site can define its own collection of metrics in addition to the supplied ones.

Appearance of a gauge
Each gauge can have any of six appearances:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dial</td>
<td>![Example of a gauge icon]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 28. Gauge icons
Table 28. Gauge icons (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermometer</td>
<td>![Thermometer Icon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traffic lights</td>
<td>![Traffic Light Icons]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weather symbol</td>
<td>![Weather Icons]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emoticon</td>
<td>![Emoticon Icons]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status button</td>
<td>![Status Icons]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The dial and thermometer indicate the value of the metric through the pointer and the height of the indicator. For example, on a dial, the needle moves up and down the scale as the value of the metric changes. The remaining icons show whether the value of the metric is low, medium, or high, as determined by the thresholds of the gauge.

Each gauge can use any of these appearances. This enables a site to choose the type of gauge most suitable for each metric.

**Text labels**

Each gauge has three text labels that identify it:

- **Label**: The name of the gauge that appears on the Gauges page.
- **Unit label**: Which indicates the units of the gauge's value. For example, the number of connections, or the number of faults.
- **Description**: A more detailed description of the gauge and what it shows. The Web GUI displays this text when the user hovers the mouse pointer over the gauge.

**Thresholds**

The set of values for each gauge is divided into three ranges: low, medium, and high. There are two thresholds that determine the transition from one range to another. Each threshold is expressed as a percentage of the gauges complete value range. For example, the threshold between low and medium may be 50% and the one between medium and high may be 90%.
The administrator can set the values of the thresholds for any gauge. This enables the displays to be tailored to the importance of the metric.

**Click actions**

When the user clicks a gauge, the system can:

- Display a page associated with a fully-qualified URL, such as a map or a Lightweight Event List (LEL).
- Run JavaScript code

A gauge can also have no click action.

The URL and JavaScript capabilities mean that a wide range of actions can occur when a user clicks the gauge. For example, the system could display list of event associated with the gauge's metric, or launch another Web GUI application, or even applications from other parts of Tivoli that are based on Tivoli Integrated Portal.

**Working with gauges**

A user accesses the Gauges to monitor conditions on the network. They can use the gauge values and the low, medium, and high ranges to identify conditions that need immediate attention. If a gauge has an associated click action, the user can get more detail of the gauge's metric.

A user with suitable user roles, such as the Web GUI administrator, can customize the page and its gauges. The user can:

- Change the title of the page.
- Set the display size for the gauges.
- Set the refresh rate for the gauges.
- Select the data sources and ObjectServers that supply the page with data.
- Modify the properties of any gauge.
- Add and remove gauges.
- Change the order of the gauges on a page.
- Set the thresholds for any gauge's low, medium, and high ranges.
- Create new metrics.
- Change the internationalization settings for the page, such as text direction.

Administrators can also set the default appearance and content of the page for all users. So, the administrator can define the initial page for the site. Then an individual can tailor their copy of the page to suit their needs, if they have the necessary user roles.

**Supplied gauges**

As supplied the Web GUI includes two pages of gauges:

- Performance: which shows key performance metrics for the gateway and the Web GUI such as the number of connections to the Web GUI.
- Details and Journals: which shows key event metrics such as the number of unresolved events and the number of acknowledged events.

To open the supplied pages of gauges click **Availability > Events > Key Performance Indicators (KPIs).**
Related tasks:

- “Setting the thresholds for a gauge” on page 305
  A gauge has three display levels: low, medium, and high. This task shows how to set the thresholds for each display level.

- “Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182
  Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

Related reference:

- “Using the gauge page”
  A Gauges page provides a high-level overview of Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus data.

**Using the gauge page**

A Gauges page provides a high-level overview of Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus data.

The page displays data retrieved from the ObjectServer using metrics. Examples of metrics are the number of clients connected to a server, the total number of escalated events, or the time taken to process a trigger.

The Web GUI presents the data on the page as a number of gauges, one for each metric. The number of gauges on the page and the metrics they display are site-specific. Your Web GUI administrator can customize the page to show only the metrics that are relevant to you, and display each metric in the most appropriate way. The administrator can also create additional Gauges pages for specific types of user and/or specific functional purposes. If you have suitable user roles, you can:

- Customize your copy of a page still further.
- Create an HTML representation of a page that you can either send to mobile devices or scan using mobile devices.
  
  This allows people to monitor the data from almost anywhere.

**Using the Gauges page**

When you open the Gauges page it displays the gauges and sets each to the current value of its associated metric using data from the ObjectServer. The gauges periodically update to show the latest information. The frequency of these updates is 10 seconds, as supplied, but your administrator can specify any value between 10 and 99000 seconds.

Clicking a gauge may provide further information about the metric. For example, the Web GUI may display a Lightweight Event List (LEL) for the events that the metric measures.

What happens when you click a gauge is site-specific. Your Web GUI administrator can associate any URL or JavaScript program with a gauge. Typically, however, actions launch other Web GUI or Tivoli applications.

**User Roles**

To use a Gauges page you need the following user roles:

- To use a page to monitor metrics you need to have the ncw_user role.
- To customize gauges you need to have either the ncw_gauges_editor and ncw_user roles, or the ncw_admin role.
- To view gauges on a mobile device, you need to have the ncw_gauges_viewer role.
A user without administration rights can customize their own copy of the page only. Administrators can customize their own copy of a page and customize the default page, and its contents, for all users.

Related concepts:

“Gauges and metrics” on page 298
The Gauges page displays the values of selected metrics as a set of gauges. Each gauge has a number of properties.

Related tasks:

“Setting Gauge portlet preferences” on page 182
Change the properties of the individual gauges displayed on a Gauges page; add, remove and rearrange gauges; and customize the page itself.

“Publishing Gauges pages to mobile devices” on page 297
You can make the gauges displayed on a Gauges page available to Web GUI users on mobile devices, or in a Web browser.

Creating and managing metrics for gauges
Use the WAAPI capabilities to create and manage metrics for gauges.

WAAPI contains methods, elements and attributes that you use to manage metrics:

- Create a metric
- Replace a metric, or create it if it does not exist
- Modify a metric
- Delete a metric
- Obtain a list of the existing metrics

WAAPI methods, elements, and attributes

Use the following WAAPI methods to manage metrics for gauges:

Table 29. WAAPI elements for gauge metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Task</th>
<th>WAAPI method name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Create a metric</td>
<td>metric.createMetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace or create a metric</td>
<td>metric.createOrReplaceMetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify a metric</td>
<td>metric.modifyMetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete a metric</td>
<td>metric.deleteMetric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List the existing metrics</td>
<td>metric.getList</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For operations on metrics, the <method> element contains the <metric:metric> element. This element contains attributes that identify the metric and its characteristics. It also contains the <metric:command> element that defines the query to obtain the required data from the ObjectServer. In addition, there are two modes for creating, replacing, or modifying a metric: basic and advanced. Basic mode ensures that any restriction filters placed on the referenced ObjectServer tables are applied and so the user receives only the data that they are entitled to see. Advanced mode does not apply any restriction filters and the user sees all the data returned by the query. The examples show the use of these modes, attributes and the child element.
Examples

The following examples show how to use WAAP to manage metrics for gauges. The samplerequest_metric.xml and samplerequest_metric-basic.xml files in webgui-home/waapi/etc/samples contains these examples.

Create a metric

The following WAAP command creates a metric named metricsample1 that displays the count of all critical events in the ObjectServer. It uses advanced mode, the default mode, and so does not apply any restriction filters that may be defined.

```
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.createMetric">
    <metric:metric name="metricsample1"
      displayName="MetricSample1"
      description="Shows count of all Critical events. Created using WAAP."
      units="events"
      max_value="10000"
      min_value="0"
      threshold1="30"
      threshold2="70">
      <metric:command type="sql">
        <metric:text data="select sum(Tally) from alerts.status where Severity=5;"/>
      </metric:command>
    </metric:metric>
  </method>
</methodCall>
```

The following example creates the same metric but uses basic mode that applies any restriction filters defined for the user.

```
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.createMetric">
    <metric:metric name="metricsample1"
      displayName="MetricSample1"
      description="Shows count of all Critical events. Created using WAAP."
      units="events"
      max_value="10000"
      min_value="0"
      threshold1="30"
      threshold2="70">
      <metric:command type="sql" mode="basic">
        <metric:text selectField="sum(Tally)" whereClause="Severity=5" databaseName="alerts" tableName="status"/>
      </metric:command>
    </metric:metric>
  </method>
</methodCall>
```

Replace or create a metric

The following WAAP command creates or replaces a metric named metricsample2 that shows the count of all major events in the ObjectServer.

```
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.createOrReplaceMetric">
    <metric:metric name="metricsample2"
      displayName="MetricSample2"
      description="Shows count of all Major events. Created using WAAP."
      units="events"
      max_value="100"
      min_value="0"
      threshold1="40"
      threshold2="80">
    </metric:metric>
  </method>
</methodCall>
```
To ensure any restriction filters are applied, use the same form of the `<metric:text>` element as shown in the basic mode example of creating a metric. The sample file `samplerequest_metric_basic.xml` has an example of creating and replacing a metric in basic mode.

**Modify a metric**

The following WAAPI command makes three modifications to the metric named `metricsample1`:

- A new maximum value
- New thresholds for the transitions between the low, medium, and high ranges of the metric
- A modified description

```xml
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.modifyMetric">
    <metric:metric name="metricsample1"
      displayName="MetricSample1"
      description="Shows count of all Critical events. Modified using WAAPI."
      units="events"
      maxValue="250"
      minValue="0"
      threshold1="40"
      threshold2="90">
      <metric:command type="sql">
        <metric:text data="select sum(Tally) from alerts.status where Severity=5;"/>
      </metric:command>
    </metric:metric>
  </method>
</methodCall>
```

To ensure any restriction filters are applied, use the same form of the `<metric:text>` element as shown in the basic mode example of creating a metric. The sample file `samplerequest_metric_basic.xml` has an example of modifying a metric in basic mode.

**Delete a metric**

The following WAAPI command deletes the metric named `metricsample2`.

```xml
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.deleteMetric">
    <metric:metric name="metricsample2"/>
  </method>
</methodCall>
```

**List the existing metrics**

The following WAAPI command returns a list of the available metrics.

```xml
<methodCall xmlns:metric="http://www.ibm.com/tivoli/netcool/webtop/metrics/7.4.0">
  <method methodName="metric.getList" />
</methodCall>
```
**Setting the thresholds for a gauge**

A gauge has three display levels: low, medium, and high. This task shows how to set the thresholds for each display level.

**Before you begin**

First note the following for each gauge you want to modify:
- The name of the gauge
  The name appears beneath each gauge on the Gauges page.
- The value of the thresholds for transitions from low to medium and from medium to high.

You express each threshold as a percentage of the gauge’s range (maximum value minus minimum value). Use the following method to determine the percentage value of each threshold:
1. Decide on the actual values on the gauge that are to be the threshold points.
2. Calculate the percentage equivalent of each point as follows:
   \[
   \text{threshold}(\%) = \frac{\text{threshold} - \text{Gmin}}{\text{Gmax} - \text{Gmin}} \times 100
   \]
   where:
   - **threshold(%)** is the threshold expressed as a percentage.
   - **threshold** is the threshold point on the gauge.
   - **Gmin** is the minimum value of the gauge.
   - **Gmax** is the maximum value of the gauge.

**About this task**

To change the thresholds for one or more gauges:

**Procedure**
1. Log in to the Web GUI server using a command-line interface.
2. Go to the directory: `webgui-home/etc/configstore/ncwMetrics`.
3. Open the XML file for a gauge using a text editor. The name of the file is based on the name of the gauge on the Web GUI.
4. Locate the `<metric>` element and:
   a. Set the value of the `threshold1` attribute to the percentage value for the low to medium transition.
   b. Set the value of the `threshold2` attribute to the percentage value for the medium to high transition.
5. Save the file.
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 for the other gauges you want to change.
7. Exit from the text editor.
8. Depending on the configuration of your site, you might need to restart the server.
Example

The characteristics and requirements for a gauge are:
- The gauge has a minimum value of 5 and a maximum of 55.
- The threshold points are 10 and 50.

The thresholds, expressed as percentages, are:
- Lower threshold:
  \[(10 - 5)/(55 - 5) * 100 = 10\%\]
- Upper threshold:
  \[(50 - 5)/(55 - 5) * 100 = 90\%\]

The `<metric>` element for this gauge is:

```xml
<metric name="adminconnections"
  displayName="Administrator"
  displayNameKey="ncw.metric.adminconnections.displayname"
  description="Number of Administration client connections"
  descriptionKey="ncw.metric.adminconnections.description"
  units="clients"
  unitsKey="ncw.metric.adminconnections.units"
  maxValue="55"
  minValue="5"
  threshold1="10"
  threshold2="90">
</metric>
```

Related concepts:
- “The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and
  the implications for administering and using the product.

Related tasks:
- “Restarting the server” on page 1
  After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web
  GUI server.

Visualizing event information on Event Dashboards

Use the Event Dashboard portlet to maintain a high-level overview of events that
match SQL queries. From the Event Dashboard dashboard, you can open an Active
Event List (AEL) to investigate events in depth.

Procedure

To open the default Event Dashboard, click Availability > Events > Event
Dashboard.

Event Dashboard overview

Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert
category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

About monitor boxes

A monitor box contains the following buttons and fields:

Filter name
- Displays the name of the filter that is associated with this monitor box.
To edit the filter, click **Edit Filters** next to the filter name. The Filter Builder is opened, and the data and SQL query associated with the filter are loaded.

**Total**  This value represents the total number of events that match the filter.

**Highest**  This value represents the highest severity among the alerts that match the filter.

**Lowest**  This value represents the lowest severity among the alerts that match the filter.

**Metric**  This value represents a calculation that is applied to the alerts that match the filter. This derived value shows the average, sum, lowest, or highest value of a selected column in the **alerts** database table that is being queried by the filter.

**Distribution meter**  This area shows the severity distribution of the alerts that match the filter. The colors used in the bars are preconfigured to identify the different severity levels.

In the portlet preferences, you can configure the Event Dashboard to perform actions when you click the distribution meter. In the Preferences window, you can specify how the distribution meter is displayed: as a histogram or in a lava lamp format. You can also switch off the distribution meter.

You must make sure that the data sources specified in the filter and the data sources selected in the Event Dashboard contain identical fields; if this is not the case, an error message is displayed in the affected monitor boxes instead of event data.
Related concepts:

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and
the implications for administering and using the product.

Related tasks:

“Setting up filters for event data” on page 252
Use the Filter Builder to apply filters to an event list or Event Dashboard portlet. Administrators and read-write users can create and edit filters.

“Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the
actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the
portlet.

“Adding monitor boxes to Event Dashboard portlets”
To add a new monitor box to an Event Dashboard portlet, use the Filter Builder to
add a new filter.

“Deleting monitor boxes from Event Dashboards” on page 309
To delete a monitor box from an Event Dashboard portlet, delete the filter that corresponds to the monitor box.

“Customizing monitor box information” on page 310
To change the information that is displayed on a monitor box on an Event
Dashboard portlet, edit the filter that controls the monitor box.

“Changing the event information displayed on monitor boxes” on page 311
To specify the type of information displayed in the monitor boxes, and the format
of that information, use the Event Dashboard preferences.

“Customizing the monitor boxes on Event Dashboards” on page 312
Use the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard portlet to control how the
monitor boxes are arranged, and which monitor boxes are displayed.

“Freezing and unfreezing Event Dashboards” on page 313
To take a snapshot of the alert information before it is changed by updates from
the ObjectServer, you can freeze all the monitor boxes on the Event Dashboard.

“Monitoring events in the AEL” on page 274
Use the Active Event List (AEL) to interactively monitor and manage events.

Adding monitor boxes to Event Dashboard portlets
To add a new monitor box to an Event Dashboard portlet, use the Filter Builder to
add a new filter.

About this task

As a read-write user you can add filters to the My Filters list. The filters in this list
are assigned to your user profile.

You can add filters to the My Filters list, and to the user profiles of read-write
users. You can also add global filters.

To add monitor boxes to an Event Dashboard portlet:

Procedure

1. Open an Event Dashboard portlet.

2. To open the Filter Builder, click Edit Filters .

3. From the Available Filters list, select My Filters.
4. Select the level of access for the filter:
   • To make the filter available to all users, select **Global Filters**.
   • To assign the filter to a specific user, select the required user name.
5. Click **Add Filter**.
6. Use the Filter Builder to create the required filter.
7. Click **Save** to save the filter, or click **Save and Close** to save the filter and close the Filter Builder.

**Results**

A new monitor box that displays the events matching the filter is added to the Event Dashboard portlet.

**Related concepts**:
- “Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
  Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.
- “Filter Builder overview” on page 252
  The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.
- “The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Deleting monitor boxes from Event Dashboards**

To delete a monitor box from an Event Dashboard portlet, delete the filter that corresponds to the monitor box.

**Before you begin**

As a read-write user, you can delete filters that are assigned to your user. In the Filter Builder, these filters are contained in the **My Filters** list.

You can delete filters assigned to your user, filters that are assigned to other users, and global and system filters.

**About this task**

To delete monitor boxes from an Event Dashboard portlet:

**Procedure**

1. Open an Event Dashboard portlet and note the name of the filter that you want to delete.

2. To open the Filter Builder, on the tool bar, click **Edit Filters**.

3. In the Filter Builder, from the **Available Filters** list, select the list that contains the required filter:
   • To delete a filter associated with your user, select **My Filters**.
   • Select **Global Filters**, **System Filters**, or the user name associated with the required filter.

4. From the list, select the filter that you want to delete and click **Delete**.

5. Click **OK**.
Results

The monitor box that corresponded to the deleted filter is no longer displayed on the Event Dashboard portlet.

If you delete a global filter, the monitor box is immediately removed from the Event Dashboard.

Related concepts:
“Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Customizing monitor box information
To change the information that is displayed on a monitor box on an Event Dashboard portlet, edit the filter that controls the monitor box.

About this task

As a read-write user, you can edit only filters that are assigned to your user. In the Filter Builder, these filters are contained in the My Filters list.

You can delete filters assigned to your user, filters that are assigned to other users, and global and system filters.

Procedure

1. On an Event Dashboard portlet, next to the filter name of the required monitor box, click Edit Filters .
   The Filter Builder opens, and the selected filter is loaded.
2. Edit the general properties of the filter.
3. Edit the SQL query of the filter by using either Basic mode or Advanced mode.
4. If the filter is a dependent filter, edit the dependencies.
5. To save your changes, click Save and Close.

Related concepts:
“Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a monitor box, which represents a filter.

“Filter Builder overview” on page 252
The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.

“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.
Changing the event information displayed on monitor boxes
To specify the type of information displayed in the monitor boxes, and the format of that information, use the Event Dashboard preferences.

About this task
To change the information on the monitor boxes:

Procedure
1. On an Event Dashboard portlet, click Edit Preferences.
2. On the Preferences window, click Monitor Boxes and complete the fields as follows:
   - **Show Number of Alerts**: Displays the number of alerts that match the filter.
   - **Show Highest Severity**: Displays the highest severity of the alerts that match the filter.
   - **Show Lowest Severity**: Displays the lowest severity of the alerts that match the filter.
   - **Show Highest Severity Border**: Displays a border around the monitor box in the color of the highest-severity alert that matches the filter.
   - **Show Metric**: Displays the selected filter metric value.
   - **Show Highest Color** (Applicable only if you selected the Show Highest Severity option): Displays the highest-severity alert indicator in the color of the alert, for example, in red if the highest-severity alert is critical.
   - **Show Lowest Color** (Applicable only if you selected the Show Lowest Severity option): Displays the lowest-severity alert indicator in the color of the alert.
   - **Font**: Select the font and the font size for the text on the monitor boxes.
   - **Distribution meter**: Specify the format for the distribution meter:
     - **Show Lava Lamp**: Displays the distribution meter as a series of horizontal bars.
     - **Show Histogram**: Displays the distribution meter as a bar graph.
     - **Show None**: Switches off the distribution meter.
3. Save the settings for use in the current session, or for future sessions:
   - To use these preferences in the current session only, click Apply.
   - To use these preferences in future sessions, click Save.
4. Optional: If the Event Dashboard is configured to open an Active Event List (AEL), click the other tabs and change the AEL settings.
5. To exit the Preferences window, click Close.
Customizing the monitor boxes on Event Dashboards

Use the portlet preferences of the Event Dashboard portlet to control how the monitor boxes are arranged, and which monitor boxes are displayed.

Before you begin

To change the portlet preferences of an Event Dashboard portlet, your user must be assigned the ncw_dashboard_editor role.

About this task

You control the layout of the monitor boxes in the Dashboard Layout area of the Edit Event Dashboard Portlet Preferences window.

Procedure

1. On an Event Dashboard portlet, click Edit .
2. To remove monitor boxes from the layout, use the following options:
   - To remove a single monitor box, on the monitor box, click Remove Monitor Box .
   - To remove all monitor boxes, click Remove All Monitor Boxes .
3. To add a new filter, and a new monitor box, click **Edit Filters** and use the Filter Builder to specify the properties of the filter and the SQL query.

   **Tip:** If you want all new filters to be automatically added as monitor boxes to the Event Dashboard, select **Show Assigned Filters**.

4. To restore a previously-removed monitor box, or add a new filter as a monitor box, click **Add Monitor Box** and, from the list, select the required monitor box. The monitor boxes are listed by filter name.

5. To show all filters on the layout (that is, all global filters and all filters assigned to your user in the **My Filters** list) select **Show Assigned Filters**.

   **Tip:** To display only a subset of the available filters:
   a. Select **Show Assigned** to display all the available filters.
   b. Clear **Show Assigned Filters**.
   c. Remove the monitor boxes that you do not require.

6. To change the appearance of the Event Dashboard, click **Edit Preferences** and change the settings under **Monitor Boxes**.

7. To change the arrangement of the monitor boxes on the Event Dashboard, proceed as follows:
   a. To change the number of columns in which the monitor boxes are arranged, in the **Columns** list, select or type the required number.
   b. Drag the monitor boxes into the required arrangement.

8. To save and apply your settings to the portlet, click **OK**.

9. To restore the default settings for the portlet, as specified by the administrator, click **Reset to Defaults**.

**Related concepts:**

- “Event Dashboard overview” on page 306
  Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a **monitor box**, which represents a filter.

- “Filter Builder overview” on page 252
  The Filter Builder is an HTML utility that you use to construct filters that are dynamically applied to event data.

**Related tasks:**

- “Changing the event information displayed on monitor boxes” on page 311
  To specify the type of information displayed in the monitor boxes, and the format of that information, use the Event Dashboard preferences.

**Freezing and unfreezing Event Dashboards**

To take a snapshot of the alert information before it is changed by updates from the ObjectServer, you can freeze all the monitor boxes on the Event Dashboard.

**Procedure**

- To freeze the monitor boxes, click **Freeze/Unfreeze**.
  The updates from the ObjectServer are suppressed. On the status bar of the portlet, the **Auto refresh** in countdown is paused.
- To unfreeze the monitor boxes and obtain the updates from the ObjectServer, click **Freeze/Unfreeze**.
On the status bar of the portlet, the **Auto refresh** in countdown resumes.

- Optional: To force a refresh of the monitor boxes independently of the refresh rate, click **Refresh**.

**Related concepts:**

“Event Dashboard overview” on page 306

Use this window to view one or more categories of alert information. Each alert category is depicted by a **monitor box**, which represents a filter.

**Customizing Active Event List actions on Event Dashboards**

To customize the actions that you can execute from an Event Dashboard portlet, and from an Active Event List (AEL) that is opened from the Event Dashboard, use the portlet preferences.

**Before you begin**

To change the portlet preferences of an Event Dashboard portlet, your user must be assigned the `ncw_dashboard_editor` role.

**Procedure**

1. On an Event Dashboard portlet, click **Edit**.
2. In the **Single-click** list, select the action that you want to be performed when you click the distribution meter.
   - **Update Event List (using wires)**: Sets the filter and view of the event list to match those on the monitor box.
   - **Open AEL in New Window**: Opens a new AEL applet with the filter and default view associated with the clicked monitor box. If you select this option, you can specify what actions are executed when you click or double-click a row in the AEL. This is the default action.
   - **Open Event Viewer in New Window**: Opens a new Event Viewer window with the filter and default view associated with the clicked monitor box.
   - **Script**: Executes a custom JavaScript when you click the monitor box.
3. Optional: If you selected the **Script** option, type a Java script in the **Script** field. You can use the following tokens in the script:

   ```javascript
   $(FILTER)
   The name of the filter associated with the monitor box that is clicked.

   $(FILTERCATEGORY)
   The category of the filter associated with the monitor box.

   $(FILTEROWNER)
   The owner of the filter (required when $(FILTERCATEGORY) represents a user or group filter).

   $(VIEW)
   The name of the view associated with the monitor box that was clicked.

   $(VIEWCATEGORY)
   The category of the view associated with the monitor box that was clicked.

   $(DATASOURCES)
   The datasource(s) associated with the monitor box that was clicked.

   $(PORTLETNAMESPACE)
   The portlet namespace of the Event Dashboard portlet.
   ```
For sample scripts, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide*.

4. Optional: If you selected the **Open AEL in New Window** option, select the actions that you want to be performed when you click or double-click a row in the AEL.

   - **Event list single-click action**: Select the action to perform when you click an event in the AEL once. You can select default actions, such as opening the information window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

   - **Event list double-click action**: Select the action to perform when you double-click an event in the AEL. You can select default actions, such as opening the information window for the selected event, or you can select tools to be run on event data. You can create tools in the Tool Creation editor.

5. Under **AEL Appearance**, specify the areas of the AEL that you want to be displayed. Make these settings only if you selected **Open AEL in New Window** from the **Single-Click Action** list.

6. To save and apply your settings to the portlet, click **OK**.

**Example**

The following example shows the script used to send a TIP launchPage event to launch an Event Viewer page with context when you click the monitor box:

```javascript
var event = {
    "name" : "http://ibm.com/isclite#launchPage",
    "NavigationNode":
    "item.desktop.navigationElement.EventViewer",
    "filterName": "${FILTER}",
    "filterType": "${FILTERCATEGORY}",
    "filterOwner": "${FILTEROWNER}",
    "viewName": "${VIEW}",
    "viewType": "${VIEWCATEGORY}",
    "dataSource": "${DATASOURCES}",
    "switchPage": "true"
};

$(PORTLETTNSPACENAME)sendPortletEvent(event);
```

For more information about creating scripts that run from the Event Dashboard, see the *IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Web GUI Administration and User’s Guide*.

**Related concepts**:

"The Web GUI in a load balancing environment" on page 133

Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Creating a page with an Event Dashboard and Active Event List**

To obtain a high-level overview of events and be able to jump to an in-depth view of specific events, create a page that contains the Event Dashboard portlet and the Active Event List (AEL) applet, and customize the Event Dashboard to refresh the AEL when you click a monitor box.

**Before you begin**

To create pages in Tivoli Integrated Portal, your user requires the iscadmins role.
Procedure
1. From the navigation, click Settings > Pages.
3. Provide a descriptive name for the page and choose its location in the navigation tree. Then Click OK.
4. On the Choose a Portlet page, select Event Dashboard and click OK.
5. Click Horizontal Split  
6. On the Choose a Portlet page that is displayed below the Event Dashboard portlet, select Active Event List (AEL) and click OK.
7. Click Save.
8. To specify user access to the page:
   a. Click Roles with Access to this Page and click Add.
   b. From the Available Roles list, select the required roles and click Add.
9. Optional: If you have defined Tivoli Integrated Portal views, add the page to a view:
   a. Click View Membership and click Add.
   b. From the Available Views list, select the required views and click Add.
10. Click Save.
11. To customize the Event Dashboard to refresh the AEL:
    a. On the Event Dashboard portlet toolbar, click Edit options > Edit Preferences.
    Tip: To set the portlet preferences for all users, click Edit options > Personalize or Edit options > Edit Shared Settings.
    b. From the Single-Click Action list, select Update Event List (using wires).
    c. Click OK.
12. To test the interaction between the Event Dashboard portlet and the AEL applet, in the Event Dashboard, click the distribution indicator of one of the monitor boxes.

Results
On the page, the AEL is updated and now contains only the events that are captured by the filter specified for the monitor box.

Related concepts:
"The Web GUI in a load balancing environment“ on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Related tasks:
"Setting Event Dashboard portlet preferences and defaults” on page 176
To customize the appearance and setup of the Event Dashboard portlet, and the actions that can be executed from the monitor boxes, edit the preferences of the portlet.
Visualizing event information on maps

You can use maps to graphically represent the status of a network.

**Related concepts:**

"About maps"

Maps are Web applets that you use to create a view of a network, for example of a network topology or a geographical overview. You can overlay a background image with interactive widgets, called **map objects**, that can be configured to display alert data, and to open event lists for a detailed view of the network.

**About maps**

Maps are Web applets that you use to create a view of a network, for example of a network topology or a geographical overview. You can overlay a background image with interactive widgets, called **map objects**, that can be configured to display alert data, and to open event lists for a detailed view of the network.

**Map resources**

Map resources are the background graphic for the map or any icons that you want to use as map objects. The background typically represents a network topology or a geography, although you do not have to specify a background image. Default graphics and icons are provided; alternatively, you can upload additional background images and icons as map resources. Map resources can be .gif files, .jpeg files, or .png files.

**Map objects**

Map objects are items that you can put on a map, to represent part of a network topology, for example. Map objects include buttons, lines, or icons.

After you have put an object on a map, you can customize the appearance and behavior of the map object, which are determined by the type of map object. The types of map object are as follows:

**Active objects**

Map objects that can display alert severity information. You associate an active object with a filter; when the map is displayed, the color of an active object changes to show the highest severity status alert that is captured by the filter. You can also turn on hover help for the object, which displays information from the filter.

**Inactive objects**

Map objects that do not display alert severity information, and can be associated only with the URL of another Web page, for example, a page that contains another map.

**Monitor boxes**

Use monitor boxes to display detailed alert severity information on a map. You associate a monitor box with a filter; when the map is displayed, the distribution meter of the monitor box displays the range of events captured by the filter. You can customize the distribution meter to be a histogram or lavalamp; you can also customize the appearance of the monitor box.

**Text**

Use a text object to write text directly onto a map.

Active map objects, monitor boxes and text objects can be associated with the following applets and pages:

- Active Event List (AEL)
• Lightweight Event List (LEL)
• Table View
• URL of a Web page, for example, a page that contains another map

Map preferences

Each map has a number of preferences, that determine its overall appearance. You can adjust these preferences to suit your needs and the use that the map is put to.

Map name
The identity of the displayed map. You can choose from a number in a drop-down list.

Sound URL
The URL of a sound file to play when the map is updated due to a refresh operation.

Refresh rate
The time (in seconds) between refresh operation on the map.

Hover help for active objects
Determines whether to display hover help for active objects on the map that are associated with filters. This can help users determine what action is associated with an object.

Status bar
Determines whether to display a status bar with the map. The bar includes a countdown timer until the next refresh operation.

Use Customiser
Determines whether to use the height specified in the map or the value specified in the Height preference.

Height
Specifies the height to use when displaying the map. This value works in conjunction with the Use Customiser preference. When in use this value overrides the height specified in the map definition.

Map editors

To add map objects to a map, and customize the map objects, use the Java Map Editor, which provides a graphical interface for customizing maps, or the HTML Map Editor, in which you customize the map by writing HTML code in a text field.

Publishing maps

To make maps visible to other users, add the maps to the navigation in Tivoli Integrated Portal.

First, you create a page in the Tivoli Integrated Portal. Then, you add either of the following portlets to the page:
• Map
• Web widget

Finally, you reference the map by editing the portlet preferences.
Related tasks:

**Chapter 11, “Filtering event information,” on page 249**

Network events typically create many alerts that are not of immediate importance to the personnel monitoring the system. Use filters and views to control the event information that is displayed to users.

**“Visualizing event information on maps” on page 317**

You can use maps to graphically represent the status of a network.

**Previewing maps**

As an administrator, after Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus is installed, to familiarize yourself with maps, you can view sample maps that are deployed within the Web GUI.

**About this task**

The Web GUI provides three default maps that communicate with a simnet probe. The simnet probe sends simulated events to the ObjectServer; the probe is provided with Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus. After you start the simnet probe, the maps are populated with events.

To preview maps:

**Procedure**

1. Run the simnet probe by entering the command for your operating system. For example: `$NCHOME/omnibus/probes/nco_p_simnet -server NETCOOLPRI`
2. In Tivoli Integrated Portal, click **Administration > Event Management Tools > Example Maps.**
   - To view a sample eCommerce map that uses active icons, represented by the default graphics, click **eCommerce**
   - To view a sample network on a geographical map that uses active buttons to open monitor boxes, click **Geographic**

**Creating maps**

After you have added the resources that you want to use in your map, you can create the map itself.

**Related concepts:**

**“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133**

Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Creating maps using the Java Map Editor:**

Use the Java Map Editor to create and edit maps.

**About this task**

To create a map using the Java Map Editor:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools > Maps > Map Creation.**
2. To open the Java Map Editor, click **Java > New.**
3. In the Java Map Editor applet, type a name for your map in the **Input** field.
   The map name must be alphanumeric and cannot contain spaces.
4. Click OK.

What to do next

You can now customize the map properties using the Java Map Editor.

Related tasks:

- "Customizing maps using the Java Map Editor" on page 321

After you have created a map, use the Java Map Editor to add active or inactive objects to the map, and configure the properties of the objects. Also customize the properties of the map, such as the access permissions, size, and background image.

Creating maps using the HTML Map Editor:

Use the HTML Map Editor to create and edit maps.

About this task

To create a map by using the HTML Map Editor:

Procedure

1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools > Maps > Map Creation.
2. Click HTML and then click New.
3. In the HTML Map Editor, use the following fields and buttons to provide the map settings:
   - **Map name**
     Type a name for the map. The map name must be alphanumeric and cannot contain spaces.
   - **Group name**
     Select the group for which you want to grant access to the map. The * group grants access to all users including any new users you create.
   - **Background image**
     Type the name of a background image, for example background.gif. The image must be in either GIF or JPEG format and must be uploaded as a map resource.
   - **Background color**
     Type the color for the background.
   - **Height**
     Type the height of the page in pixels.
   - **Width**
     Type width of the page in pixels.
4. Click Submit.

What to do next

You can now specify the details of the new map by using HTML map editing commands in a text editor.

Related tasks:

- "Customizing maps in HTML" on page 332

As an alternative to the Java interface, you can use the HTML Map Editor to customize maps. Enter the HTML map editing commands in the map display text field to configure maps.
Customizing maps
After you have created your map, you can customize it by added map objects to
the map, and editing the properties of the map objects.

Related concepts:
“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and
the implications for administering and using the product.

Customizing maps using the Java Map Editor:
After you have created a map, use the Java Map Editor to add active or inactive
objects to the map, and configure the properties of the objects. Also customize the
properties of the map, such as the access permissions, size, and background image.

About this task
To customize a map using the Java Map Editor:

Procedure
1. Click Administration > Event Management Tools > Maps > Map Creation.
2. Select the map that you want to customize.
3. Click Java and then click Modify.

Results
The Java Map Editor is launched with the properties of the selected map loaded.

What to do next
Now use the Java Map Editor to customize the map properties and the map
objects.

Setting access to a map:
You can define which user group has access to a map.

Procedure
To restrict access to a map to a specific user group:
1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the Access Control pane, select the user group that has access to the map.
   To specify unrestricted access to a map, choose the entry *.
   
   Note: Users with the ncw_admin role can edit any map on the system.
   However, they can view only unrestricted maps or maps available to groups
   that the users are members of.
3. Click File > Save to save the settings of the map.
Setting map size and background:

Use the Java Map Editor to set the background image for your map. Use the Color Picker to set the background color for your map.

About this task

To set the size and background of the map:

Procedure
1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. Use the following fields and buttons to set the size and the background properties of the map:
   
   **Map Size**
   Set the width and height of the map in pixels.

   **Background**
   Set the background color for the map using the [Open a color picker](#) button.

   Select a background image for the map from the list. The image overlays the background color. When you select a background image, the size of the map in pixels is automatically resized to the size of the background image.

   **Tip:** Images that have been saved as resources for the current map appear in this list, and a number of generic images are provided by default.

3. Select Server > Resync to update the available images for the map. After adding a new resource, you must always update the Java Map Editor to include the new resource in the list of available items to be used in maps.

4. Click File > Save to save the settings of the map.

Related concepts:

"Color picker" on page 331
The color picker is used to select the color of the map background, inactive buttons, lines, and text.

Related tasks:

"Previewing map resources" on page 342
Use the Map Resources portlet to preview images and icons for your maps.

Setting the map grid for assistance:

Map items can be moved within the map by using either the mouse or the cursor keys. Use the grid feature to assist you in positioning and aligning these items.

About this task

To turn on the grid feature:

Procedure
1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. Click View and select the Show Grid check box. Alternatively, you can use Ctrl+G to switch on (and off) the map grid.
3. If it is not already selected, select the **Snap to Grid** check box in the **View** menu. When this feature is turned on, it causes all items on the map to snap to the nearest adjacent top and left-side grid lines.

   If the **Snap to Grid** check box is not selected, you can also select the **Autolayout** option from the **View** menu to initiate an automatic adjustment of all objects on the map to the nearest adjacent top and left-side grid lines.

4. Resize the cell spacing of the map grid by selecting **Grid Size** from the **View** menu, and entering the desired cell space (in pixels).

**Results**

The placement of map items is now controlled by their proximity to the adjacent top and left-side grid lines.

**Adding map objects and resources:**

Use the Java Map Editor to add map resources, such as the background graphic for the map and graphics that you want to use as map objects, and also to add the map objects.

**About this task**

Map resources can be .gif files, .jpeg files, or .png files.

To add map resources and map objects:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. To add map resources:
   a. Click **File > Import Image**.
   b. Select the required image and click **Open**.
   c. Click **OK**.
   d. Repeat until you have added all the required map resources.
3. To set the background for the map, select an option from the **Background** area:
   - To add a background color, click the Color Picker, or type a color in the field.
   - To use a map resource for the background image, for example, a geographical map, select a resource from the list.

   If you select a map resource, the size of the map snaps to the size of the resource.
4. Add the required map objects:
   - To add an active button, click **Active rectangle button**
     Optionally, specify the shape of the button: rectangle, rounded rectangle or circle.
   - To add an inactive button, click **Rectangle button**
     Optionally, specify the shape of the button: rectangle, rounded rectangle or circle.
   - To add an active icon, click **New active icon**
     Icons are added with a default placeholder graphic; you specify the graphic when you edit the properties of the map object.
To add an inactive icon, click **New icon**.
Icons are added with a default placeholder graphic; you specify the graphic when you edit the properties of the map object.

To add an active line, click **New active line**.

To add an inactive line, click **New line**.

To add a monitor box, click **Lavalamp Monitor**.
Optionally, specify the format of the distribution indicator: Lavalamp or histogram.

To add a text object, click **New text**.

5. Position the mouse pointer where you want to add the object on the map and click the map.
The new object is placed on the map.

6. To add all the required map objects, repeat steps 4 on page 323 and 5.

What to do next

You can now edit the properties of the map objects.

*Setting map object properties:*

The properties of a map object control the appearance of the object and the information associated with it; the properties also include the name and the label. Depending on the type of object, the properties that you can set are displayed automatically.

**Before you begin**

In the case of image objects, if you want to add a new image to an object, you must have added the image as a map resource. After you have added a new resource, you must refresh the Java Map Editor window.

**About this task**

In the case of monitor box objects, if you select extra information to be displayed on a monitor box (step 9b on page 325), you must make sure that the dimensions of the monitor box are large enough to accommodate the information. If the dimensions are too small, none of these details can be displayed and the monitor box might resemble a button on the map.

To configure the properties of a map object:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. To open the Properties window, double-click the required object on the map.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. In the **Name** field, type the name of the object. Each object on a map must have a unique name.
5. In the **Label** field, type the label that you want to be displayed in the status bar of the Web browser when the mouse pointer is hovered over the object.
6. In the **Translucency** field, type a percentage value to control the level of translucency. 100% means that the object is completely translucent.

**Tip:** For active map objects: To use the glowing background effect for event severity, set a low translucency value.

7. To enable a shadow for the map object, select **Show Shadow**.

8. If the object is a button, set the following additional properties:
   a. Under **Type**, select the shape of the button.

      **Tip:** If you selected a rounded rectangle or elliptical button, to specify the corner radius of the button, click **Size & Position** and type a value in the **Arc Diameter** field.
   b. From the **Legend** list, select the text or value that you want displayed on the button.

      - **None**  No text or value is displayed on the button.
      - **Label**  Displays the text entered in the **Label** field.
      - **Count**  For active buttons only: Displays the total number of alerts for the filter.
      - **Metric**  For active buttons only: displays the metric measurement.

9. If the object is a monitor box, set the following additional properties
   a. Under **Type**, specify how you want the distribution indicator to be displayed.
   b. Specify which information about alert distribution you want to be displayed on the monitor box:

      - **Show Label**  Displays the label of monitor box, as entered in the **Label** field
      - **Show Total**  Displays the total number of alerts in the distribution.
      - **Show Highest**  Displays the highest severity recorded for the alert distribution.
      - **Show Lowest**  Displays the lowest severity recorded for the alert distribution.
      - **Show Metric**  Displays the metric measurement.
      - **Show Severity Border**  Displays a color border around the monitor box border showing the highest alert severity.

         **Tip:** Select this option if the alert distribution is large and the total number of alerts at the highest severity level is too small to appear in the distribution indicator.

      - **Show Lowest Color**  Displays the lowest-severity alert indicator in the color of the alert.

10. If the object is an icon, set the following additional properties:
   a. Active icons only: Under **Type**, select the shape of the highlight bar that displays the event severity color.
Tip: If you selected a rounded rectangle or elliptical button, to specify the corner radius of the button, click **Size & Position** and type a value in the **Arc Diameter** field.

b. Active icons only: From the **Legend** list, select the text or value that you want to be displayed on the icon.

   - **None** No text or value is displayed on the icon.
   - **Count** Displays the total number of alerts for the filter.
   - **Metric** Displays the metric measurement.

c. From the **Image** list, select the image that you want to be displayed on the icon.

11. To save the settings, click **OK**.
12. To resynchronize the Java Map Editor with the Web GUI server, click **Server > Resync**.

**Linking map objects with URLs:**

You can associate a map object with a URL. In the map, when the object is clicked, the URL is opened. The URL can point to a SmartPage template or other resource, such as a CGI script.

**Before you begin**

CGI scripts must be registered before you can link a map object to the script.

**About this task**

If you link an active map object with a URL, you do not have to assign a filter.

**Restriction:** You cannot associate inactive icons or inactive lines with a URL.

To link a active map object to a URL:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. To open the Properties window, double-click the required object on the map.
3. Click **Associations**.
4. From the **Action** list, select **Open URL**.
5. To link the object with a resource on the Web GUI server, in the **URL** field, type the URL of the resource.
   
   To open an Active Event List (AEL), type a URL as shown in the following example:
   
   ```
   $(SERVER)/AELView?filtertype=type&filename=filename&view=viewname&
   datasource=datasourcename
   ```

   Where the parameters are as follows:

   - **$(SERVER)** Resolves to protocol://server:port/context-root/webtop. This enables maps to be transported to other Web GUI servers. The value context-root refers to the context root of the Web GUI. This can be configured during installation and the default value is ibm/console.
datasource
A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

Tip: If you have defined multiple data sources, you can specify them in the string by using a comma-separated list, as shown in the following example:

datasource=datasource1,datasource2

If you specify multiple data sources, make sure that the filter, either a predefined filter or a transient filter, queries fields that are contained in all data sources. If you select a data source that is not defined in the filter, an error message is displayed in the AEL instead of event data.

6. To link the object to a SmartPage template:
   a. Click Open the Template builder dialog.
   b. In the URL Build Tool window, select a SmartPage template type from the list.
   c. Enter the value of any variables contained in the template SmartPage tag source code.
      For example, in the table.html template, you must provide a map name that corresponds to the Map_Name variable, and an entity name that corresponds to the Filter_Name and Filter_Type variable.
   d. Click OK.

In the URL field, the template address and SmartPage tag variable details are displayed as a query string, for example:

$\{(SERVER)/Template/table.html?Map_Name=Summary&Filter_Name=AllEvents&FilterType=Global

7. In the Target field, specify how you want the resource to be displayed:
   • To display the resource in a named IFrame portlet, type the name of the IFrame
   • To display the resource in same frame as the map, replacing the map, select_self.
   • To display the resource in new Web browser window, select_blank.
   • To display the resource in the parent frame set containing the source link, select_parent.
   • To display the resource in the frame containing the source link, select_top.

8. From the Data Source list, select a data source.
   The default is the default data source specified in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file.

9. Active icons only: From the Feedback list, specify how event information is displayed in the icon:
   • Fill Background: The icon background changes color to denote event severity. If you select this option, the icon must have transparent areas for the feedback color to be visible in the map.
   • Highlight Bar: A bar is displayed below the map object. The bar changes color to denote event severity. To select the shape of the highlight bar, change the Type setting on the Properties tab.
- **Glow Background:** The background of the icon changes color to denote event severity. If you select this option, change the Translucency setting on the Properties tab so that you can see the severity color behind the icon.

10. To save the settings, click **OK**.

Related tasks:
- Chapter 11, “Filtering event information,” on page 249
- Network events typically create many alerts that are not of immediate importance to the personnel monitoring the system. Use filters and views to control the event information that is displayed to users.

- “Registering CGI scripts” on page 213
- After you have installed a CGI script on the server, for security purposes, the script must be registered. CGI scripts cannot be used as tools until they are registered.

Related reference:
- “Template overview” on page 388
- The Web GUI supports dynamically-processed generic Web pages called *templates*. Templates contain SmartPage tag instances that are composed of attribute variables rather than hard-coded attribute data entries.

- Appendix G, “URLs for opening Web GUI pages,” on page 417
- Use the URL to open Web GUI portlets and applets from a map, from a link on an HTML page, or through a link generated by script tool or a CGI tool.

**Linking map objects with event lists:**

You can associate an active map object with an Active Event List (AEL), the Event Viewer, Lightweight Event List (LEL), or Table View. When you click the object, the specified event list is opened.

**About this task**

To link an active map object with an event list, you must assign a filter to the object. If you do not assign a filter to an active button or an active line, the button or line is not displayed correctly on the published map. In the Java Map Editor, active buttons or lines to which no filters are assigned are yellow.

**Restriction:** You can assign only global filters and system filters to an active map object. You cannot assign user filters.

To link an active map object with an event list:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. To open the Properties window, double-click the required object on the map.
3. Click **Associations**.
4. From the **Actions** list, select the event list that you want to be opened when you click the map object:
   - To open an AEL, click **Active Event List (AEL)**
   - To open the Event Viewer, click **Event Viewer**
   - To open an LEL, click **Lightweight Event List (LEL)**
   - To open a Table View, click **Event Table**
   - To update an Event List using wires, click **Update Event List (using wires)**.
     For this option, a system or custom wire must be configured to an Event
Viewer or Active Event List. A system wire is created by default when a map
and Event Viewer or AEL are placed on the same portlet page.

5. In the **Target** field, specify how the resource will be displayed:
   - If you selected the option to **Update Event List (using wires)**, this field is
     disabled.
   - To display the event list in a named IFrame, type the name of the IFrame
   - To display the event list in the full current browser window, replacing the
     map, select **_self**
   - To display the event list in a new browser window, select **_blank**
   - To display the event list in the parent frame set containing the source link,
     select **_parent**
   - To display the event list in the frame containing the source link, select **_top**

6. From the **Filters** list, select the required filter.

7. From the **Data Source** list, select one or more data sources.
   - The default corresponds to the default data source specified in the
     ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file.
   - If you select a data source that is not defined in the selected filter, or if the data
     source contains fields that are not defined in the filter, an error message is
     displayed. You must select a filter in which the required data source is defined.

8. Active icons only: From the **Feedback** list, specify how event information is
   displayed in the icon:
   - **Fill Background**: The icon background changes color to denote event
     severity. If you select this option, the icon must have transparent areas for
     the feedback color to be visible in the map.
   - **Highlight Bar**: A bar is displayed below the map object. The bar changes
     color to denote event severity. To select the shape of the highlight bar, change
     the Type setting on the **Properties** tab.
   - **Glow Background**: The background of the icon changes color to denote
     event severity. If you select this option, change the Translucency setting on
     the **Properties** tab so that you can see the severity color behind the icon.

9. To save the settings, click **OK**.

*Setting the size and positions of map objects:*

You can set the size of a map object, and you can specify the position of a map
object within your map.

**About this task**

To configure the size and position of a map object:

**Procedure**

1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. Open the map object Properties window using one of the following methods:
   - Double-click the object on the map.
   - Select the map object and click **Edit > Properties**.
   - Right-click an object and selecting **Properties** from the context menu.
3. Click the **Size & Position** tab.
4. Enter the distance in pixels from the left of the object to the left of the page in
   the X field. If the object is a line, enter a line-end coordinate in the X2 field.
5. Enter the distance in pixels from the top of the object to the top of the page in the \textit{Y} field. If the object is a line, enter a line-end coordinate in the \textit{Y2} field.

6. Enter the width of the object in pixels in the \textit{Width} field (buttons, monitor boxes, and active icons only).

7. Enter the height of the object in pixels in the \textit{Height} field (buttons, monitor boxes, and active icons only).

8. If the map object is a \textit{Rounded Rectangle} button or icon, you can change the arc of the corners by entering the diameter, in pixels, in the \textit{Arc Diameter} field.

\textbf{Tip:} If \textit{Feedback} is set to \textit{Fill Background} in the \textit{Associations} tab of an active icon, and the shape setting on the \textit{Properties} tab is set to \textit{Rounded rectangle}, you can modify the shape of the background color swatch by entering the diameter in the \textit{Arc Diameter} field.

9. If the map object is a line, enter the thickness of the line in pixels in the \textit{Thickness} field. The default thickness is 1.

10. Click \textit{OK} to save the settings.

\textit{Setting the color and font of map objects:}

You can set the color and font of active map objects.

\textbf{About this task}

To specify color, you have the following options:

\begin{itemize}
\item Click \textit{Color picker} to select a color.
\item Type a permitted color name. Permitted entries are as follows:
  \begin{itemize}
  \item black
  \item blue
  \item cyan
  \item darkGray
  \item green
  \item lightGray
  \item magenta
  \item orange
  \item pink
  \item red
  \item white
  \item yellow
  \end{itemize}
\item Type the RGB hexadecimal value of a color (for example \#FFFFCC).
\end{itemize}

\textbf{Restriction:} You cannot set the color of the following objects:

\begin{itemize}
\item Active buttons
\item Active icons
\item Inactive icons
\item Active lines
\end{itemize}

You cannot set fonts for the following objects:

\begin{itemize}
\item Inactive icons
\item Active lines
\end{itemize}
To configure the color and font of a map object:

Procedure
1. Open the Java Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. On the map, right-click the required object and click Properties.
3. Click Colors & Font.
4. For inactive buttons:
   a. In the Color field, specify the required color.
   b. To make the button translucent, select the Transparent check box. For example, you might want to display only the text on the button, and no background.

   Tip: If you create a translucent button that is the full size of the map and then place objects on top of it, the background behind the objects becomes clickable. You can make part of a .gif file clickable by drawing a translucent rectangle button over the required part of the .gif file.
   c. To change the appearance of the legend, select a font, a font size, and font color.
5. For active buttons: To change the appearance of the legend, select a font, a font size, font color, and font style.
6. For monitor boxes:
   a. In the Foreground field and Background field, specify the required color.
   b. To change the appearance of the label, select a font, a font size, and font style.
7. For active icons: To change the appearance of the label, select a font, a font size, font color, and font style.
8. For inactive lines: In the color field, specify the required color.
9. For text:
   a. Select a font, a font size, font style, justification, and font color.
   b. To rotate the text, in the Rotation field, type the required value in degrees. The text rotates counter clockwise by the specified angle.
10. To save the settings, click OK.
11. To resynchronize the Java Map Editor with the Web GUI server, click Server > Resync.

Color picker:

The color picker is used to select the color of the map background, inactive buttons, lines, and text.

- When used to change the map background color, the Color Picker button is located to the right of the Background drop-down menu. The button displays the current background color.
- When used to change the color of inactive buttons, lines, or text, the Color Picker button is located on the Color & Font tab in the Properties window for the selected map object. The button displays the current color of the button, line, or text object.

When you click the Color Picker button, the Select a Color window is displayed.
The Select a Color window contains the following tabs:

- **The Swatches** tab shows a selection of predefined colors. Click a color to select it. The selected color is displayed in the sample color box. Click **OK** to apply the color to the background or to an item on the map.

- From the **HSL** and **HSV** tabs you can choose the hue, saturation, value, or lightness of the color. Select the color from the chart, or enter the numerical values. The selected color appears in the sample color box. Click **OK** to apply the color to the background or to an item on the map.

- From the **RGB** tab you can specify the red, green, and blue color scales either by using the slider controls or by entering the numerical values. The selected color appears in the sample color box. Click **OK** to apply the color to the background or to an item on the map.

- The **Severity** tab shows the colors used for severity in the event list. The available options are:
  - Clear (green)
  - Indeterminate (purple)
  - Warning (light blue)
  - Minor (yellow)
  - Major (orange)
  - Critical (red)

  Click a color to select it. The selected color appears in the sample color box. Click **OK** to apply the color to the background or to an item on the map.

- From the **Gray Scale** tab you can select any shade of gray between black and white by moving the slider control. Click **OK** to apply the color to the background or to an item on the map.

**Related tasks:**

- “Setting map size and background” on page 322
  Use the Java Map Editor to set the background image for your map. Use the Color Picker to set the background color for your map.

**Customizing maps in HTML:**

As an alternative to the Java interface, you can use the HTML Map Editor to customize maps. Enter the HTML map editing commands in the map display text field to configure maps.

**About this task**

To configure a map using the HTML Map Editor:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools**.
2. Click **Maps > Map Creation**.
3. Select **HTML** and click **Modify**.
4. To specify the general properties of the map, use the following fields:

   - **Map name**
     - Type a name for the map. The map name must be alphanumeric and cannot contain spaces.

   - **Group name**
     - Select the group for which you want to grant access to the map. The * group grants access to all users including any new users you create.
Background image
Type the name of a background image, for example background.gif. The image must be in either GIF or JPEG format and must be uploaded as a map resource.

Background color
Type the color for the background.

Height
Type the height of the page in pixels.

Width
Type width of the page in pixels.

5. In the text entry field, type the map properties in HTML code.

Tip: For orientation, open an existing map in the HTML Map Editor.

6. Click Save.

Adding and configuring buttons:
Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to add buttons to your maps.

About this task
You can add two types of buttons to a map:

Inactive buttons
Inactive buttons can only be used to link to a URL.

Active buttons
Active buttons can also be used to show status color, and to open a Table View.

To add buttons to a map:

Procedure
1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following button instruction:
   
   ```html
   button(name="button", label="example", x=12, y=34, w=56, h=78
   ```
   
   In these instructions, button is the unique name of the button, example is the label for the button, and the numeric values for x, y, w and h are in pixels. All button instructions start using this format, and each button has the following common properties:
   
   • A name, which must be unique.
   • A label, which appears in the status bar of the Web browser when the mouse pointer is over it.
   • A position, which is defined by the coordinates of the top left corner of the button relative to the top left corner of the page.
   • A button size, which is defined by the height and width.

   Note: The variable BSI (Button Start Instruction) is used to represent this initial part of the instruction.

3. Click Save.
Results

Linking an inactive button to a URL:

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to link an inactive button on your map to a URL.

About this task

To link a button to a URL:

Procedure

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following button instruction:
   
   ```
   BSI, action="go", url="$(SERVER)/newpage"
   ```
   
   In this instruction, `BSI` is the first part of the button instruction and `newpage` is the destination HTML page.
   
   The button appears gray.
3. Click Save.

Related tasks:

“Specifying a target” on page 339

For all map entries that have a link to a URL, you can also specify the target. When the target is omitted, the URL replaces the map in the current Web browser window.

Linking an active button to a URL and displaying status:

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to link an active button on your map to a URL, and display the event status as the button color.

About this task

To link a button to a URL and display the status as the button color:

Procedure

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following button instruction:
   
   ```
   BSI, filter="example", filtertype="type", action="go", url="$(SERVER)/newpage.html"
   ```
   
   `BSI` is the first part of the button instruction, `example` is the name of a filter, `type` denotes the type of filter, which can be “system” or “global”, and `newpage` is the destination HTML page. The color of the highest-severity event from the alerts.status table, as captured by the filter, is used as the color of the button.
3. Click Save.

Related tasks:

“Specifying a target” on page 339

For all map entries that have a link to a URL, you can also specify the target. When the target is omitted, the URL replaces the map in the current Web browser window.
**Associating a Table View with an active button and displaying status:**

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to associate an active button with a Table View.

**About this task**

To associate a Table View with a button and display the status as the button color.

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following button instruction:
   
   ```html
   BSI,filter="example",filtertype="type",action="table")
   ```

   *BSI* is the first part of the button instruction, *example* is the name of a filter, *type* denotes the type of filter, which can be "system" or "global", and *table* defines that a Table View is opened when the button is clicked.
   
   The color of the highest-severity event from the alerts.status table, as captured by the filter, is used as the color of the button.
   
   The default view associated with the filter defines the columns in the Table View that are displayed.
3. Click **Save**.

**Adding and configuring icons:**

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to add icons to your maps.

**About this task**

You can add two types of icons to a map:

**Inactive icons**

Inactive icons have no function on the map.

**Active icons**

Active icons can link to a URL.

All icon instructions start using the format described in step two. Each icon has the following common properties:

- A name, which must be unique.
- A label, which appears in the status bar of the Web browser when the mouse pointer is over the icon.
- A position, which is defined by the coordinates of the top left corner of the icon relative to the top left corner of the page.
- An icon size, which is defined by the height and width.
- All icons must be in either GIF or JPEG format, and must be entered as resources on the map.

To add icons to a map:

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following icon instruction:
In these instructions, `icon` is the unique name of the icon, `example` is the label for the icon, the numeric values for `x` and `y` are in pixels, and `image` is the image file name.

**Note:** The variable `ISI` (Icon Start Instruction) is used to represent this initial part of the instruction.

3. To add an inactive icon, complete the instruction by adding a close parenthesis. This instruction adds an inactive icon.

4. Click **Save**.

**Linking an active icon to a URL:**

Use the HTML Map Editor and the HTML map editing commands to link an active icon on your map to a URL.

**About this task**

To link an icon to a URL:

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following icon instruction:

   ```html
   ISI, action="go", url="$(SERVER)/newpage")
   ```

   `ISI` is the first part of the icon instruction, and `newpage` is the destination HTML page.
3. Click **Save**.

**Related tasks:**

- [“Specifying a target” on page 339](#)

For all map entries that have a link to a URL, you can also specify the target. When the target is omitted, the URL replaces the map in the current Web browser window.

**Adding and configuring lines:**

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to add lines to your maps.

**About this task**

You can add two types of lines to a map:

**Inactive lines**

Inactive lines can only be used to link to a URL.

**Active lines**

Active lines can also be used to show status color, and to open a Table View.

All line instructions start using the format described in step two, and each line has the following common properties:

- A name, which must be unique.
- A label, which appears in the status bar of the Web browser when the mouse pointer is over the line.
To add lines to a map:

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following line instruction:
   
   ```
   line(name="line", label="example", x=12, y=34, x2=56, y2=78, thickness=9
   ```

   - *line* is the unique name of the line, *example* is the label for the line, the numeric values for *x*, *y*, *x2*, *y2*, and thickness are in pixels.

   **Note:** The variable *LSI* (Line Start Instruction) is used to represent this initial part of the instruction.

3. Click **Save**.

*Setting the color for an inactive line:*

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to set the color of an inactive line.

**About this task**

To complete the line instruction for an inactive line and set the color of the line:

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following line instruction:
   
   ```
   LSI, color=black
   ```

   - *LSI* is the first part of the line instruction.
   - The value of color can be the name of a system color (for example, black) or its hexadecimal equivalent (for example, #Ff1dC4).

3. Click **Save**.

*Linking an inactive line to a URL:*

Use the HTML Map Editor and the HTML map editing commands to link an inactive line on your map to a URL.

**About this task**

To link a line to a URL:

**Procedure**

1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following line instruction:
   
   ```
   LSI, action="go", url="$(SERVER)/newpage"
   ```

   - *LSI* is the first part of the line instruction and *newpage* is the destination HTML page.
   - The line appears gray.

3. Click **Save**.
Related tasks:
“Specifying a target” on page 339

For all map entries that have a link to a URL, you can also specify the target.
When the target is omitted, the URL replaces the map in the current Web browser window.

Associating a Table View with an active line and displaying status:

Use the HTML Map Editor and the HTML map editing commands to associate an active line with a Table View.

About this task
To associate a Table View with a line and display the status as the line color

Procedure
1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following line instruction:
   
   ```
   LSI,filter="example",filtertype="type",action="table")
   ```

   LSI is the first part of the line instruction, example is the name of a filter, type denotes the type of filter, which can be “system” or “global”, and table defines that a Table View is opened when the line is clicked.
   
   The color of the highest-severity event from the alerts.status table, as captured by the filter, is used as the color of the line.
   
   The view associated with the filter defines the columns in the Table View that are displayed.
3. Click Save.

Adding text to a map:

Use the map editing commands of the HTML Map Editor to add text to the map background image.

About this task
The text is unable to perform any special function, such as link to a URL.

All text instructions use the format described in step two, and have the following common properties:

- A name, which must be unique.
- A label, which appears as the required text.
- A position, which is defined relative to the top left corner of the page.
- A font (default helvetica).
- A size (default 10 point).
- A style (default plain).

To add text to a map:

Procedure
1. Open the HTML Map Editor with the map you want to modify.
2. In the text editor area, add the following text instruction:

```plaintext
text(name="text", label="example ", x=12, y=34, font="font", size=12,
style="style", color="color")
```

text is the unique name for the text, example is the text you want to enter, the numeric values for x and y are in pixels, font is the new font, the numeric value for size is in points, style can be plain, bold or italic, and the value of color can be either the name of the color (such as black), or the RGB numeric value of the color (for example #ffffcc).

3. Click Save.

**Specifying a target:**

For all map entries that have a link to a URL, you can also specify the target. When the target is omitted, the URL replaces the map in the current Web browser window.

**About this task**

The target option is in the format:

```
target="string"
```

In this example, string is the destination where the URL appears.

Where frames have been defined in the HTML page, you can specify the target as the name of the frame. For example UpperFrame or LowerFrame.

**Linking maps:**

You can transfer maps from one Web GUI server to another.

**Procedure**

- To link from one map page to another, use a URL, for example:

  ```plaintext
  protocol://server:port/webtop/mappage
  ```

  Where the parameters are as follows:

  **server**
  The name of the host on which the Web GUI server is located.

  **port**
  The port number of the Web GUI server.

  **mappage**
  The destination HTML map page.

- To export map pages to a Web GUI server on another computer, construct the URL as follows:

  ```plaintext
  $(SERVER)/mappage
  ```

  Where the parameters are as follows:

  **$(SERVER)**
  Resolves to protocol://server:port/webtop.

  **mappage**
  The destination HTML map page.
Changing the color of map elements that have no associated events:

To denote active elements on maps that have no associated events, assign a color that is applied to these elements. When users display a map, such active elements are displayed in the specified color.

About this task

By default, the active elements that have no associated events are displayed in the same color that is used for events with severity 0 (clear).

Tip: After you have edited the Web GUI server.init file, you must restart the Tivoli Integrated Portal server.

Procedure

1. Open the install_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/webtop/server.init file.
2. Uncomment the maplet.noeventcolor parameter.
3. Specify a hexadecimal color value. The maplet.noeventcolor has no default, so you must specify a value. For example:
   • To specify gray, type: 0xDDDDDD
   • To specify white, type: 0xFFFFFFFF
4. Save and close the file.
5. Restart the server.

Related tasks:

"Restarting the server" on page 1
After customization and configuration activities you might need to restart the Web GUI server.

Publishing maps

After your map is completed, you can publish it by adding it to the navigation in Tivoli Integrated Portal. You have two ways to publish a map.

Related concepts:

"The Web GUI in a load balancing environment" on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

Publishing maps on a Map portlet:

To make a map available to Web GUI users, create a new page in Tivoli Integrated Portal, add the Map portlet to the page, and select the map that you want to display on the portlet.

About this task

To add a map to a page:

Procedure

1. Click Settings > Page.
3. On the Page Settings window, edit the general properties of the page:
   a. Type a name for the page.
b. Specify the location of the page in the navigation, either by accepting the
   default or by clicking Location and navigating to the required location.
c. Select either the classic or freeform page layout.

d. To specify user access to the page:
   a. Click Optional setting and click Add.
   b. From the Available Roles list, select the required roles and click Add.

5. Click OK.

6. On the Choose a Portlet page, select Map and click OK.
   The new page is displayed with the map portlet; currently the map portlet is
   blank, except for a message telling you how to add a map to the page.

7. Add a map to the page:
   a. On the title bar of the newly created page, click Edit Options > Edit
      shared settings.
   b. Select the map from the list and set its characteristics as required.
   c. Click OK.

8. Click Save.

9. Optional: To add further portlets to the page, proceed as follows:
   • To split the page vertically, click Vertical Split.
   • To split the page horizontally, click Horizontal Split.
   Then, select the portlet that you require for the new section of the page, and
   customize the portlet as appropriate.

10. Optional: If you have defined Tivoli Integrated Portal views, to add the page
to a view:
   a. Click View Membership and click Add.
   b. From the Available Views list, select the required views and click Add.

Publishing maps on a Web widget portlet:

To make a map available to Web GUI users, create a new page in Tivoli Integrated
Portal, add the Web widget portlet to the page, and specify the URL of the map
that you want to display on the portlet.

Procedure

To add a map to a Web widget portlet:
   1. Click Settings > Pages.
   3. On the Page Settings window, edit the general properties of the page:
      a. Type a name for the page.
      b. Specify the location of the page in the navigation, either by accepting the
default or by clicking Location and navigating to the required location.
      c. Select either the classic or freeform page layout.
   4. To specify user access to the page:
      a. Click Optional setting and click Add.
      b. From the Available Roles list, select the required roles and click Add.
   5. Click OK.
   6. On the Choose a Portlet page, select Web Widget and click OK.
   7. Add the map to the page:
a. On the title bar of the newly created page, click **Edit Options** > **Edit shared settings**.

b. Set the properties of the Web widget:

   - **Widget title**
     Type a title for the map page.

   - **Home page**
     Type the location of the map relative to the root context of the Web GUI:
     `webtop/Map/mapname`
     Replace the `mapname` with the name you supplied when creating the map.

   - **HTML iFrame name**
     Type a name for the iFrame that contains the map on the portlet.
     Make sure that the name is unique among all other iFrame names for all Web widgets.

c. Optional: Clear **Show a browser control toolbar** if you do not want the toolbar to appear on the page.

d. Set the check boxes for the items that non-administrative users can personalize. Use any combination of the following:
   - **Widget title**
   - **Home page**
   - **Help page**
   - **Browser control toolbar**

e. Click **Save**.

8. On the title bar of the page click **Save**.

9. Optional: To add further portlets to the page, proceed as follows:
   - To split the page vertically, click **Vertical Split**.
   - To split the page horizontally, click **Horizontal Split**.
   
   Then, select the portlet that you require for the new section of the page, and customize the portlet as appropriate.

10. Optional: If you have defined Tivoli Integrated Portal views, to add the page to a view:
   a. Click **View Membership** and click **Add**.
   b. From the **Available Views** list, select the required views and click **Add**.

**Previewing map resources**
Use the Map Resources portlet to preview images and icons for your maps.

**About this task**
To preview resources for a map:

**Procedure**
1. Click **Administration** > **Event Management Tools** > **Maps** > **Map Resources**.
2. Select the map and click **Preview**. A list of all image resources available to the selected map is displayed.
3. Click **View** next to the image you want to preview.
   Images are listed by file name and file size, in bytes. The resource is opened in the next page.
4. To return to the list of images, click **Cancel** on your browser.
5. To return to the Map Resources portlet, click **Cancel**.

**Related concepts:**

"The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Related tasks:**

"Setting map size and background” on page 322
Use the Java Map Editor to set the background image for your map. Use the Color Picker to set the background color for your map.

**Deleting map resources**
Use the Map Resources portlet to delete images and icons from the list of available resources.

**About this task**

To remove a resource:

**Procedure**

1. Click **Administration > Event Management Tools > Maps > Map Resources**.
2. In the Map Resources portlet, select the map that contains the image you want to delete and click **Delete**.
3. From the **Available resources** list, select the image that you want to delete and click **Remove**. The image is removed from the Web GUI server.
4. To return to the Map Resources portlet, click **Cancel**.

**Related concepts:**

"The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Visualizing high-level event information on charts**

To help you visualize and compare large amounts of alert information, create charts based on event data.

**Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI charts**

Web GUI charts represent information graphically in different forms, and with scales that are added to indicate the values of the displayed data.

**Chart types:**

The Web GUI supports several different types of chart.

The following types of chart are supported:

**Bar charts**

Consist of a set of elongated rectangles, the length of which indicate the number or frequency of a measured variable.

**Stacked-bar charts**

The bar is subdivided so that you can see different subcategories within each category of a measured variable.
Line graphs
Use connected lines to represent data, with each point on the line representing a value in the data range for a measured variable.

Pie charts
Represent quantities in proportion to other quantities, for example, to show percentages of a whole.

The data displayed by these charts is drawn directly from a single ObjectServer table, and is unfiltered. To refine the appearance of the charts or constrain the breadth of data returned, SQL aggregate functions and comparison operators can be included in the data retrieval criteria.

How charts are generated:
Chart configuration and layout instructions are contained within a properly constructed XML-based definition file, and are processed by the Web GUI when a page containing a chart image tag is accessed.

For performance purposes, the Web GUI reads the chart definition file and stores configuration data in memory. During a page refresh, the server examines the chart configuration file timestamp. If the definition file is newer than the information stored in memory, the data is reloaded and the chart is re-rendered.

After the configuration data has been read, an image of the chart is rendered and placed on the page.

The process by which a chart is generated is as follows:
1. A client connected to the Web GUI requests a page containing one or more chart images.
2. The Web GUI server locates the requested chart page HTML file, and initiates the processing instructions contained within the chart <img> element or elements.
3. The <img> element contains a query string that provides details of the chart configuration XML file, image output format, image size and so forth. This information is sent to the chart renderer component.
4. The chart renderer component draws the data retrieval and presentation instructions from the specified XML file, and obtains the appropriate field information from the specified ObjectServer.
5. A chart image is rendered.
6. The chart image is returned to the Web GUI server for insertion into the Web page.
7. The chart page is processed.
8. The processed page is returned to the client.
The chart definition file:

The chart definition file contains all the configuration instructions that control how a chart obtains ObjectServer data, and how that data is presented in a graphical format.

A number of generic chart templates are provided with the Web GUI, and are located in `install_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/webtop/charts/definitions`:

- `BAR_eventsbylocation.xml` for bar charts
- `LINE_eventsbylocation.xml` for line graphs
- `PIE_eventsbyseverity.xml` for pie charts
- `SBAR_eventsbyseverity.xml` for stacked bar charts

Each chart schema begins with an element called `<chartdata>` that holds one child-element called `<ncchart>`. The `<ncchart>` element contains all the high-level chart component elements.

High-level component elements are those that govern the display or ObjectServer data-retrieval criteria for the chart. For example, the `<header>` element determines the content of the header above the chart display area, the `<background>` element controls the appearance of the chart background, and so forth.

The following syntax shows the structure of the chart definition file.

```
Chart definition file

<chartdata>
  <ncchart>
    <header>
    </header>
    <footer>
    </footer>
    <chart3Dview>
    </chart3Dview>
    <background>
    </background>
    <antialias value>
    </antialias>
    <antialiastext value>
    </antialiastext>
    <projectorreversed value>
    </projectorreversed>
    <legend>
    </legend>
    <chartarea>
    </chartarea>
    <xaxis>
    </xaxis>
    <yaxis>
    </yaxis>
    <xscale>
    </xscale>
    <yscale>
    </yscale>
    <xgrid>
    </xgrid>
    <ygrid>
    </ygrid>
    <chartelement>
      ...
    </chartelement>
  </ncchart>
</chartdata>
```
Tip: The order of the high-level elements under <ncchart> is not strictly enforced. If you want, you can reorder the element structure when configuring your chart file.

An element reference is available for each of the elements and their child-elements, and an attribute reference is available for their associated attributes, and the attributes of their child-elements.

Related tasks:
“Creating a chart definition file” on page 349
Create an XML chart definition file to specify the layout and display of your chart, and specify the event data on which to base your chart.

Related reference:
“Element reference” on page 351
Read about the elements defined within the chart schema.
“Attribute reference” on page 360
Read about the attribute types and values used within the chart schema.

<chartelemeny> syntax:

The <chartelemeny> element determines what ObjectServer field data is retrieved when a chart is rendered, and the type of chart and legend to be displayed. It is important to configure this element and associated child-elements correctly or your chart may not display properly.

The following example shows a code fragment containing the default contents of the <chartelemeny> element, with each line number displayed in brackets. The example uses the SBAR_eventsbylocationseverity.xml as the basis for the example.

Chart Schema
1 <chartelemeny>
2   <charttype basetype="Cartesian">
3     <chartrenderer useAlertColors="true" type="BarChart" mode="BarChartStacked">
4   </chartrenderer>
5 </charttype>
6 </chartelemeny>
7 <dataconfig>
8   <query type="StackedSQL" datatype="ObjectServer">
9     <query_element action="select" fieldName="Location" fieldType="string" tableName="alerts.status" where="" orderBy="Location Asc">
10        <constraint type="dataSetBeginCount" operator="equals" operand="5" />
11        <constraint type="dataSetEndCount" operator="equals" operand="12" />
12     </query_element>
13     <query_element action="select" fieldName="Severity" fieldType="integer" tableName="alerts.status" where="" />
14     <query_element action="count" fieldName="Severity" fieldType="integer" tableName="alerts.status" where="" />
15   </query>
16   <datasetlegend match="5" display="Critical" showValue="true" showStart=" (total: " showEnd=")" />
17   <datasetlegend match="4" display="Major" showValue="true" showStart=" (total: " showEnd=")" />
18   <datasetlegend match="3" display="Minor" showValue="true" showStart=" (total: " showEnd=")" />
19 </dataconfig>

Note: The line numbers in the code fragment do not directly correspond to the lines in the SBAR_eventsbyseverity.xml file.

The following subsections contain a line-by-line description of the element tags in the example XML code fragment.

Lines 1-2

Line 1 opens the <chartelement> section of the chart configuration file. Line 2 contains the <charttype> element tag. The <charttype> element determines the type of chart created by the chart renderer. It has the attribute basetype which can be either “Pie” or “Cartesian”.

Note: Cartesian charts can have different data configuration requirements than pie charts; where applicable these differences will be pointed out.

Lines 3-5

This line contains the <chartrenderer> element which establishes the image rendering mechanism employed and the type of chart created. If the basetype attribute in line 1 is set to “Cartesian”, then the type attribute for this element must be either “LineChart” or “BarChart.” If the basetype attribute is set to “Pie”, then the type attribute must be “PieChart.”

The <chartrenderer> element has an additional attribute called mode. If you decide to create a cartesian bar chart, you can specify whether you want it to contain stacked data or not. Leave this attribute blank if you want to create an unstacked chart. In this example the bar chart is stacked, and mode is set to “BarChartStacked.”

Line 6

This line closes the <charttype> element tag.

Line 7

This line contains the <dataconfig> element tag, which represents the start of the XML statements that control how data is obtained from the ObjectServer.
Line 8

This line contains the <query> element tag. The type attribute for this element must be either “StackedSQL” or “StackedSQLGrouped” for stacked cartesian charts, or “BasicSQL” or “BasicSQLGrouped” for all other types of chart.

A <query> element containing the “BasicSQLGrouped” or “StackedSQLGrouped” statement uses the ObjectServer SQL GROUP BY clause when selecting data. This selection method enables Web GUI to instruct the ObjectServer to group into a single row all rows that have identical values in a specified column or combination of columns.

Used with aggregate functions, Web GUI can find the aggregate value for each group of column values. Because the data aggregation is taking place within the ObjectServer, fewer queries are sent by Web GUI and performance is enhanced.

The datatype attribute contains the name of the ObjectServer data source, for example NCOMS.

Lines 9-20

These lines contain <query_element> element tags, which are child-elements of query. If your chart is an unstacked cartesian chart or a pie chart, you require two <query_element> entries under <query>. If the chart is a stacked cartesian chart, you require three (or more) entries.

The <query_element> tag contains a number of SQL compliant attributes that perform data interrogation functions. The action attribute is used within the <query_element> element to determine the ObjectServer SQL action exerted on a specified dataset. For example, enter select to select the data located in the field specified by the subsequent fieldName attribute.

In addition to the select attribute, the action attribute can contain ObjectServer SQL aggregate functions such as count, max, min, avg, sum, and dist.

For more information about ObjectServer SQL syntax, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Administration Guide.

The orderBy attribute determines how selected data is ordered on the chart axis. The options are Asc (ascending) or Desc (descending), prefixed with a field name against which the ordering index is established. The orderBy attribute applies only to values on the x-axis.

The <query_element> tag positions and their corresponding behaviors as follows:

First The first <query_element> entry selects a field from the ObjectServer. In this example, the selected field is Location. In cartesian charts this entry is used to populate the x-axis. In pie charts, this entry represents the whole dataset (or the pie itself). Lines 11-14 contain range constraint criteria.

The <constraint> child-element is optional, but allows you to control how much data is returned from the selected field. This is useful as very large selection results often cannot be displayed in the available width of the chart. You can create a range of different chart configuration files where the only difference is the data constraint range.

Last The last <query_element> entry measures the incidences of another
ObjectServer field for each value returned by the first <query_element>. In this example, the field name is Severity and the severity value is counted for each entry in the Location field.

In Cartesian charts this entry is used to populate the y-axis. In pie charts, this entry represents subsets of the whole dataset (or slices of the pie).

Intervening

Intervening <query_element> entries are only used by stacked cartesian charts. Their purpose is to further break down the data obtained by the first <query_element> into smaller groups, which are then displayed as stacks within the major group.

In this example, the subset selected is the Severity field. The different levels of alert severity present within the major group—in this case, Location—are displayed as colored stacks within the chart.

Line 22

This line concludes the <query> element section of the <chartelement> element.

Lines 23-43

These lines contain the element tag <datasetlegend>. This element and its associated attributes establish the legend label conversion criteria for information received from a data source. For example, the if value 5 is matched in data returned from the ObjectServer, in this example the display attribute specifies a legend label conversion of Critical.

The showValue, showStart, and showEnd attributes provide the information that accompanies the label in the legend. The showStart and showEnd attributes act as a prefix ((total: ) and suffix ( )) to the value returned by showValue. In the previous example, the literal output is:

Critical (total: number of critical alerts )

Lines 44-46

These lines contain the tags that close the <datasource>, <dataconfig>, and <chartelement> elements.

Related reference:

“Attribute reference” on page 360

Read about the attribute types and values used within the chart schema.

Creating a chart definition file

Create an XML chart definition file to specify the layout and display of your chart, and specify the event data on which to base your chart.

About this task

To help you create a valid chart, the following templates are located in the webgui-home/etc/charts/definitions directory:

- BAR_eventsbylocation.xml: Template for bar charts
- LINE_eventsbylocation.xml: Template for line graphs
- PIE_eventsbyseverity.xml: Template for pie charts
- PIE_eventsbyseverity.xml: Template for stacked bar charts
To create a chart definition file:

**Procedure**
1. Create an XML chart schema file to create a chart that displays high-level event data. To ensure that the charts you create are valid, use these template files as the basis for creating new charts.

   **Tip:** If you are creating a pie chart, you can omit the following elements from the file: `projectorreversed`, `chartarea`, `xaxis`, `yaxis`, `xscale`, `yscale`, `xgrid`, and `ygrid`. Because these elements relate to Cartesian chart layout, they are ignored.

2. Configure your chart schema file, and save the file with a unique name.
3. Upload the file to the following directory on the Web GUI server: `webgui-home/etc/charts/definitions`

**Related concepts:**
- "The chart definition file" on page 345
  The chart definition file contains all the configuration instructions that control how a chart obtains ObjectServer data, and how that data is presented in a graphical format.
- "The Web GUI in a load balancing environment" on page 133
  Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Publishing charts**
After you have created the chart definition file, reference the file in HTML to add your Web GUI charts to Web pages.

**About this task**
To display your charts on Web pages, use one of the following methods:

**Procedure**
- After you have created the chart definition file, you create an HTML file to display the chart. The HTML page must contain an `<img>` element that possesses the appropriate chart rendering attributes.
  For a sample HTML page that contains an `<img>` element, see "Example."
- Create a page in Tivoli Integrated Portal and add the **Chart View** portlet.

**Example**
The following example shows a chart `<img>` element within an HTML file.

```html
<html>
<head>
  <title>Demonstration Chart</title>
  <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1">
  <img src="ChartView?template=PIE_eventsbyseverity&format=PNG &request=image&width=800&height=400" border="0" height="400" width="800" alt="Events by Severity" />
</head>
<body>
</body>
</html>
```

The attributes of the `<img>` element are as follows.
**template**
This attribute specifies which XML configuration file is used by the chart renderer. In this example, the file is called `barchart`. Do not include the file suffix (if any) when you set this attribute.

**format**
This attribute specifies the image type created by the chart renderer component. In this example, the image type is a `.png` file. Do not modify this attribute.

**request**
System attribute. Do not modify.

**width**
The first `width` attribute, which is within the double-quotes (" "), determines the width of the image produced by the chart renderer component. The second `width` attribute determines how the rendered image is resized, if at all, on the page. Set both attributes to the same value.

**height**
The first `height` attribute, which is within the double-quotes (" "), determines the height of the image produced by the chart renderer component. The second `height` attribute determines how the rendered image is resized (if at all) on the page. Set both attributes to the same value.

**alt**
Use this attribute to enter a text equivalent for a graph image. This text is displayed when the cursor is placed above the image in the client browser.

**Related concepts:**
[“The Web GUI in a load balancing environment” on page 133](#)
Information on how the Web GUI can operate in a load balancing environment and the implications for administering and using the product.

**Related information:**
[Creating pages](#)

**Chart configuration reference**
Read about the data contained within the Web GUI chart schema. It provides a comprehensive reference for the elements, attributes, and attribute values defined within the schema.

**Element reference:**
Read about the elements defined within the chart schema.

Elements often have one or more associated attributes, for which a value may be required.

The following table describes each element defined within the chart schema.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute(s)</th>
<th>Child Element(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annotation</td>
<td>This element controls the text displayed for annotation values on the x-axis or the y-axis. If this element is not defined, the axes annotations are derived from field data. To specify a new annotation you must replace an existing field data annotation. For example, to replace host1 with New York, the annotation element is defined as: <code>&lt;annotation match=&quot;host1&quot; text=&quot;New York&quot;&gt;</code> To select integer indices, use the value attribute instead of the match attribute.</td>
<td>text, value, match</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annotations</td>
<td>This element contains the elements that control the text and display characteristics of the labels on the x-axis or the y-axis.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>labelrenderer, annotation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antialias</td>
<td>This element smoothens the line rendering within the chart.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>antialias_text</td>
<td>This element smoothens the text rendering within the chart.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>background</td>
<td>This element determines the background color of the whole chart area.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>border</td>
<td>This element contains the child-elements that control the appearance of the border (if any) around the legend area.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chartarea</td>
<td>This element controls the color or color gradient (if any), and margin positions of the area behind the chart itself.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>plotareabackground, margin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 30. Chart element definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute(s)</th>
<th>Child Element(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chartdata</td>
<td>The chartdata element is the root element. The root element is the top-level element in the XML document hierarchy, and contains all other elements in your XML file. Each document can have only one root element, and all other elements must be nested within it.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>ncchart, datasetlegend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chartelement</td>
<td>The chartelement element contains all elements that govern chart rendering (that is, the type of chart created) and data presentation criteria (using SQL selection syntax).</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>charttype, dataconfig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chartrenderer</td>
<td>The chartrenderer element governs the appearance and behavior of each type of chart. It contains the style element which determines how colors are associated with chart data. In addition, this element controls which types of cartesian chart are displayed (bar or line) and whether cartesian charts are stacked.</td>
<td>useAlertColors, type, mode</td>
<td>style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charttype</td>
<td>The charttype element determines the category of chart produced by the chart renderer. It has the attribute basetype that establishes which type of chart is created (Pie or Cartesian). In addition, this element contains the chartrenderer element that can further refine the appearance of the chart.</td>
<td>basetype</td>
<td>chartrenderer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 30. Chart element definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute(s)</th>
<th>Child Element(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>This element provides the values used to create a solid swatch of color (one element entry) or a color gradient (more than one element entry) behind the chart.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constraint</td>
<td>This element contains attributes that can be used to restrict the range of data displayed on the x-axis or the y-axis. This element is optional.</td>
<td>type, operator, operand</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataconfig</td>
<td>This element contains a cluster of child-elements that are used to retrieve ObjectServer field data, and to create and populate the legend area of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>query, datasetlegend, datasource</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| datasetlegend| This element is used to associate an appropriate legend label to matched information returned from the ObjectServer. For example: <datasetlegend match="5" display="Critical" showValue="true" showStart="(total: " showEnd=")" />
The previous element tag matches returned severity data with the value 5 with the label Critical in the legend area of the chart. | match, display, showValue, showStart, showEnd | None         |
<p>| font      | This element contains the child-elements that govern font size and appearance. <strong>Note:</strong> Specify a font that supports all characters in the language you want to use for the chart. | fontStyle, fontName, fontSize | None         |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute(s)</th>
<th>Child Element(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>footer</td>
<td>This element contains the elements that determine the content of the footer below the chart display area. The footer typically displays additional useful information about the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>text foreground background font</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreground</td>
<td>This element is used by the header, footer, and legend border chart components to determine the color of text entries.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gridline</td>
<td>This element determines whether major or minor gridlines on the x-axis or the y-axis of the chart are visible. In addition, gridline also contains the elements that determine line color.</td>
<td>type visible paint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>header</td>
<td>This element contains the elements that determine the content of the header above the chart display area. The header typically displays the title of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>text foreground background font</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>label</td>
<td>This element governs the appearance of the label (if any) displayed on the x-axis or y-axis of a cartesian chart.</td>
<td>color offset rotation visible</td>
<td>font</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labelrenderer</td>
<td>This element governs the appearance of the text, background, and orientation of annotations on the x-axis or y-axis of a cartesian chart.</td>
<td>color background rotation</td>
<td>font</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Attribute(s)</td>
<td>Child Element(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legend</td>
<td>This element is used to determine the appearance and position of the legend area of a chart. The legend area contains interpretative information (for example, a color key) and quantitative information (for example, an event total) that further explains the contents of a pie chart or bar chart.</td>
<td>visible, position, background, foreground</td>
<td>border, symbol, font, antialiastext, antialias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>margin</td>
<td>This element is used to determine the space (in pixels) around the chart data area. This margin area must be wide enough to accommodate axis data labels in cartesian charts.</td>
<td>top, bottom, left, right</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ncchart</td>
<td>This is the second-level element in the schema, and encapsulates all of the different component areas of the chart. Each ncchart child element is described in more detail elsewhere within this table.</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>header, footer, background, antialiastext, antialias, legend, projectorreversed, chartarea, xaxis, yaxis, xscale,yscale, xgrid, ygrid, chartelement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint</td>
<td>This element defines the type of system used to present gridlines.</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Attribute(s)</td>
<td>Child Element(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plotareabackground</td>
<td>This element is used to create the background color or color gradient behind the chart data area.</td>
<td>orientation</td>
<td>color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>projectorreversed</td>
<td>This element determines whether the chart data projection is reversed. When the associated value attribute is set to true, the datasets for the x-axis and y-axis are swapped. Note that the background also rotates.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query</td>
<td>This element contains the attributes and child-elements that determine what SQL data is obtained from which ObjectServer, and the manner in which it is retrieved.</td>
<td>type</td>
<td>query_element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>query_element</td>
<td>The query_element tag contains a number of SQL-compliant attributes that perform data interrogation functions.</td>
<td>action</td>
<td>constraint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fieldName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fieldType</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tableName</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>where</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>style</td>
<td>This element contains the child elements that define the border color and fill color of the pie or bar segments on a chart.</td>
<td>strokepaint</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fillpaint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>match</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>symbol</td>
<td>This element specifies the size and position (relative to adjacent text) of the color symbols used in the legend area of the chart.</td>
<td>height</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>width</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>textSpacing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>This element is used by many other elements to determine the textual content of headers, footers, and so forth.</td>
<td>value</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>This element is used to control the position of the title in the legend area of the chart. It also contains the elements that control the text content and color.</td>
<td>position</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>foreground</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>font</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Attribute(s)</td>
<td>Child Element(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xaxis</td>
<td>See xaxiselement.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>xaxiselement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xaxiselement</td>
<td>This element controls how data is displayed on the x-axis, and covers presentation aspects such as axis orientation and data range parameters.</td>
<td>reversed, autoDataMin, autoDataMax, autoDataRange, dataMin, dataMax, visibleMin, visibleMax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xgrid</td>
<td>This element contains the xgrid element that controls how gridlines appear on the x-axis of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>xgridelement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xgridelement</td>
<td>This element determines the color of the gridlines on the x-axis, and contains the xgridelement element that controls what type of gridlines appear on the x-axis of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>gridline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xscale</td>
<td>See xscaleelement.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>xscaleelement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>xscaleelement</td>
<td>This element allows you to control how chart components are arranged. This covers such features as the color of the foreground, the point at which the x-axis intersects with the y-axis, whether the data is logarithmically transformed, the axis title position, and so forth.</td>
<td>axisVisible, crossingValue, foreground, logarithmic, majorTickSize, minorTickSize, title, titleRotation, titlePlacement, visible</td>
<td>annotations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yaxis</td>
<td>See yaxiselement.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>yaxiselement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 30. Chart element definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Attribute(s)</th>
<th>Child Element(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yaxiselement</td>
<td>This element controls how data is displayed on the y-axis, and covers presentation aspects such as axis orientation and axis data range parameters.</td>
<td>reversed autoDataMin autoDataMax autoDataRange dataMin dataMax visibleMin visibleMax</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ygrid</td>
<td>This element contains the ygridelement element that controls how gridlines appear on the y-axis of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>ygridelement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ygridelement</td>
<td>This element determines the color of the gridlines on the y-axis, and contains the ygridelement element that controls what type of gridlines appear on the y-axis of the chart.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>gridline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yscale</td>
<td>See yscaleelement.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>yscaleelement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yscaleelement</td>
<td>This element allows you to control how chart components are arranged. This covers such features as the color of the foreground, the point at which the y-axis intersects with the x-axis, whether the data is logarithmically transformed, the axis title position, and so forth.</td>
<td>axisVisible crossingValue foreground logarithmic majorTickSize minorTickSize title titleRotation titlePlacement visible</td>
<td>annotations label</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Related concepts:

“The chart definition file” on page 345

The chart definition file contains all the configuration instructions that control how a chart obtains ObjectServer data, and how that data is presented in a graphical format.
Attribute reference:

Read about the attribute types and values used within the chart schema.

Some attributes are enumerated and the values of these attributes are constrained to a list of predefined text strings. When enumerated attributes are used within the XML command file, they must be set to one of the values shown in the list. Default values (if any) are provided in the description.

The following table describes each attribute defined within the chart schema.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>action</td>
<td>select</td>
<td>count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoDataMax</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoDataMin</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoDataRange</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axisVisible</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>background</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used to specify the color for the background of a chart component. The attribute value is a base 16 hexadecimal color code and must be prefixed with a # symbol. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, a system default is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 31. Chart attribute definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>basetype</td>
<td>Cartesian</td>
<td>Pie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used within the margin element to specify the margin space at the bottom of the chart. The unit of measurement is in pixels. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, a system default is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>color</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used within the label and labelrenderer elements to specify the color of label or annotative text on a chart. The attribute value is a base 16 hexadecimal color code and must be prefixed with a # symbol. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crossingValue</td>
<td>-921886843727405311 +921886843727405311 IEE754 Standard for Double Precision for Floating-Point Numbers. Values beyond these ranges incur rounding.</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xaxiselement and yaxiselement elements to determine where one chart axis crosses the other. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the x-axis and y-axis intersect at 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataMax</td>
<td>-921886843727405311 +921886843727405311 IEE754 Standard for Double Precision for Floating-Point Numbers. Values beyond these ranges incur rounding.</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xaxiselement and yaxiselement elements to specify the highest value on the x-axis or y-axis of a graph. This attribute is ignored when autoDataMax is set to true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dataMin</td>
<td>-921886843727405311 +921886843727405311 IEE754 Standard for Double Precision for Floating-Point Numbers. Values beyond these ranges incur rounding.</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xaxiselement and yaxiselement elements to specify the lowest value on the x-axis or y-axis of a graph. This attribute is ignored when autoDataMin is set to true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datasource</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the query element and specifies the ObjectServer data source used to create the chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defaultGridColor</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xgridelement and ygridelement elements to specify the color of the chart grid (if any). The attribute value is a base 16 hexadecimal color code and must be prefixed with a # symbol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>display</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the datasetlegend element to specify the text in the legend panel that accompanies the values returned by the match attribute. The attribute entry is a string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fieldName</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the datasetlegend element to specify an ObjectServer field. For example, Severity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Constrained Values</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fieldType</td>
<td>string, integer</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>datasetlegend</code> element to describe the ObjectServer field-data characteristics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fillpaint</td>
<td>#000000 → FFFFFF</td>
<td>This attribute defines the fill color of the pie or bar segments on a chart. The attribute value is a base 16 hexadecimal color code and must be prefixed with a # symbol. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fontName</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>font</code> element and specifies the name of the font used in a text entry. The attribute entry is a string, and must correspond to a font located on the Web GUI server. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fontSize</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>font</code> element and specifies the size of the font used in a text entry. The attribute entry is in points, rounded to the integer. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fontStyle</td>
<td>plain, bold</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>font</code> element and specifies the style of the font used in a text entry. The attribute entry is a string, and must be supported by the font specified in the corresponding <code>fontName</code> attribute. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreground</td>
<td>#000000 → FFFFFF</td>
<td>This attribute is used to specify the color for the foreground of a chart component and often refers to the text entry. The attribute value is a base 16 hexadecimal color code and must be prefixed with a # symbol. A value must be provided for this attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>0 + 2^n - 1</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>symbol</code> component to specify the height of the symbol or symbols used in the legend panel. The attribute entry is in points, rounded to the integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>0 + 2^n - 1</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>margin</code> element to specify the margin space at the left of the chart. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logarithmic</td>
<td>true, false</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>xscale</code> and <code>yscale</code> elements and specifies whether the scale data is logarithmically transformed. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>majorTickSize</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>xscale</code> and <code>yscale</code> elements and controls the size of the large ticks on the x-axis or the y-axis. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Constrained Values</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match (annotation)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the annotation element to establish the string election criteria for annotations displayed on the x-axis or the y-axis. To select an integer, use the value attribute instead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match (datasetlegend)</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the datasetlegend element to establish the selection criteria for the information displayed in the legend panel. This attribute works in combination with the display attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minorTickSize</td>
<td>$0^{2^{31}}-1$</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xscalelement and yscaleelement and controls the size of the small ticks on the x-axis or the y-axis. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>BarChartStacked</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the chartrenderer element to specify if a barchart is stacked. The corresponding type attribute must be set to BarChart for this attribute to be enabled. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, no value is used and the renderer uses its default mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Must exactly correspond to the chart file name. Do not including the .xml file extension.</td>
<td>This attribute provides a name for the chart. For example, if the schema is called mychart.xml, the name attribute must be set to mychart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operand</td>
<td></td>
<td>This attribute is used by the constraint element to provide an upper or lower limit (as determined by the accompanying type attribute) on the x-axis data returned by a query_element selection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operator</td>
<td></td>
<td>System attribute—do not modify.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| orderBy                     | fieldName Asc | fieldName Desc | This attribute determines how selected data is ordered on the chart axis. The options are Asc (ascending) or Desc (descending), prefixed with a fieldname against which the ordering index is established. For example:  
  `<query_element action="select" fieldName="Location" fieldType="string" tableName="alerts.status" where="" orderBy="Location Asc">`  
  In this example, the Location field data is arranged in ascending order. |
<p>| orientation                 | xaxis | yaxis | This attribute is used by the plotareabackground element to specify the color gradient direction for the chart background. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is xaxis. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>position (legend)</td>
<td>NorthBottom</td>
<td>NorthEast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>position (title)</td>
<td>AboveBottom</td>
<td>AboveTop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reversed</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>0-&gt;2^31-1</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>margin</code> element to specify the margin space at the right of the chart. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rotation</td>
<td>0-&gt;360</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>label</code> and <code>labelrenderer</code> elements to specify the clockwise rotation angle for labels and annotations. The angle value is expressed in degrees and is an integer. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showEnd</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>datasetlegend</code> element to specify a suffix to any count data displayed in the legend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showStart</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the <code>datasetlegend</code> element to specify a prefix to any count data displayed in the legend.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showValue</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strokepaint</td>
<td>#000000</td>
<td>#FFFFFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tableName</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by <code>query_element</code> to specify which ObjectServer data table is used. For example, <code>alerts.status</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>text</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is typically used to provide textual information within the chart configuration file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Constrained Values</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>textSpacing</td>
<td>$0 \to 2^{31}-1$</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the symbol element to specify the distance between symbols used in the legend area and their associated text. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xscalelement and yscalelement elements to specify the title (if any) associated with the x-axis or y-axis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>titlePlacement</td>
<td>$0 \to 100$</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the xscalelement and yscalelement elements to determine the placement of an axis title. The measurement is a percentage of the entire width of the chart. For example, a value of 50 centers the title under the x-axis. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is 50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>titleRotation</td>
<td>$0 \to 360$</td>
<td>This attribute is used to specify the clockwise rotation angle for the title (if any) displayed on the x-axis or the y-axis. The angle value is expressed in degrees and is an integer. If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is 0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>$0 \to 2^{31}-1$</td>
<td>This attribute is used by the margin element to specify the margin space at the top of the chart. The unit of measurement is in pixels and is an integer. The default value corresponds to a system-calculated best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type (chartrenderer)</td>
<td>LineChart</td>
<td>PieChart</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 31. Chart attribute definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| type (constraint) | dataSetBeginCount | This attribute is used by the constraint element to restrict the range of data returned from a selected field. These attributes work in combination with the operator and operand attributes to specify a data startpoint and endpoint. For the dataSetBeginCount the operand indicates the start point. For the dataSetEndCount the operand indicates the end point. Consider the following example query_element:  
```xml
<query_element action="select"
  fieldName="Location"
  fieldType="string"
  tableName="alerts.status"
  where=""
  orderBy="Location Asc"
</query_element>
To return a range of locations starting at the 5th returned and ending at the 12th, set constraint as follows:  
```xml
<constraint type="dataSetBeginCount"
  operator="equals" operand="5"
/>
<constraint type="dataSetEndCount"
  operator="equals" operand="12"
/>
```xml
By default, returned data has no default constraints. To return the first 8 locations, set constraint as follows:  
```xml
<constraint type="dataSetEndCount"
  operator="equalss" operand="8"
/>
```xml

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>type (gridline)</th>
<th>major</th>
<th>minor</th>
<th>This attribute is used by the gridline element to specify the type of chart gridline to configure. All subsequent gridline attributes then perform actions on this selection.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>type (paint)</td>
<td>color</td>
<td>System attribute—do not modify.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type (query)</td>
<td>BasicSQL</td>
<td>BasicSQLGrouped</td>
<td>StackedSQL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| useAlertColors  | true | false | This attribute allows you to use the alert status colors provided by the alerts.colors table in the ObjectServer.  
If you do not provide a value for this attribute, the default is false. |
<p>| value           | Various | This attribute is typically used to populate or define text, color, or boolean information within the chart configuration file. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained Values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>visible</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visibleMax</td>
<td>-9223372036854775808</td>
<td>+9223372036854775808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visibleMin</td>
<td>-9223372036854775808</td>
<td>+9223372036854775808</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>width</td>
<td>0-&gt;231-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Related concepts:**

- “[The chart definition file](#)” on page 345
  
  The chart definition file contains all the configuration instructions that control how a chart obtains ObjectServer data, and how that data is presented in a graphical format.

- “[<chartelement> syntax](#)” on page 346
  
  The `<chartelement>` element determines what ObjectServer field data is retrieved when a chart is rendered, and the type of chart and legend to be displayed. It is important to configure this element and associated child-elements correctly or your chart may not display properly.
Appendix A. Accessibility features for the Web GUI

Accessibility features help users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology products successfully.

The following list includes the major accessibility features in the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Web GUI:

- The Active Event List (AEL) supports keyboard-only operation.
- The Web GUI administrative screens are readable by screen readers.

**Keyboard navigation**

The navigation functions of the Web GUI can be accessed using the keyboard.

This product uses standard Microsoft Windows navigation keys.

The AEL and the Java Map Editor menu functions can also be accessed using accelerator keys. Accelerator keys or mnemonics refer to the underlined characters in menus and dialogs such as F for File.

**Alternative text**

All non-text content used in the Web GUI has associated alternative text.
Appendix B. ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml reference

To change the configurations that control how the Web GUI receives events from data sources, modify the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` configuration file that is in `webgui-home/etc/datasources`. The file structure must conform to the content of the Web GUI configuration Document Type Definition (DTD). The elements and attributes that are in the DTD are described here.

The term *data source* refers to any source of data from which the Web GUI can obtain event information. It includes, but is not restricted to, ObjectServers.

**Data types and legends**

The data types and legends that accompany the Web GUI DTD elements and attributes are as follows:

- **NM**: Indicates that the attribute types are names consisting of XML NMTOKEN character (letters, periods, numbers, underscores, dashes, and colons). NM often also indicates that the attribute contains a list of predefined choices.
- **CDATA**: Indicates that the attribute contains unparsed character data.
- **IMP**: Indicates that the presence of the attribute is implied (optional).
- **REQ**: Indicates that the presence of the attribute is required.

***MISSING FILE***

This file was generated during the publishing process

***MISSING FILE***

This file was generated during the publishing process

**Elements of the Web GUI configuration DTD**

The elements that are specified in the Web GUI configuration DTD.

The elements defined within the configuration DTD are as follows.

- `<chart>`
  This element is a child element of the `<results-cache>` element. This element specifies caching options for chart results. If caching is enabled, the `maxAge` attribute specifies the expiry time, in seconds, for the cache. The `cleantime` attribute specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cache entries are checked and removed. Cache data that exceeds the time imposed by the `maxAge` attribute is removed.

- `<config>`
  This element is a child element of the `<results-cache>` element. This element specifies whether data caching is enabled. If caching is enabled, the `maxAge` attribute specifies the expiry time, in seconds, for the cache. For example:

```xml
<config maxAge="60" enabled="true">
```
<eventList>
    This element is a child element of the <results-cache> element. This element specifies caching for results in the event lists. If caching is enabled, the maxAge attribute specifies the expiry time, in seconds, for the cache. The cleantime attribute specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cache entries are checked and removed. Cache data that exceeds the time imposed by the maxAge attribute is removed.

<eventSummary>
    This element is a child element of the <results-cache> element. This element specifies caching for event summary results, such as maps and Event Dashboards. If caching is enabled, the maxAge attribute specifies the expiry time, in seconds, for the cache. The cleantime attribute specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cache entries are checked and removed. Cache data that exceeds the time imposed by the maxAge attribute is removed.

<metric>
    This element is a child element of the <results-cache> element. This element specifies caching for results in Gauges pages. If caching is enabled, the maxAge attribute specifies the expiry time, in seconds, for the cache. The cleantime attribute specifies the time interval, in seconds, at which cache entries are checked and removed. Cache data that exceeds the time imposed by the maxAge attribute is removed.

<ncwBackUpServer>
    This element is a child element of <ncwDefaultDataSourceList> and contains the ncwOSConnection element specifying host and port of the failover ObjectServer. For example:
    <ncwBackUpServer>
        <ncwOSConnection
            host="192.168.0.3"
            port="4141"
        />
    </ncwBackUpServer>

<ncwConnectionParameters>
    This element is a child element of <ncwDataSourceDefinition> and contains elements that control the connection to a data source.

<ncwDataSourceCredentials>
    This element is a child element of <ncwDataSourceDefinition> and holds the login information required by the Web GUI to access the data source. If the encrypted attribute is set to true, a password encrypted using the Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus nco_g_crypt encryption utility can be used. For example:
    <ncwDataSourceCredentials
        password=""
        userName="root"
        encrypted="false"
    />

<ncwDataSourceDefinition>
    This element is a child element of the <ncwDataSourceDefinitions> element and contains the tags that define configuration and communication parameters for an individual data source.

<ncwDataSourceDefinitions>
    This is the root element of the DTD.

<ncwDataSourceEntry>
    This element is a child element of <ncwDefaultDataSourceList> and contains the names of the default data sources that communicate with the Web GUI.
These entries are subsequently defined in the configuration file by corresponding `<ncwDataSourceDefinition>` tags. The first entry in the list is the default data source used by the Web GUI for client authentication. If this data source is not present, the next entry in the list is used as a default. For example:

```xml
<ncwDefaultDataSourceList>
  <ncwDataSourceEntry name="NCOMS"/>
  <ncwDataSourceEntry name="NILKA"/>
</ncwDefaultDataSourceList>
```

**Note:** The name of each data source can contain up to 29 characters.

**<ncwDataSourcePollingParameters>**
This element is a child element of `<ncwDataSourceDefinition>` and contains the elements that control failover and data source heartbeat polling.

**<ncwDefaultDataSourceList>**
See `<ncwDataSourceEntry>`.

**<ncwFailOverPairDefinition>**
This element is a child element of `<ncwDataSourceDefinition>` and contains the tags that specify the primary and backup ObjectServers. The inclusion of a backup ObjectServer is optional, but only one is permitted per data source. For example:

```xml
<ncwFailOverPairDefinition>
  <ncwPrimaryServer>
    <ncwOSConnection host="192.168.0.7" port="4545"/>
  </ncwPrimaryServer>
  <ncwBackUpServer>
    <ncwOSConnection host="192.168.0.8" port="4646"/>
  </ncwBackUpServer>
</ncwFailOverPairDefinition>
```

**<ncwFailOverPollingParameters>**
This element specifies the time interval at which the data source is polled in the event of a failover. This element is used only when there is a failover server available, as defined by the `<ncwBackUpServer>` element. For example:

```xml
<ncwFailOverPollingParameters backOffMultiplier="2" basePollingTime="10"/>
```

**<ncwHeartBeatParameters>**
This element is a child element of `<ncwDataSourcePollingParameters>` and specifies the time interval, in seconds, for the Web GUI to poll an active data source. For example:

```xml
<ncwHeartBeatParameters basePollingTime="15"/>
```

**<ncwOSConnection>**
This element is a child element of both `<ncwPrimaryServer>` and `<ncwBackUpServer>` and specifies the communication criteria for a primary or failover data source. For example:

```xml
<ncwOSConnection host="192.168.0.3" port="4141"/>
```

**<ncwPrimaryServer>**
This element is a child element of `<ncwDefaultDataSourceList>`, and contains the `<ncwOSConnection>` element specifying host and port of the primary ObjectServer. For example:
<ncwPrimaryServer>
  <ncwOSConnection
    host="192.168.0.3"
    port="4141"
  />
</ncwPrimaryServer>

<ncwQueryTimeout>
  This element is a child element of <ncwStatementParameters> and defines the time out period, in seconds, for SQL statements sent to a data source. For example:
  <ncwQueryTimeout baseTime="60" />
</ncwQueryTimeout>

<ncwReadCloudDefinition>
  This element is a child element of <ncwDataSourceDefinition> and holds the addresses of all the display servers you want to use with this master ObjectServer. One <ncwReadCloudDefinition> element permitted per data source. You cannot have multiple display server clouds communicating with a single master ObjectServer. For example:
  <ncwReadCloudDefinition>
    <ncwOSConnection
      host="192.168.0.9"
      port="4747"
    />
    <ncwOSConnection
      host="192.168.0.10"
      port="4848"
    />
    <ncwOSConnection
      host="192.168.0.11"
      port="4949"
    />
  </ncwReadCloudDefinition>
</ncwReadCloudDefinition>

<ncwStatementParameters>
  This element is a child element of <ncwConnectionParameters> and contains elements that control the exchange of SQL statements with a data source.
</ncwStatementParameters>

<results-cache>
  The <results-cache> element is a child element of the <ncwDataSourceDefinition> element. It contains the child elements <chart>, <config>, <eventList>, <eventSummary>, and <metric>.
</results-cache>

### Attributes of the Web GUI configuration DTD

Use this information to understand the attributes used in the Web GUI configuration DTD. Some attributes are enumerated and the values of these attributes are constrained to a list of predefined text strings. When enumerated attributes are used within the XML command file, they must use one of the values shown in the list.

The following table describes each attribute defined within the configuration DTD. Default values (if any) are provided in the description.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>algorithm</td>
<td>DES</td>
<td>AES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 32. Configuration DTD attribute definitions (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Constrained values</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>backOffMultiplier</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The multiplier for the backoff algorithm used to calculate the polling backoff time during a failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basePollingTime</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The seed time, in seconds, for the algorithm used to calculate the polling backoff time during a failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is 20 seconds for the <code>&lt;ncwFailoverPollingParameters&gt;</code> element or 15 seconds for the <code>&lt;ncwHeartbeatParameters&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseTime</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The timeout period, in seconds, for a query statement sent to the data source. If the Web GUI receives no response within this time, it attempts to reconnect to the data source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleantime</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The time interval, in seconds, the Web GUI server waits before checking for how long each user session has been inactive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>When this check takes place, cache data that exceeds the time imposed by the maxAge attribute is removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is 120 seconds for the <code>&lt;chart&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;eventList&gt;</code> elements or 20 seconds for the <code>&lt;eventSummary&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;metric&gt;</code> elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enabled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is true for the <code>&lt;ncwDataSourceDefinition&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;eventSummary&gt;</code>, and <code>&lt;metric&gt;</code> elements or false for the <code>&lt;chart&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;eventList&gt;</code> elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encrypted</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The host name or IP address of a specified data source.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxAge</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The cache expiry time limit in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The default value is 10 seconds for the <code>&lt;eventSummary&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;metric&gt;</code> elements, 60 seconds for the <code>&lt;chart&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;eventList&gt;</code> elements, or 3600 seconds for the <code>&lt;config&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Constrained values</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPoolSize</td>
<td>Maximum value: 1024</td>
<td>The maximum number of pooled connections to an ObjectServer data source that can exist at any one time. The default value is 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minPoolSize</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The minimum number of pooled connections to an ObjectServer data source to maintain. The default value is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The name given to an ObjectServer data source displayed within the Web GUI during administrative activities. The name can contain up to 29 characters. This value also links each data source definition that is listed at the start of the configuration file to its subsequent definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The password used to log in to the ObjectServer. The default is a blank password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>port</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>The port number of a specified data source. The default value is 8080.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssl</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| type          | singleServerOSDataSource | multipleServerOSDataSource | The type of data source configuration required for the specified data source. The required types are as follows:  
**singleServerOSDataSource** Use this type for a single primary data source configuration, or for a backup data source configuration.  
**multipleServerOSDataSource** Use this type for a dual-server desktop configuration. The default value is singleServerOSDataSource.                                                                                                                                 |
| userName      | None               | The user name of the user connecting to the ObjectServer. The user must have root privileges on the ObjectServer. The default value is root.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

*Table 32. Configuration DTD attribute definitions (continued)*
Appendix C. Invalid characters in filters, views, and tools

You cannot use certain characters in the names of any Web GUI objects, such as filters, views, or tools. You also cannot create filters, views, or tools with spaces in the name.

The invalid characters are defined in the following file.

`webgui-home/etc/illegalChar.prop`

**Attention:** Only change the invalid characters as directed in the documentation or by IBM Support.

This file contains the following properties:

**INVALID_NAME_CHARS**
This property defines characters that are not permitted in any user-defined names. The default characters listed in this property are as follows:

```
$ ! £ ¥ ^ & * ( ) + = – — ~ # ′ : ; < > { } [ ] ? / \ | , "
```

**INVALID_NAME_START_CHARS**
This property defines characters that are not permitted as the initial character of any user-defined names. The default characters listed in this property are as follows:

```
/ \ * ? " < > | & .
```
Appendix D. SmartPage commands and templates

You can use SmartPage commands to populate Web pages that are served by the Web GUI. You can also use variables in SmartPage commands to dynamically populate predefined template files.

Related reference:
“Map SmartPage administration” on page 384

SmartPage commands are special extensions to the HTML language that control user validation, and allow the placement of generated components in Tivoli Integrated Portal pages. SmartPage commands are expressed in HTML as comment tags.

SmartPage commands overview

SmartPage commands are single-line HTML instructions that can be used to validate user access, and to allow Web GUI components such as applets to be added to a Web page.

You can use SmartPage commands in your Web pages to perform the following tasks:

• Enable a Web page for SmartPage command processing.
• Validate user access to a Web page against a group.
• Insert an AEL applet.
• Insert an AEL applet for each filter in a map.
• Insert a map applet.
• Insert a map applet containing a grid of filters that are associated with a user.
• Insert a hyperlinked list of accessible maps that are associated with a user.
• Insert a Table View.
• Insert the name of the user who is currently logged in.
• Insert the home URL that is associated with a user.

SmartPage code example

This example shows the source code for a Web page that contains SmartPage commands.

<!-- enable:SMARTPAGE -->
<!-- Validate: [*,redirect.html] -->
<html>
<head>
<title>SmartPage FilterPage Command</title>
</head>
<body>
<p>
<center>
<table border =1>
<tr><td> <!-- insert:FILTERPAGE[bgcolor="gray"] -->
</td></tr>
</table>
</center>
</p>
</body>
</html>
When you create a Web page, you can include SmartPage commands to dynamically provide a page with the data display components that are generated by the Web GUI.

Take note of the following conventions when using SmartPage commands:

- Do not add any spaces within SmartPage commands.
- To insert an object into a page, you must place the insert command on its own in a line with no other commands or characters on that line.

**enable:Smartpage command**

The `enable:Smartpage` command instructs the Web GUI server to use SmartPage commands.

You must enter this command as the first line in the HTML source file of any page that uses other SmartPage commands.

The following example shows the `enable:Smartpage` command.

```html
<!-- enable:Smartpage -->
```

**Validate command**

The `Validate` command opens a login window before displaying the requested page. The user name is checked against groups associated with the page.

You must enter this command as the second line in the HTML source file.

The following example shows the `Validate` command.

```html
<!-- Validate: [group,where.html] -->
```

In this line, `group` is the name of the group to check against, and `where.html` is the alternative page to display if the user does not have permission to open the current page.

**insert:AEL command**

The `insert:AEL` command inserts an AEL applet into a Web page.

- "Examples" on page 381
- "Parameters" on page 381
- "Compatibility of parameters" on page 382

**Examples**

The following example shows a sample `insert:AEL` command in which the AEL is launched with a predefined filter.

```html
<!--insert:AEL[filtertype=filtertype,filtername=filtername,metric=metric,metricof=metricof,showinframe=true|false,width=width,height=height,transientname=name,debuglevel] -->
```

The following example shows a sample `insert:AEL` command in which the AEL is launched with a transient filter.

```html
<!--insert:AEL[sql=sql,transientname=name,showinframe=true|false,cols=numcols,width=width,height=height,debuglevel] -->
```
Parameters

The parameters are as follows. If you use a deprecated parameter, an entry is recorded in the following location: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/.

**cols**
The number of columns. The default value is 4.

**datasource**
A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

**Tip:** If you have defined multiple data sources, you can specify them in the string by using a comma-separated list, as shown in the following example:
datasource=datasource1,datasource2

**debuglevel**
Shows debug information in the Java plug-in console. The level can be set from 0 to 9.

**entity | entities**
Deprecated: Specifies the name of the entity that is associated with the AEL. A single AEL applet is created for this entity. No special layout is provided. The entities property specifies an entity list. An applet is created for each entity and presented in a table. Omit either property if you are using the filter and view properties.

**entityviewname**
Deprecated: The name of the view that you want to apply to the AEL. This view is defined within the View Builder.

**filter**
Deprecated: The SQL syntax that is used to create a filter. When the filter string is applied to an AEL, only the rows that meet the criteria set by the filter are displayed. Omit this property if you are using the entity property.

**filtername**
The name of the filter that you want to apply to the AEL. This filter is defined in the Filter Builder. If you do not specify the filtertype parameter, the command searches the filter types to find a filter with a matching name.

**filtertype**
The type the filter that you want to apply to the AEL. Possible values are as follows:

- user
- global
- system
- user_transient

**height**
The height of the applets. The default value is 165.

**metric**
The metric value for a transient filter. This can be any of Average, Count, Sum, Minimum or Maximum.

**metricof**
The metric value for a transient filter. This is a field type; for example Tally.
showinframe
If true, a monitor box is displayed and the AEL window opens. If false, the AEL applet is embedded in a Web page. The default is true.

sql
The SQL syntax that is used to create a transient filter. Do not use this parameter in combination with the deprecated entity or filter parameters. If you do not specify the transientname parameter, the text entered in the sql is also used as the filter name in the AEL.

transientname
The transient filter name. Requires the filter parameter, which is deprecated, or the sql parameter. This is the name of the transient filter and is used as the title for the associated AEL monitor box.

view
The view that is applied to the AEL, as defined in the View Builder. When a view is applied to an AEL, only the columns that are contained within the view are displayed. Omit this property if you are using the deprecated entity or entities properties.

width
The width of the applets. The default value is 130.

Compatibility of parameters

The following list shows the compatibility of the parameters, indicating whether a parameter can be used in combination with another parameter. If a parameter is listed for a parameter, then they can be used in combination.

cols  data source; entities; height; monitortitle; showinframe; width
datasource  cols; entities; entity; filter; filtername; height; metric; metricof; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
entities  Deprecated: cols; data; source; height; monitortitle; showinframe; width
data source; filter; height; metric; metricof; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
entity  Deprecated: data source; height; monitortitle; showinframe; width
entityviewname  data source; filter; filtername; height; monitortitle; showinframe; width
filter  data source; height; metric; metricof; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
filtername  data source; filtertype height; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
filtertype  data source; filtername height; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
height  cols; data source; entities; entity; filter; filtername; metric; metricof; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
metric  data source; filter; height; metricof; monitortitle; showinframe; view; viewname; width
The `insert:AELMAPVIEW` command inserts an AEL applet for each filter in a map, into a Web page.

```html
<!-- insert:AELMAPVIEW[map=map,showinframe=showinframe,cols=cols,width=width, height=height,debuglevel=debuglevel] -->
```

The properties used in this command are as follows:

- **cols**
  The number of columns to use in the table when displaying multiple applets. The default value is 4.

- **debuglevel**
  Shows debug information in the plug-in console. The level can be set from 0 - 9.

- **height**
  The height of the applets. The default value is 165.

- **map**
  The map name.

- **showinframe**
  If true, a monitor box is displayed and the Active Event List (AEL) window opens. If false, the AEL is embedded in a Web page. The default is true.

- **width**
  The width of the applets. The default value is 130.
**insert:MAPLET command**

The *insert:MAPLET* command inserts a map into a Web page.

The following command can be entered in the HTML source file:

```
<!-- insert:MAPLET[map=mapname,soundurl=soundurl,refresh=n, enabletooltips=true] -->
```

The parameters of this command are as follows:

- **map**
  
  Required: Specifies the name of the map to be displayed.

- **soundurl**
  
  Optional: Specifies the URL of an audio .au file. This file is played when the maximum severity of any of the filters on a map increases. The URL must be specified in the following format:

  `protocol://host:port/path/filename.fileextension`

- **refresh**
  
  Optional: Specifies the refresh rate, in seconds, for the map.

- **enabletooltips**
  
  Optional: Enables hover help for active map objects that are associated with a filter. The hover help displays information from the filter.

**Related reference:**

"Map SmartPage administration"

SmartPage commands are special extensions to the HTML language that control user validation, and allow the placement of generated components in Tivoli Integrated Portal pages. SmartPage commands are expressed in HTML as comment tags.

**Map SmartPage administration**

SmartPage commands are special extensions to the HTML language that control user validation, and allow the placement of generated components in Tivoli Integrated Portal pages. SmartPage commands are expressed in HTML as comment tags.

To display a map you must create or edit an existing HTML file, add an *insert:MAPLET* SmartPage tag to the content, and upload the HTML file to the Web GUI server.

**Map SmartPage**

The following example shows the contents of a simple HTML file.

```
[1] <!-- enable:smartpage -->
[2] <html>
[3]   <head>
[4]     <title>Demonstration Map</title>
[5]     <meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1">
[6]   </head>
[7]   <body>
[9]   </body>
[10] </html>
```

An explanation of the lines in this example is as follows:
Line 1  This must be the first line of text in any HTML page that contains a SmartPage tag. This line instructs the Web GUI server that this page is enabled for SmartPage commands.

Lines 2 to 8  Contain generic HTML heading information and the body tag that indicates the start of the body of the Web page.

Line 9  Contains the `insert:MAPLET` SmartPage tag that instructs the Web GUI to place a map applet on the Web page. The name of the map you want to display—`mapname` in this example—is enclosed within the square brackets in the tag. The `insert:MAPLET` tag is valid anywhere within the body of an HTML document.

Lines 10 to 11  Contain the tags which close the `<body>` and `<html>` elements and conclude the file.

Related reference:

[Appendix D, “SmartPage commands and templates,” on page 379](#)

You can use SmartPage commands to populate Web pages that are served by the Web GUI. You can also use variables in SmartPage commands to dynamically populate predefined template files.

[“insert:MAPLET command” on page 384](#)

The `insert:MAPLET` command inserts a map into a Web page.

**insert:FILTERPAGE command**

The `insert:FILTERPAGE` command inserts a map applet into a Web page that displays either all filters that are associated with a read-write user, or specific filters for a read-write user.

Parameters are optional. All user filters are displayed by default. The map arranges rows of monitor boxes, using user preferences where appropriate. The following command can be entered in the HTML source file:

```html
<!-- insert:FILTERPAGE[filters="filter1,filter2,...",bgcolor="color",bgimage="image",monitorwidth="width",monitorheight="height",action="action",url="url",target="target",soundurl="soundurl",datasource="name"] -->
```

The properties used in this command are as follows.

**action**

- Specifies the hyperlink action that takes place when a monitor box is clicked.
- Use any of the following statements to define the action:
  - `go` to link to a URL.
  - `ael` to link to an embedded AEL in a Web page.
  - `lel` to link to an embedded LEL in a Web page.
  - `table` to link to a Table View.

**bgcolor**

- Sets the background color of the map.

**bgimage**

- Sets the background image of the map. The background image is uploaded using the Resource Manager and is stored as a resource in:
  - `install_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/etc/webtop/resources/__common`

**datasource**

- Highlights the ObjectServer used.
filters
Constrains the map to a set of predefined filters that are specified using a comma-separated list. If you omit this property, all filters that are associated with the read-write user are displayed.

monitorheight
Sets the height of the monitor box applets on the map.

monitorwidth
Sets the width of the monitor box applets on the map.

soundurl
Specifies the URL of an audio .au file that is played when the maximum severity of the filters in a filter page increases. The URL must be specified in the following format:

protocol://host:port/path/filename.fileextension

target
Specifies where in the browser window a linked target page is displayed when a monitor box is clicked. For example:

- _self indicates the same frame as the map, so that the target page replaces the map.
- _blank indicates a new Web browser window.
- _parent indicates the parent frame set containing the source link.
- _top indicates the frame containing the source link.

url
The destination URL if you specified go as the value for the action property.

insert:USERMAPLIST command
The insert:USERMAPLIST command inserts a list of hyperlinked maps, for a specific user, into a Web page. The list displays all the maps on the server that the presently logged-in user can access.

You can insert the name of each map as a hypertext link, which can be clicked to show the map. The list of maps is validated against the ACLs to which the user belongs. The following command can be entered in the HTML source file:

<!-- insert:USERMAPLIST[type=type,target=target] -->

Where the parameters are as follows:

type
Specifies the type of list, which can be unordered or displayed in a table.

target
Specifies the target frame.
insert:TABLEVIEW command

The insert:TABLEVIEW command inserts a Table View into a Web page.

<!-- insert:TABLEVIEW[filtername/filtertype(datasource/maxrows=n]] -->

The parameters are as follows. If you use a deprecated parameter, an entry is recorded in the following location: tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/.

datasource
A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

Tip: If you have defined multiple data sources, you can specify them in the string by using a comma-separated list, as shown in the following example:

datasource=datasource1,datasource2

If you specify multiple data sources, make sure that the filter, either a predefined filter or a transient filter, queries fields that are contained in all data sources. If you select a data source that is not defined in the filter, an error message is displayed in the AEL instead of event data.

tenity
Deprecated: The name of an entity. Use the filtername and filtertype parameters instead.

filtername
The name of a filter. The default view that is associated with the filter is applied to the Table View.

If you do not specify a filter type, the system searches the filter types for a filter with a name that matches the filtername parameter.

filtertype
The type of filter. Possible values are as follows:

- user
- global
- system
- user_transient

maxrows
Optional: The number of rows returned in the view.

insert:USERNAME command

The insert:USERNAME command inserts the name of the user who is logged in to the Web GUI, into a Web page:

<!-- insert:USERNAME[example] -->

In this line, example is the name of the user who is logged in.
**insert:USERSHOMEURL command**

The `insert:USERSHOMEURL` command inserts the Web GUI home page URL for the user who is currently logged in, into a Web page.

You can use this command to create a link to the home page of the user.

The following example shows the `insert:USERSHOMEURL` command.

```
<!-- insert:USERSHOMEURL -->
```

--

**Template overview**

The Web GUI supports dynamically-processed generic Web pages called *templates*. Templates contain SmartPage tag instances that are composed of attribute variables rather than hard-coded attribute data entries.

When a template page is displayed, information in the query string of the URL is passed to a corresponding variable placeholder that dynamically populates the SmartPage attribute.

By using templates, you can avoid creating new Web pages or source code entries to accommodate functionally similar page components. Instead, you can create generic pages where the SmartPage component attributes are governed by information that is stored in a hyperlink to the page URL.

Basic templates are supplied with the Web GUI, which you can customize for your own use. The default templates are located in the following directory:

```
webgui-home/etc/templates
```

**Template example**

This example shows one of the default templates, `table.html`, that is supplied with Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus.

Each line number is displayed in square brackets:

```
<!-- ENABLE:SMARTPAGE -->
<!-- Validate: [all,redirect.html] -->
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//IETF//DTD HTML//EN">
<html>
<head>
</head>
<body>
<!-- INSERT:TABLEVIEW[<NCO_V type="str" default="">Map_Name</NCO_V>
/<NCO_V type="str" default="">System_Filter</NCO_V>] -->
</body>
</html>
```

The `insert:TABLEVIEW` command cannot include carriage returns.

In this example, the template file contains a SmartPage command for displaying a Table View. The `insert:TABLEVIEW` command has two attributes: `Map_Name` and `System_Filter`. Instead of a static data entry for each attribute value, the source contains an `<NCO_V>` element, the attributes of which are as follows.

- **type**
  - This entry specifies the type of variable data that the `<NCO_V>` tag can receive from the URL. The data types are as follows:
str  A text string that can include any text except quotation marks.

BOOLEAN
  Used for attribute entries such as showinframe in the insert:AEL SmartPage tag. Permitted values are “true” or “false”.

number
  Any whole integer. Used for attribute entries such as monitorwidth in the insert:FILTERPAGE tag.

default="value"
  This entry specifies the default variable value that is used if one is not provided by the URL.

In the case of the insert:TABLEVIEW command, the attributes are names, and therefore strings. The expected variable data for both <NCO_V> instances is set to “str”. No default attributes are provided, so both default entries are empty.

The text between the opening and closing <NCO_V> tags establishes the variable name that the URL uses to establish a name-value pair. When you specify a variable name, the text must be alphanumeric and multiple words must be separated by an underscore. For example, Map_Name. Variable entries must be separated by a comma.

The URL of template pages containing variable data must be in the following format:
$$\text{$(SERVER)/path/filename?variable1=variabledata1&variable2=variabledata2}$$

Where path is the path to the template location, filename is the name of the template Web page, variable is the variable enclosed within the <NCO_V> element, and variabledata is the string, Boolean, or numeric entry that you want to populate the variable. For example:
$$\text{$(SERVER)/Template/table.html?Map_Name=Example_Europe&System_Filter=Example_All}$$

**Guidelines for using SmartPage templates**

When you create a new Web page that is to be used as a template, you must consider a number of guidelines.

These guidelines are as follows:
- You must include a <!-- ENABLE:SMARTPAGE --> tag at the top of the template page.
- You must ensure that the template page is valid and opens correctly in a Web browser.
- Choose sections of the page that you want to make variable and use <NCO_V> and </NCO_V> container elements to specify the required variable.
Creating SmartPage templates

You can create your own template that is either based on a template in the default directory, or that is based on a Web page.

To create a template that is based on a default template:
1. Navigate to the directory that holds the default templates:
   `webgui-home/etc/templates`
2. Copy and paste one of the templates in this directory. For example, `table.html`.
3. Rename the copy, ensuring that you retain the `.html` file extension.
4. Customize the HTML template heading as required.
5. Define the variables that you require by inserting them between the `<NCO_V>` and `</NCO_V>` tag containers.
6. Save the changes.

To create your own template that is based on a Web page:
1. Create a Web page as normal, by using smart tags.
2. Check that the Web page displays correctly without errors.
3. Replace the smart tags with `<NCO_V>` and `</NCO_V>` tags as appropriate.
Appendix E. tipcli command reference

Use the Tivoli Integrated Portal command line interface tipcli commands for writing scripts for passing information between applications.

The tipcli commands are entered in the \tip_home_dir\profiles\TIPProfile\bin directory, for example, \C:\IBM\tivoli\tip\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat on Windows or /opt/IBM/tivoli/tip/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh on Linux or UNIX.

The tipcli component provides help for its various commands:

```
Help [--command command_name]
```

Access help for all commands or optionally you can use the command argument to return detailed help for a specific command.

The following returns help for the AddUpdatePreferenceProfile command:

```
tipcli.bat Help --command AddUpdatePreferenceProfile
Help
AddUpdatePreferenceProfile --username <TIPusername> --password <passwordForUser>
--profileName <profileName> [--newProfileName <newProfileName>][--themeDir <themeDir>]
[--showNavTree <true|false>] [--componentDir <default|ltr|rtl>][--textDir <default|contextual|ltr|rtl>]
[--views <viewList>][--roles <roleList>][--defaultView <defaultView>]
```

where

- `<TIPusername>` is the username on TIP that has iscadmins role.
- `<passwordForUser>` is the password for the user.
- `<profileName>` is profile name which will be created or updated.
- `<newProfileName>` is the new name for the existing preference profile.
- `<themeDir>` is the directory name of the installed theme. Example: TIPLight
- `<showNavTree>` specify if show navigation tree by default after login the console.
- `<componentDir>` specify component direction for the console.
- `<textDir>` specify text direction for the console.
- `<viewList>` is views assignment for the preference profile.
- `<roleList>` is roles assignment for the preference profile.
- `<defaultView>` specify which view is displayed by default after login the console.

CTGWA4017I The command completed successfully.

Working with roles

Use these tipcli commands for to manipulate roles.

```
ListRoles
List all roles.
```

```
AddRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
```

Add the specified role. Console users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they have been assigned. All roles that are created have a resource type of Custom.

**Note:** Arguments to the `role_name` parameter should not include spaces.
UpdateRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name --newRoleName new_role_name
  Change the name of a specified role to the supplied new role name.

  Note: Arguments to the role_name and newRoleName parameters should not include spaces.

DelRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
  Delete the specified role.

  Note: Arguments to the role_name parameter should not include spaces.

ListRolesFromGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID
  List all roles associated with a specified user group.

MapRolesToGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  Associate a comma separated list of roles with a particular user group.

RemoveRolesFromGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  Disassociate a comma separated list of roles from a particular user group.

ListRolesForPage --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
  List all roles associated with a specified page.

MapRolesToPage --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
  Associate a comma separated list of roles with a particular page and set the access level to the page for each role.

RemoveRolesFromPage --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  Disassociate a comma separated list of roles from a particular page.

ListRolesForPortletEntity --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name
  List all roles associated with a specified portlet.

MapRolesToPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
  Associate a comma separated list of roles with a particular portlet and set the access level to the portlet for each role.

RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  Disassociate a comma separated list of roles from a particular portlet.

ListRolesFromUser --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --userID user_ID
  List all roles associated with a specified user ID.

MapRolesToUser --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --userID user_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  Associate a comma separated list of roles with a particular user ID.
RemoveRolesFromUser --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--userID user_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
Disassociate a comma separated list of roles from a particular user ID.

ListRolesForView --viewUniqueName view_name
List all roles associated with a specified view.

MapRolesToView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
--accessLevelList level1, level2
Associate a comma separated list of roles with a particular view and set
the access level for the view for each role.

RemoveRolesFromView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
Disassociate a comma separated list of roles from a particular view.

ListRoles
Use the ListRoles command to list all roles configured for a portal instance.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- UNIX/Linux: tipcli.sh ListRoles
- Windows: tipcli.bat ListRoles

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRoles

Where tip_home_dir is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance that you want to query.

AddRole
Use the AddRole command to add a specified role to the portal instance. Portal users are granted access to resources based on the role to which they are assigned. All roles created with this command have a resource type of Custom.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- UNIX/Linux: tipcli.sh AddRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
- Windows: tipcli.bat AddRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name

Where:

tip_username is the portal administrator user ID.
tip_user_password is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
role_name is the name of the role to be added.

Note: Arguments to the rolesList parameter must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh AddRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name

Where tip_home_dir is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance involved.

UpdateRole

Use the UpdateRole command to change the name of a custom role.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  - tipcli.sh UpdateRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name --newRoleName new_role_name

- **Windows**
  - tipcli.bat UpdateRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name --newRoleName new_role_name

Where:

- *tip_username* is the portal administrator user ID.
- *tip_user_password* is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- *role_name* is the name of the role to be modified.
- *new_role_name* is the new name you want for the specified role.

Note: Arguments to the *role_name* and *newRoleName* parameters must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh UpdateRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name --newRoleName new_role_name
```

Where tip_home_dir is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance involved.
DelRole

Use the DelRole command to delete a custom role.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  ```
tipcli.sh DelRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```
tipcli.bat DelRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
  ```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `role_name` is the name of the role to be modified.

Note: Arguments to the rolesList parameter must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```bash
 tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh DelRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --roleName role_name
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance involved.

ListRolesFromGroup

Use the ListRolesFromGroup command to list all roles associated with a specified user group.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  ```
tipcli.sh ListRolesFromGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```
tipcli.bat ListRolesFromGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID
  ```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `group_ID` is the name of the user group associated with the roles that you want to list.
Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRolesFromGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance involved.

**MapRolesToGroup**

Use the `MapRolesToGroup` command to associate a comma-separated list of roles to a specified user group.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

```
tipcli.sh MapRolesToGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1,role_name2
```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `group_ID` is the name of the user group associated with the roles that you want to map.
- `role_name1, role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the specified user group.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToGroup --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.
**RemoveRolesFromGroup**

Use the `RemoveRolesFromGroup` command to disassociate a comma-separated list of roles from a specified user group.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

```
• UNIX/Linux
  tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromGroup --username tip_username
  --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1,
  role_name2

• Windows
  tipcli.bat RemoveRolesFromGroup --username tip_username
  --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID --rolesList role_name1,
  role_name2
```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `group_ID` is the name of the user group associated with the roles that you want to list.
- `role_name1`, `role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the specified user group.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
 tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromGroup
 --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --groupID group_ID
 --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance involved.

**ListRolesForPage**

Use the `ListRolesForPage` command to list all roles associated with a specified page.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

```
• UNIX/Linux
  tipcli.sh ListRolesForPage --pageUniqueName
  page_unique_name

• Windows
  tipcli.bat ListRolesForPage --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
```

Where:

- `page_unique_name` is the unique ID for the page.
Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRolesForPage
--pageUniqueName page_unique_name
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

MapRolesToPage

Use the `MapRolesToPage` command to associate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified page and set an access level for each role.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  ```
tipcli.sh MapRolesToPage --username tip_username
--password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
--rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

- **Windows**
  ```
tipcli.bat MapRolesToPage --username tip_username --password
 tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name --rolesList
 role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `page_unique_name` is the page ID with which to associate with the list of roles.
- `role_name1`, `role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the page.
- `level1`, `level2` is a comma-separated list of page access levels that relate to the list of specified roles. Each of the listed roles is assigned the access level that corresponds to its position in each list. For example, the second argument in the list associated with `rolesList` is assigned to the second argument associated with `accessLevelList`.

Note: Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToPage --username
 tip_username --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
--rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.
RemoveRolesFromPage

Use the `RemoveRolesFromPage` command to disassociate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified page.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

```bash
# UNIX / Linux
tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromPage --username tip_username
    --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
    --rolesList role_name1, role__name2

# Windows
tipcli.bat RemoveRolesFromPage --username tip_username
    --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
    --rolesList role_name1, role__name2
```

Where:
- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `page_unique_name` is the page ID associated with the roles that you want to remove.
- `role_name1`, `role__name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be disassociated with the page.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```bash
# tip_home_dir is the location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToPage --username tip_username
    --password tip_user_password --pageUniqueName page_unique_name
    --rolesList role_name1, role__name2
```

**ListRolesForPortletEntity**

Use the `ListRolesForPortletEntity` command to list all roles associated with a specified portlet.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

```bash
# UNIX / Linux
tipcli.sh ListRolesForPortletEntity --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name

# Windows
tipcli.bat ListRolesForPortletEntity --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name
```

Where:
- `portlet_entity_unique_name` is the unique ID for the portlet.
For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRolesForPage
--pageUniqueName page_unique_name

Where tip_home_dir is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

**MapRolesToPortletEntity**

Use the `MapRolesToPortletEntity` command to associate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified portlet.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  ```
tipcli.sh MapRolesToPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```
tipcli.bat MapRolesToPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
  ```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `portlet_entity_unique_name` is the unique portlet ID with which to associate with the list of roles.
- `role_name1, role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the portlet.
- `level1, level2` is a comma-separated list of access levels that relate to the list of specified roles. Each of the listed roles is assigned the access level that corresponds to its position in each list. For example, the second argument in the list associated with `rolesList` is assigned to the second argument associated `accessLevelList`.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToPortletEntity
--username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```
Where *tip_home_dir* is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

**RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity**

Use the **RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity** command to disassociate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified portlet.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  
  `tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2`

- **Windows**
  
  `tipcli.bat RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2`

Where:

- *tip_username* is the portal administrator user ID.
- *tip_user_password* is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- *portlet_entity_unique_name* is the portlet ID associated with the roles that you want to remove.
- *role_name1, role_name2* is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be disassociated with the portlet.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the **rolesList** parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
<tip_home_dir>/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromPortletEntity
--username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--portletEntityUniqueName portlet_entity_unique_name
--rolesList role_name1, role_name2
```

Where *tip_home_dir* is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

**ListRolesFromUser**

Use the **ListRolesFromUser** command to list all roles associated with a specified user.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  
  `tipcli.sh ListRolesFromUser --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --userId user_ID`

- **Windows**
  
  `tipcli.bat ListRolesFromUser --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --userId user_ID`
Where:

- \textit{tip\_username} is the portal administrator user ID.
- \textit{tip\_user\_password} is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- \textit{user\_ID} is the unique ID for the user.

\textbf{Example}

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```bash
$ tip\_home\_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRolesFromUser --username tip\_username --password tip\_user\_password --userID user\_ID
```

Where \textit{tip\_home\_dir} is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

\textbf{MapRolesToUser}

Use the \texttt{MapRolesToUser} command to associate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified user ID.

\textbf{Syntax}

This command has the following syntax:

```bash
$ tipcli.sh MapRolesToUser --username \textit{tip\_username} --password \textit{tip\_user\_password} --userID \textit{user\_ID} --rolesList \textit{role\_name1}, \textit{role\_name2}
```

Where:

- \textit{tip\_username} is the portal administrator user ID.
- \textit{tip\_user\_password} is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- \textit{user\_ID} is the unique user ID with which to associate with the list of roles.
- \textit{role\_name1}, \textit{role\_name2} is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the user.

\textbf{Note:} Individual role name arguments to the \texttt{rolesList} parameter must not include spaces.

\textbf{Example}

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```bash
$ tip\_home\_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToUser --username tip\_username --password tip\_user\_password --userID user\_ID --rolesList \textit{role\_name1}, \textit{role\_name2}
```

Where \textit{tip\_home\_dir} is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.
RemoveRolesFromUser

Use the `RemoveRolesFromUser` command to disassociate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified user ID.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX/Linux**
  ```shell
  tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromUser --username tip_username
                  --password tip_user_password --userID user_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```bat
  tipcli.bat RemoveRolesFromUser --username tip_username
                  --password tip_user_password --userID user_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

Where:
- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `user_ID` is the user ID associated with the roles that you want to remove.
- `role_name1`, `role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be disassociated with the specified user ID.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```bash
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromUser
                  --username tip_username
                  --password tip_user_password --userID user_ID --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

ListRolesForView

Use the `ListRolesForView` command to list all roles associated with a specified view.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX/Linux**
  ```shell
  tipcli.sh ListRolesForView --viewUniqueName view_name
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```bat
  tipcli.bat ListRolesForView --viewUniqueName view_name
  ```

Where:
- `view_name` is the unique name for the view.
Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh ListRolesForView --viewUniqueName view_name
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

MapRolesToView

Use the `MapRolesToView` command to associate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified view and set an access level for each role.

Syntax

This command has the following syntax:

```
tipcli.sh MapRolesToView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```  

```
tipcli.bat MapRolesToView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

Where:

- `tip_username` is the portal administrator user ID.
- `tip_user_password` is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- `view_name` is the unique view name with which to associate with the list of roles.
- `role_name1, role_name2` is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be associated with the view.
- `level1, level2` is a comma-separated list of page access levels that relate to the list of specified roles. Each of the listed roles is assigned the access level that corresponds to its position in each list. For example, the second argument in the list associated with `rolesList` is assigned to the second argument associated `accessLevelList`.

Note: Individual role name arguments to the `rolesList` parameter must not include spaces.

Example

For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:

```
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh MapRolesToView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

Where `tip_home_dir` is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.
RemoveRolesFromView

Use the **RemoveRolesFromView** command to disassociate a comma-separated list of roles with a specified view.

**Syntax**

This command has the following syntax:

- **UNIX**
  ```
  tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

- **Windows**
  ```
  tipcli.bat RemoveRolesFromView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

Where:

- **tip_username** is the portal administrator user ID.
- **tip_user_password** is the password associated with the portal administrator user ID.
- **view_name** is the unique view name associated with the roles that you want to remove.
- **role_name1, role_name2** is a comma-separated list of roles that are to be disassociated with the specified view.

**Note:** Individual role name arguments to the **rolesList** parameter must not include spaces.

**Example**

- **UNIX**
  ```
  For example, in a UNIX or Linux environment, use the following command:
  ```
  ```
  tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh RemoveRolesFromView --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --viewUniqueName view_name --rolesList role_name1, role_name2
  ```

  Where **tip_home_dir** is location of the Tivoli Integrated Portal instance.

**Working with views**

tipcli commands for working with views.

The tipcli commands are entered in the **tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/bin** directory, for example, C:\IBM\tivoli\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat on Windows or /opt/IBM/tivoli/profiles/TIPProfile/bin/tipcli.sh on Linux or UNIX.

**ListViews**

List all views.

**AddViewMembers --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --view view_unique_name [--members members1, member2] [--launchMembers launch_member1, launch_member2]**

Add members or launch members for a specified view.
Important: When you add members to a view at the command line, your updates are not reflected in the portal until the next time that you log in.

**ListViewsForRole** --roleName role_name
List the views associated with a specified role.

**MapViewstoRole** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--roleName role_name --viewList view_unique_name1, view_unique_name2
--accessLevelList level1, level2
Associate a comma separated list of views with a particular role and set the access level for the role for each view.

**RemoveViewsFromRole** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--roleName role_name --viewList view_unique_name1, view_unique_name2
Disassociate a comma separated list of views from a particular role.

### Working with users

tipcli commands for working with users.

**ListUsersFromRole** --roleName role_name
List the users associated with a specified role.

**MapUsersToRole** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--roleName role_name --usersList user_ID1:user_ID2
Associate a colon (:) separated list of user IDs with a particular role.

**RemoveUsersFromRole** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--roleName role_name --usersList user_ID1:user_ID2
Disassociate a colon (:) separated list of user IDs from a particular role.

### Working with preference profiles

tipcli commands for working with preference profiles.

**DeletePreferenceProfile** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --profileName profile_name
Delete the specified preference profile.

**ListPreferenceProfiles** [--name profile_name]
Return a list of console preference profiles. Optionally, you can specify a comma separated lists of preference profiles, to return their unique names.

**ShowPreferenceProfile** --uniqueName profile_unique_name
List all the attributes for a specified profile preference.

**AddUpdatePreferenceProfile** --username tip_username --password tip_user_password --profileName profile_name [--newProfileName new_profile_name] [--themeDir theme_dir] [--showNavTree true|false] [--componentDir default|ltr|rtl] [--textDir default|contextual|ltr|rtl] [--views view_unique_name1, view_unique_name2] [--roles role_name1, role_name2] [--defaultView view_unique_name]
Use the AddUpdatePreferenceProfile command to create a new profile preference or update an existing profile.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>--username tip_username</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. A user with the iscadmins role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password tip_user_password</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the user with the iscadmins role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--profileName profile_name</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The name of the profile that is to be created or modified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--newProfileName new_profile_name]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. The new name for the specified profile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--themeDir theme_dir]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Used to specify the directory for the theme that you want to apply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--showNavTree true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--componentDir default</td>
<td>ltr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--textDir default</td>
<td>ltr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--views view_unique_name1, view_unique_name2]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Used to specify the views that you want to assign to the preference profile. Comma separated list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--roles role_name1, role_name2</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Used to specify the roles that you want to assign to the preference profile. Comma separated list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--defaultView view_unique_name]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Used to specify the view that you want displayed when a user logs into the portal.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Working with pages**

`tipcli` commands for working with pages.

**ListPages**

`ListPages [--viewList view_unique_name1, view_unique_name2]`  
`[--customizePages true|false]`  
List all pages. You can optionally filter the list by using the `viewlist` parameter and providing a comma separated list of views. You can also use the `customizePages` (set to `true`) to return a list of custom pages only.

**ListPagesForRole**

`ListPagesForRole --roleName role_name`  
List the pages associated with a specified role.

**MapPagesToRole**

`MapPagesToRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password`  
`--roleName role_name --pageList page_unique_name1, page_unique_name2`  
`--accessLevelList level1, level2`  
Associate a comma separated list of pages with a particular role and set the access level for the role for each page.
Work with portlets

**RemovePagesFromRole**

```
RemovePagesFromRole --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
--roleName role_name --pageList page_unique_name1, page_unique_name2
```

Disassociate a comma separated list of pages from a particular role.

**ListPortletEntitiesForRole**

```
ListPortletEntitiesForRole --roleName role_name
```

List the portlets entities associated with a specified role.

**MapPortletEntitiesToRole**

```
MapPortletEntitiesToRole --username tip_username --password
--roleName role_name --portletEntityList portletEntity_unique_name1, portletEntity_unique_name2 --accessLevelList level1, level2
```

Associate a comma separated list of portlets with a particular role and set
the access level for the role for each portlet.

**RemovePortletEntitiesFromRole**

```
RemovePortletEntitiesFromRole --username tip_username --password
--roleName role_name --portletEntityList portletEntity_unique_name1, portletEntity_unique_name2
```

Disassociate a comma separated list of portlets with from particular role.

Work with user groups

**ListGroupsFromRole**

```
ListGroupsFromRole --roleName role_name
```

List the user groups associated with a specified role.

**MapGroupsToRole**

```
MapGroupsToRole --username tip_username --password
--roleName role_name --groupsList group_name1: group_name2
```

Associate a colon (:) separated list of groups with a particular role.

**RemoveGroupsFromRole**

```
RemoveGroupsFromRole --username tip_username --password
--roleName role_name --groupsList group_name1: group_name2
```

Disassociate a colon (:) separated list of groups from a particular role.
Tivoli Integrated Portal Export commands

Use these `tipcli` commands for to export Tivoli Integrated Portal customized data.

**tipcli - Export plugins**

Use the Export command to export customization data for an instance of Tivoli Integrated Portal. Use the ListExportPlugins command to list plugins that are available for export.

**Syntax**

```
ListExportPlugins
```

Use the ListExportPlugins command to list all plugins that can be exported. Use the list of returned plugins to assist you when you are specifying plugins to be exported.

```
Export [--includePlugins|--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2] [--settingFile setting_file] --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
```

**Parameters**

If you provide no parameters to the Export command, all custom data is exported by default.

**Note:** If you specify additional parameters for the `tipcli.bat|.sh Export` and make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

**Table 34. Export parameters and arguments**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--includePlugins</td>
<td>--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--settingFile setting_file]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. You can specify your export requirements in properties file instead of specifying your requirements using separate parameters at the command line. Provide a path to the settings file as the argument to the settingFile parameter. On systems running Windows you must use double backslashes characters (&quot;) when specifying the path to your settings file, for example, C:\tmp\export.properties. Command line parameters take precedence over entries in the settings file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username tip_username</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The user name for a user with the isadmin role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password tip_user_password</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the specified user name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example 1 - Return a list of plugins available for exporting**

The following example returns a list of plugins that can be exported:

```
C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv22\profiles\TIPProfile\bin>tipcli.bat ListExportPlugins
```
Example 2 - Export a subset of available plugins

The following example exports the CMS plugin only:

```
C:\IBM\tivoli\tipv22TWLa\profiles\TIPProfile\bin\tipcli.bat Export
--includePlugins com.ibm.tivoli.tip.cli.cms.CmsExportPlugin
--username tipadmins --password tippassword
```

tipcli - Advanced Export options

Use the ExportPagePlugin `tipcli` command to export specific Tivoli Integrated Portal data.

**Note:** If you specify additional parameters for the `tipcli.bat|.sh Export` and make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

```
Export [-exportFile export_file] [-pages ALL|NONE|page1,page2] [-views ALL|NONE|view1,view2] [-roles ALL|NONE|REQUIRED|role1,role2]
--exportPagesInViews true|false [-userPreferences ALL|NONE|required|user_ID1,user_ID2] [-consolePreferenceProfiles ALL|NONE|prefer_ID1,prefer_ID2] [-includeEntitiesFromApp war1,war2]
[-includeCustomData true|false] [-includeCredentialData true|false]
[-includeMytasks true|false] [-includeMyStartupPages true|false]
[-includeTransformations true|false] --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
```

Table 35. ExportPagePlugin command arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[-exportFile export_file]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Specifies the path and file name for the exported data, for example, c:/tmp/extest.zip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-pages ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-views ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[-roles ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter and arguments</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--exportPagesInViews true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--userPreferences ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--consolePreferenceProfiles ALL</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeEntitiesFromApp war1,war2]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. You can provide a list of WARs to export pages that contain portlets associated with the listed WARs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeCustomData true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeCredentialData true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeMytasks true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeMyStartupPages true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--includeTransformations true</td>
<td>false]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username &lt;username&gt;</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The user name for a user with the isadmins role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password &lt;user_password&gt;</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the specified user name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Import tipcli commands**

Tipcli commands for importing Tivoli Integrated Portal data.

**Note:** If you specify additional parameters for the tipcli.bat|.sh Import and make a typing error, that is, if you type a parameter incorrectly, or use the incorrect case, then the commands runs as if no parameters were specified and no warning message is displayed.

**ListImportPlugins**

Use the ListImportPlugins command to list all plugins that are available to be imported.

**Import**

```
[--includePlugins|--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2] [--settingFile setting_file] [--backupDir backup_dir] --username tip_username --password tip_user_password
```

Use the Import command to import customization data into a Tivoli Integrated Portal environment. If you provide no parameters to the Import command, all custom data is imported by default.

### Table 36. Import command arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--includePlugins</td>
<td>--excludePlugins plugin1,plugin2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--settingFile setting_file]</td>
<td>Optional parameter. You can specify your import requirements in a properties file instead of specifying your requirements using separate parameters at the command line. Provide a path to the settings file as the argument to the settingFile parameter. On systems running Windows you must use double backslashes characters (&quot;) when specifying the path to your settings file, for example, C:\tmp\import.properties. Command line parameters take precedence over entries in the settings file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[--backupDir backup_dir]</td>
<td>You can specify a directory to save the backup data during an import operation so that if it is required you can subsequently restore settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--username tip_username</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The user name for a user with the isadmin role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--password tip_user_password</td>
<td>Mandatory parameter. The password for the specified user name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional commands

Additional tipcli commands.

cmsUpdateRemoteEntries [--username username --password password] (-toremote | -fromremote | -deleteremote) [-force]

Save system information in the file specified.

Table 37. cmsUpdateRemoteEntries command arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter and arguments</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[--username username --password password]</td>
<td>Optional parameters. User name and password for a Tivoli Integrated Portal user. If you do not provide user name and password details at the command line, you must enter the user name and password in an interactive mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-toremote</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Indicates that the update is to occur to the remote data store, that is, the local information is to be written to the remote database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-fromremote</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Indicates that the update is to occur from the remote data store. Any information saved locally is downloaded and updated from the remote database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-deleteremote</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Indicates that the launch entries provided by this Tivoli Integrated Portal instance to the remote database is to be deleted from the database. Additionally, this command prevents any further updates from being sent to the remote database. On execution, the cmsUpdateRemoteEntries command with the toremote and force options updates the database and re-enables automatic updates to the remote database. <strong>Note:</strong> There is no difference between deleteremote with the force option and deleteremote without the force option.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-force</td>
<td>Optional parameter. Indicates that any caching or optimization mechanisms for the data should be ignored and that the data should be updated regardless of the state. Any existing cached information is discarded. All data in the database is refreshed for the toremote case, including the resource bundles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Version

List the versions of the products and components installed in the environment.

SystemInfo [--outputFile outputFile]

Save system information in the file specified.

ITMLLogin --hostname hostname --port port --username username --password password [--servicename]

ITMLLogin is used to configure the ITM Web Service to connect to the Tivoli
Enterprise Portal Server. For example, this command in Windows configures the username and password for a new ITM Web Service to be added to the application server instance.

C:\IBM\tivoli\tip\bin\tipcli.bat ITMLogin --hostname localhost --port 1920 --username sysadmin --password sysadmin --servicename ITMWebService2

You can use the ITMLogin command to change the hostname, port, username, and password of an existing Tivoli Enterprise Portal Server instance. Changing a configured ITM Web Service to a different Tivoli Enterprise Portal Server is not supported, because the two portal servers may have different configurations. If you need to use a different portal server, you can install another instance of the ITM Web Service and use this command (along with the -serviceName option) to configure.

TADDMLogin --hostname hostname [--port port] --username username --password password

Log in to the Tivoli Application Dependency Discovery Manager.
Appendix F. Web GUI database tables

When operating in a load balancing cluster, a database holds the configuration information for propagating to all nodes in the cluster.

**Attention:** Do not modify the contents of these tables manually as this can adversely affect the operation of the cluster.

### OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.CONFIG_ITEMS table

The OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.CONFIG_ITEMS table contains the items of Web GUI configuration data to be replicated across a load balancing cluster.

*Table 38. Columns in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.CONFIG_ITEMS table*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG_ITEM_ID</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>A unique identifier for this entry in the table. This column is the primary key for the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHECKSUM</td>
<td>char(20)</td>
<td>A checksum for the entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEY</td>
<td>varchar(128)</td>
<td>A key for the entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST_UPDATED</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>The date and time when this item of data was last updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAMESPACE</td>
<td>varchar(64)</td>
<td>The namespace for this item of data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PATH</td>
<td>varchar(256)</td>
<td>The path name for this item of data in the Web GUI directory tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TYPE</td>
<td>varchar(12)</td>
<td>The type of this data item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VALUE</td>
<td>blob(10485760)</td>
<td>The content of the data item.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES

The OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES table contains details of the nodes that make up the load balancing cluster. There is one entry for each of the nodes in the cluster.

*Table 39. Columns in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES table*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NODE_ID</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>A unique identifier for this entry in the table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>URI</td>
<td>varchar(512)</td>
<td>The URI of a node in the cluster.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES_CONFIG_ITEMS

The OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES_CONFIG_ITEMS table contains information on when each node in the cluster last updated each item of configuration data defined in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI_CONFIG ITEMS table. There is one entry in the table for each combination of an item of configuration data and cluster node.
Table 40. Columns in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODE_CONFIG_ITEMS table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column name</th>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONFIG_ITEM_ID</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>The identifier for an item of configuration data held in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NODE_ID</td>
<td>bigint</td>
<td>The identifier of a node in the OMNIBUS_WEB_GUI.NODES table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAST_UPDATED</td>
<td>timestamp</td>
<td>The date and time when the data item was last updated on the node.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix G. URLs for opening Web GUI pages

Use the URL to open Web GUI portlets and applets from a map, from a link on an HTML page, or through a link generated by script tool or a CGI tool.

You can use URLs to open the following Web GUI pages:

- "Active Event List"
- "Filter Builder” on page 419
- "Lightweight Event List” on page 419
- "Map pages” on page 420
- “Table View” on page 420
- “Event Viewer” on page 421

The parameters are as follows. In each URL, context-root refers to the context root of the Web GUI. This can be configured during installation of the product and its default value is ibm/console.

If you use a deprecated parameter, an entry is recorded in the following location: 
tip_home_dir/profiles/TIPProfile/logs/.

Active Event List

To open the Active Event List (AEL), use a URL of the following format:
datasource=datasourcename

To use a transient filter, use a URL of the following format:
protocol://server.domain:port/context-root/webtop/AELView?sql=string&
transientname=filtername&viewname=viewname&viewtype=viewtype&
datasource=datasourcename

The possible parameters are as follows:

datasource
A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

Tip: If you have defined multiple data sources, you can specify them in the string by using a comma-separated list, as shown in the following example:
datasource=datasource1,datasource2

If you specify multiple data sources, make sure that the filter, either a predefined filter or a transient filter, queries fields that are contained in all data sources. If you select a data source that is not defined in the filter, an error message is displayed in the AEL instead of event data.

datasource
Deprecated: Use the filtertype and filtername parameters instead.
Tip: If your installation of the Web GUI was migrated or upgraded from IBM Tivoli Netcool/Webtop, and you have custom pages that open with the entity parameter, the Web GUI interprets the parameter as follows:

```
filtertype=system&filtername=filtername
```

Where `filtername` is the entity; entities are migrated to system filters.

**filtername**
The name of the filter that you want to apply.

If you do not specify a `filtertype` parameter, all filter types are searched to identify a matching filter.

**filterowner**
The owner of the filter. This parameter is required if the `filtertype` is set to `group`. This parameter is ignored if the `filtertype` is set to either `global`, `system`, or `user`.

**filtertype**
The type of filter that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the `filtername` parameter. Possible values are as follows:

- `global`
- `group`
- `system`
- `user`
- `user_transient`

**showmenubar**
Optional: Use this parameter to control whether the displayed AEL contains a menu bar. Possible values are:

- `true`
- `false`

**showtitlebar**
Optional: Use this parameter to control whether the displayed AEL contains a title bar. Possible values are:

- `true`
- `false`

**sql**
Optional: An SQL filter string. This filter is transient, and does not persist beyond your current session.

**transientname**
Optional: Use this parameter to specify a filter name if you specify a filter string by using the `sql` parameter. The value of this parameter is used to populate the `Filters` list of the AEL.

**viewname**
A view that overrides the default view associated with the filter. If you do not specify this parameter, the default view associated with the filter is used.

**viewtype**
The type of view that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the `viewname` parameter. Possible values are as follows:

- `global`
- `system`
- `user`
Filter Builder

To open the Filter Builder, use a URL of the following format:

protocol://server.domain:port/context-root/webtop/startFB.do

Lightweight Event List

To open the Lightweight Event List (LEL), use a URL of the following format:

protocol://server.domain:port/context-root/webtop/lwsel/lwsel.jsp?
filtertype=typeoffilter&filtername=filtername&viewname=viewname
&viewtype=viewtype&datasource=datasourcename

The parameters are as follows:

datasource
  A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

datasource

entity
  Deprecated: Use the filtertype and filtername parameters instead.

tip: If your installation of the Web GUI was migrated or upgraded from IBM Tivoli Netcool/Webtop, and you have custom pages that open with the entity parameter, the Web GUI interprets the parameter as follows:

filtertype=system&filtername=filtername

Where filtername is the entity; entities are migrated to system filters.

filtername
  The name of the filter that you want to apply.
  If you do not specify a filtertype parameter, all filter types are searched to identify a matching filter.

filterowner
  The owner of the filter. This parameter is required if the filtertype is set to group. This parameter is ignored if the filtertype is set to either global, system, or user.

filtertype
  The type of filter that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the filtername parameter. Possible values are as follows:
  • global
  • group
  • system
  • user
  • user_transient

viewname
  A view that overrides the default view associated with the filter. If you do not specify this parameter, the default view associated with the filter is used.

viewtype
  The type of view that you want to apply. Use this parameter together this the viewname parameter. Possible values are as follows:
  • global
- system
- user

**Map pages**

To open a map page, use a URL of the following format:

```
protocol://server.domain:port/context-root/webtop/Map/map
```

The parameters are as follows:

- **map**
  - Required: The name of a map.

**Table View**

To open the Table View, use a URL of the following format:

```
protocol://server.domain:port/context-root/webtop/TableView/?
filtertype=typeoffilter&filtername=filtername&viewname=viewname&viewtype=viewtype&
datasource=datasource&maxrows=n
```

The parameters are as follows:

- **datasource**
  - A data source defined in the `ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml` data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNibus Installation and Deployment Guide.

- **entity|entities**
  - Deprecated: Use the **filtertype** and **filtername** parameters instead.

  **Tip:** If your installation of the Web GUI was migrated or upgraded from IBM Tivoli Netcool/Webtop, and you have custom pages that open with the **entity** parameter, the Web GUI interprets the parameter as follows:
  
  ```
  filtertype=system&filtername=filtername
  ```

  Where **filename** is the entity; entities are migrated to system filters.

- **filtername**
  - The name of the filter that you want to apply.

  If you do not specify a **filtertype** parameter, all filter types are searched to identify a matching filter.

- **filterowner**
  - The owner of the filter. This parameter is required if the **filtertype** is set to group. This parameter is ignored if the **filtertype** is set to either global, system, or user.

- **filtertype**
  - The type of filter that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the **filtername** parameter. Possible values are as follows:
    - global
    - group
    - system
    - user
    - user_transient
maxrows
Optional: Specifies the number of rows returned in the Table View.

viewname
A view that overrides the default view associated with the filter. If you do not specify this parameter, the default view associated with the filter is used.

viewtype
The type of view that you want to apply. Use this parameter together this the viewname parameter. Possible values are as follows:
- global
- system
- user

Event Viewer

To open the Event Viewer, use a URL of the following format:

To use a transient filter, use a URL of the following format:

The parameters are as follows:

datasource
A data source defined in the ncwDataSourceDefinitions.xml data source configuration file. If you do not specify this parameter, the default data source is used. For more information about the default data source, see the IBM Tivoli Netcool/OMNIbus Installation and Deployment Guide.

doubleclickaction
The action to perform when you double-click an event in the Event Viewer. Possible options are as follows:
- none - Nothing happens.
- Show Information - Opens the information window for a selected event. This is the default action.
- Open AEL in New Window - Opens the AEL in a new window.

filtername
The name of the filter that you want to apply.

filterowner
The owner of the filter. This parameter is required if the filtertype is set to group. This parameter is ignored if the filtertype is set to either global, system, or user.

filtertype
The type of filter that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the filtername parameter. Possible values are as follows:
- global
- group
- system
- user
- user_transient

forceoverwrite
Optional: Defines whether an existing transient filter is overwritten if it has the same name as the specified filtername parameter. Possible values are as follows:
- true
- false

If true, an existing transient filter is overwritten. If false, and a transient filter with the same name currently exists, a warning message is displayed, and the events for the existing transient filter are displayed.

sql
Optional: An SQL filter string. This filter is transient, and does not persist beyond your current session.

transientname
Optional: Use this parameter to specify a filter name if you specify a filter string by using the sql parameter. The value of this parameter is used to populate the Filters list of the Event Viewer.

viewname
A view that overrides the default view associated with the filter. If you do not specify this parameter, the default view associated with the filter is used.

viewtype
The type of view that you want to apply. Use this parameter together with the viewname parameter. Possible values are as follows:
- global
- system
- user
Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user’s responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan, Ltd.
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.
IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
958/NH04
IBM Centre, St Leonards
601 Pacific Hwy
St Leonards, NSW, 2069
Australia

IBM Corporation
896471/H128B
76 Upper Ground
London SE1 9PZ
United Kingdom

IBM Corporation
JBFA/SOM1
294 Route 100
Somers, NY, 10589-0100
United States of America

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

Any performance data contained herein was determined in a controlled environment. Therefore, the results obtained in other operating environments may vary significantly. Some measurements may have been made on development-level systems and there is no guarantee that these measurements will be the same on generally available systems. Furthermore, some measurements may have been estimated through extrapolation. Actual results may vary. Users of this document should verify the applicable data for their specific environment.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

All statements regarding IBM’s future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

All IBM prices shown are IBM’s suggested retail prices, are current and are subject to change without notice. Dealer prices may vary.
This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

Portions of this product include software developed by Daniel Veillard.

- libxml2-2.7.8

The libxml2-2.7.8 software is distributed according to the following license agreement:


All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE DANIEL VEILLARD BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Daniel Veillard shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from him.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.
Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, ibm.com®, Netcool, Netcool/OMNibus, Tivoli, and WebSphere are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Adobe, Acrobat, Portable Document Format (PDF), PostScript, and all Adobe-based trademarks are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States, other countries, or both.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.
Index

Special characters
<img> tag attributes charts 350

A
about this profile 2
accessibility x, 369
Active Event List
accessing 275
acknowledging events 275
adding sound files 205
appearance and behavior 195
assigning ownership to events 276
brightness 199
changing the displayed event data 277
colors 200, 205
copying data to the clipboard 277
datarow caching 196
date and time formats 200, 202
deacknowledging events 275
defaults 173
deleting events 278
deselecting events 286
displaying full event information 278
event severity icons 203
event severity icons 196
filtering 284
filtering by severity 284
flashing 199
fonts 200, 205
freezing event data 279
linking with map object 328
maintaining an event journal 280
monitoring TADDM events 283
notifications 198
prioritizing events 281
refresh rate 195
refreshing event data 281
restricting rows 197
running predictive eventing tools 282
searching for text 285
selecting events 286
sorting columns 286
toolbars 200
tools 287
adding a user to groups 109
adding more groups as members of a group 129
adding more users as members of a group 113
adding tools to menu 238
adding users to a group 112
administration
Tivoli Integrated Portal 98
user tasks 98
Web GUI 98
advanced commands 74
AEL
  event management overview 274
Alert menu 237
application server
  ports 3
  profile 2
attributes
  charts 360
  configuration files 374
  audience vii
  authentication
  client messages 150
B
back up 22, 23
server settings 169
basic commands 71
C
CGI scripts
  environment variables 211
CGI support 213
changing display options for a group 124
changing display options for a user 107
changing user information 110, 126
Chart portlet
defaults 175
charts
  <chartelement> syntax 346
  <img> tag attributes 350
attribute reference 360
definition file 345
definition file, creating 349
element reference 351
generation 344
overview 343
presenting 350
schema 346
types 343
cloning
  server settings 169
cloning data between servers 18
exporting data 18
importing data 20
overview 10
command-line 207
command-line tools
creating 221
commands
  380
  confvm4nicos 6
  nco_p_simnet 319
SmartPage
  conventions 380
  enable:Smartpage 380
insert:AELMAPVIEW 383
insert:FILTERPAGE 385
customizing
  adding tools to menu 238
D
data row caching 196
database schema 415, 416
database tables 415, 416
date and time formats 200, 202
defaults
  Relationship Definitions 192
setting
  Active Event List 173
  Chart portlet 175
  Event Dashboard 176
  Event Viewer 180
  Inline Frame portlet 188
  Lightweight Event List 189
  Map portlet 190
  Table View portlet 192
  Web widget portlet 193
definition file
cart, creating 349
charts 345
syntax 345
deleting groups 130
deleting users 114
dependent filters 249
creating 258
Deployment Engine
managing 23
duplicating group assignments for
groups 130
duplicating group assignments for
users 114

E
editing
properties files 148
education
see Tivoli technical training x
elements
charts 351
configuration files 371
environment variables
CGI scripts 211
environment variables, notation xi
Event Dashboard 306
Event Dashboard defaults 176
Event Dashboards
freezing 313
interaction with Active Event
List 314, 315
monitor boxes
adding 308
arranging 312
customizing 310
removing 309
preferences 311
troubleshooting 165
event relationships 246
preferences 192
Event Viewer
accessing 288
appearance and behavior 245
changing the displayed event
data 289
connecting an Event Viewer to an
Active Event List 88
copying data 289
defaults 180
displaying full information 288
event groupings 291
event relationships 246, 292
freezing event data 290
refreshing event data 289
sorting columns 290
Event Viewercustomizing 245
events
deployment.xml 3
cwVDataSourceDefinitions.xml 6
server.init 197, 340
Filter Builder
accessing 252
comparators 261
overview 252
filter collections 249
editing 260
filtering a list of groups 123
filtering a list of users 106
files
creating maps 320
icons 335
lines 336
Table View 335
HTML Map Editor text 338
G
gauges
changing 182
metrics 302
publishing 297
setting thresholds 305
Gauges
interaction with Active Event List or
Event Viewer 90
global filters 249
global views 251
groups 97
adding more as members of a
group 129
changing information about 126
changing viewing options 124
creating filters 123
deleting 130
duplicating group assignments 130
filtering a list of 123
managing 121
removing members from 129
searching for 122, 126, 130
 supplied 97
viewing group information 126
viewing membership of 127
H
HTML Map Editor 332
buttons 333
creating maps 320
icons 335
lines 336
Table View 335
HTML Map Editor text 338
I
icons
Active Event List 203
import 10
defining the data to import 15
importing data to a server 15
importing the data 16
overview 10
setting the log level 22
verifying the imported data 17
importing 70, 79
import data 79
rollback 80
Inline Frame portlet
defaults 188
invalid characters
when defining filters, views, and
tools 377
iscadmin role 39
iscadmins role 100
J
Java Map Editor 321, 331
access control to maps 321
adding objects 323
colors 330
scripts
   CGI
   creating 211
   registering 213
   searching for groups 122, 126, 130
   searching for users 105, 110, 111, 112, 114, 125, 128
   server 23
   back up 22
   ObjectServer connection 6
   set a trace 145
   server settings
   cloning 169
   server version and properties 143
   SmartPage
   code sample 379
   commands
   enable:Smartpage 380
   insert:AEL 380
   insert:AELMAPVIEW 383
   insert:FILTERPAGE 385
   insert:MAPLET 384
   insert:TABLEVIEW 387
   insert:USERMAPLIST 386
   insert:USERNAMEN 387
   insert:USERSHOMEURL 388
   Validate 380
   commands overview 379
   conventions 380
   creating templates 390
   insert:AEL 380
   templates
   example 388
   guidelines 388, 389
   location on server 388
   SmartPage commands
   insert:MAPLET 384
   SQL
   filters 254, 256
   query
   sample 9
   startup pages 39
   submenus
   adding to menu 240
   creating 239
   deleting 241
   support information x
   system filters 249
   system information
   checking 143
   system views 251

T
Table View
   linking with map object 328
   maps 335, 338
   viewing events 295
   Table View portlet
   defaults 192
   preferences 192
   TADDM events
   monitoring 283
   tipcli
   AddRole 393
   DelRole 395
   exporting plugins 82, 409
   troubleshooting (continued)
   login errors 148
   maps 166
   query timeout 165
   recovering from database corruption 141
   resynchronize a node with the cluster 141
   setting the log level 143
   typeface conventions xi

U
user filters 249
user timeout
   changing 3
   user views 251
users
   adding a user to groups 112
   adding more as members of a group 113
   adding to groups 109
   administration 98
   changing display options 107
   changing information about 110
   creating 108
   creating filters 106
   creating Web GUI administrator user 100
   deleting 114
   duplicating group assignments 114
   filtering a list of 106
   groups 97
   removing from groups 109
   managing 104
   modifying preferences 101
   removing a group from groups 109
   removing from a group 112, 128
   roles 95, 96
   searching for 105, 110, 111, 112, 114, 125, 128
   supplied 97
   viewing group information 111
   viewing information about 110, 125
   utilities
   acknowledge 207
   nco_ping 206
   ping 207

V
variables, notation for xi
View Builder
   accessing 265
   viewing group information for a group 126
   viewing group information for a user 111
   viewing the members of a group 127
   viewing user information 110, 125
   views
   adding columns 266
   categories 251
   column order 268
   column sort order 271
   column titles 267
views (continued)
column width 267
copying 271
creating 265
invalid characters 377
locking columns 269
removing columns 266
sorting precedence 270
View Builder 265

W
Web widget portlet
defaults 193
publishing maps 341